P O L S K A A K A D E M I A N A U K
K O M I T E T N A U K O R I E N T A L I S T Y C Z N Y C H

ROCZNIK

ORIENTALISTYCZNY

ukazuje się od 1915 r.

TOM LXV

ZESZYT 2

DOM WYDAWNICZY ELIPSA

WARSZAWA 2012

Wydawca:

Komitet Nauk Orientalistycznych Polskiej Akademii Nauk

Address:
"Rocznik Orientalistyczny"
Faculty of Oriental Studies
University of Warsaw
00-927 Warsaw 64
e-mail: rorient@pan.pl

ISSN 0080-3545

Nakład 200 egz.

Realizacja wydawnicza:
Dom Wydawniczy ELIPSA,
ul. Inflancka 15/198, 00-189 Warszawa
tel./fax 22 635 03 01, 22 635 17 85
e-mail: elipsa@elipsa.pl, www.elipsa.pl

Spis treści

Artykuły

Recenzje

R O C Z N I K O R I E N T A L I S T Y C Z N Y, T. LXV, Z. 2, 2012, (s. 5–12)

JAAKKO HÄMEEN-ANTTILA

An Old-Fashioned Genre – Maqāma in the 18th Century

Abstract

The eighteenth century was crucial for the development of Arabic literature. While some genres were more prone to change, the *maqāma* remained a conservative and elitist genre. Yet it did enjoy a kind of renaissance in the eighteenth century. The *maqāmas* of the eighteenth century were a varied lot, both qualitatively and content wise. Al-Ḥarīrī remained the favourite model for eighteenth-century authors. Also other great authors of the past, such as Az-Zamaḫšarī and As-Suyūṭī, were often imitated. The article surveys the production of *maqāmas* in the eighteenth century.

Keywords: *maqāmas*, 18th century, history of literature

The eighteenth century was crucial for the development of Arabic literature. While old styles and ancient genres remained alive and dominated the cultural atmosphere, new trends started slowly developing. Little by little the tradition was modified, and new themes and stylistic modifications appeared. By the end of the century, European, mainly French, influences found their way into Arabic literature with an unprecedented strength of impact. For almost a millennium, Arabic literature had remained immune to foreign influences of this magnitude and one has to go back to the early ‘Abbāsid period to find an influx of similar importance, that time from Persia.[1]

[1] For the 18th century and the beginnings of modern Arabic literature, see the articles in Roger Allen, Roger, D.S. Richards (eds.), *Arabic Literature in the Post-Classical Period*, Cambridge 2006, M.M. Badawi (ed.), *Modern Arabic Literature*, Cambridge 2006. For the Persian influence, see C.E. Bosworth, *The Persian Impact on Arabic Literature*, in: A.F.L. Beeston et al. (eds.), *Arabic Literature to the End of the Umayyad Period*, Cambridge 2006, pp. 483–496.

While some genres were more prone to change, the *maqāma* remained a conservative and elitist genre.[2] Yet it did enjoy a kind of renaissance in the eighteenth century. At least, we know of more *maqāma* authors from this century than from the previous ones and the success continued during the following century. According to my listing of *maqāma* authors,[3] there are 29 authors who died between 1700 and 1799, whereas the previous century can only boast of twelve authors. From the nineteenth century we know about the same number of authors, 31. While the list could be expanded, the numbers are comparable and we may clearly see that the oncoming modernity was actually signalled by an increase in the number of authors working within this very conservative genre.

To be able to follow the development of the genre, we have to start by discussing the definition of the term *maqāma* and the boundaries of the genre. Basically, we have two ways of defining what a *maqāma* is at any given period of time. We may start with the definitions given by the authors and/or their biographers or anthologists and call those and only those texts *maqāmas* which are so labelled in the sources. This, however, is not a very satisfactory way to proceed, as there seems to be much confusion in the use of the term. Native literary theory never defined the genre, so that we do not have a well-defined answer from pre-Modern times to the question: "What, exactly, is a *maqāma*?" In the beginning, *maqāmas* were understood in vague terms of imitating Al-Hamaḏānī and, since the early twelfth century, Al-Ḥarīrī, but the later we get the more amorphous the term's use becomes and the difference between a Hamaḏānian or Ḥarīrian *maqāma* and any piece of rhymed prose becomes blurred. Not even the use of a fictitious *isnād* is always kept in later *maqāmas*, nor is it restricted to them, and very often it remains the only common feature, besides the use of *saǧ'*, between a late text labelled "*maqāma*" and the work of Al-Hamaḏānī and Al-Ḥarīrī. Incidentally, even the formal element of the *isnād* is problematic. In later *maqāmas*, the fictitious narrator often bore the name of the author himself and, especially in anthologies and biographical dictionaries, the *isnād* was sometimes dropped. Hence, e.g., Ar-Rasmī's ([171] d. 1197/1783) *Al-Maqāma az-Zulāliyya al-Baššāriyya*, as it stands in Al-Murādī's *Silk ad-durar* (I: 74–77), starts abruptly, without the speaker having been identified in an *isnād*.

The self-definitions being often misleading and a native theoretical definition lacking, we are left with another possibility. We have to define the genre on the basis of internal criteria and take the titles of the texts as of only secondary importance. Thus, many texts labelled *maqāmas* need not be taken by us to belong to the genre and, *vice versa*, we may add texts which are not called *maqāmas* but which do fulfil the requirements of the genre as we define it. Without going into more details here, let it suffice to say that I understand three features as the cornerstones of a *maqāma*, viz. a fictitious *isnād* (or, at least, an implicitly fictitious scene of narration), a fictitious hero (often, but not always, accompanied by a fictitious narrator who may use the name of the author) and,

---

[2] For vulgar *maqāmas*, see Shmuel Moreh, *Live Theatre and Dramatic Literature in the Medieval Arabic World*, Edinburgh 1992, and Jaakko Hämeen-Anttila, *Maqama. A History of a Genre*, Wiesbaden 2002, pp. 335–339.

[3] Hämeen-Anttila, *Maqama*, pp. 396–407. Numbers in square brackets after an author's name refer to this list.

finally, the use of *saǧ'*. It should be emphasized that we cannot limit the genre to the picaresque *maqāma*, which is the most famous but not the only, nor even the most popular, subgenre.[4] Distinguishing the genre from the *munāẓara* is especially problematic from at least the fifteenth century onwards, when personified non-human characters started appearing more and more often as *maqāma* heroes, as in the flower *maqāmas* of As-Suyūṭī ([119], d. 911/1505).[5] They being among the most famous *maqāmas*, it would be somewhat awkward to rule them out from the genre, yet, in fact, it would be easier to classify the texts as *munāẓaras* rather than *maqāmas*.

The *maqāmas* of the eighteenth century were a varied lot, both qualitatively and content wise. To give an idea of the variety of *maqāmas* in the eighteenth century, we may select some authors who died between 1700 and 1799 and who wrote widely different *maqāmas*. Hence, e.g., Aš-Šibāmī ([149], d. 1115/1703) wrote *maqāmas* after the fashion of Az-Zamaḫsharī in the tradition of exhortatory *maqāmas*. Al-Fāsī ([154], wrote in 1120/1708) composed eulogies on the prophet after the model of Al-Ḥarīrī, and Al-Marīnī ([159], d. 1145/1732) wrote panegyric *maqāmas* on his patron – in later centuries, the genre was more and more drawn into the tradition of panegyric court literature with its mercenary aims. The process was, of course, already set in motion by Al-Hamaḏānī himself, among whose *maqāmas* there are several written for Ḫalaf Ibn Aḥmad,[6] but the full impact of this development was seen only centuries later, when more and more often the heroes in the end are advised to go and see the patron, or patron-to-be, of the author. Whether there was at any time a conscious imitation of the panegyric *qaṣīda*, remains a point to be studied, but the structural similarities of the two genres are unmistakable.

To come back to the variety of the 18th-century *maqāma*, 'Abd al-Bāqī 'Arīf ([155], d. 1125/1713) celebrated conquests in his *maqāmas*, while Al-Warġī ([169] d. 1190/1776) personified a tavern pulled down by 'Alī Bāšā, clearing the ground for a *madrasa*. Al-Ḥifnī ([164] d. 1178/1764) wrote *munāẓaras* between wine and flowers using the *maqāma* structure, after the fashion of As-Suyūṭī who had made this subgenre one of the most popular ones since the 15th century. No city *maqāmas* seem to have been written by authors of the 18th century, but this seems accidental, and an early 19th-century author, Ar-Rāfi'ī ([181] d. 1230/1815), wrote a *maqāma* entitled *Maqāmat al-mufāḫara bayna Ḫimṣ wa-Ḫamā*. The boundaries of the genre remained wide apart and *maqāmas* covered topics from obscene pieces to learned discussions and pious sermons. Whatever one may say of eighteenth-century authors, one cannot blame them for not putting all possible varieties into use.

Al-Ḥarīrī remained the favourite model for eighteenth-century authors. Also other great authors of the past, such as Az-Zamaḫsharī and As-Suyūṭī, were often imitated – one might add that, contrary to the interests of modern scholars, Al-Hamaḏānī was not

---

4 For the subgenres, see Hämeen-Anttila, *Maqama*, pp. 55–61, 281–284.

5 As-Suyūṭī: *Maqāmāt* = Samīr Maḥmūd al-Durūbī (ed.): *Sharḥ maqāmāt Jalāladdīn al-Suyūṭī*, I–II, Bayrūt 1409/1989.

6 Cf. Hämeen-Anttila, *Maqama*, p. 60.

popular and his *maqāmas* were often considered somewhat simple. He had been eclipsed, once and for all, by Al-Ḥarīrī and he never regained his popularity before modern times, as one may easily see when comparing the number and provenience of the manuscripts of each. Al-Hamaḏānī's *maqāmas* were also rarely anthologized after Al-Ḥuṣrī's *Zahr al-ādāb*, in clear contrast to Al-Ḥarīrī's.

The debt of eighteenth-century *maqāmas* to Al-Ḥarīrī and others may be seen both by an analysis of the texts and the explicit comments on them in contemporary sources. Writers of biographical dictionaries often explicitly state that the authors vied with, or imitated, Al-Ḥarīrī in their production.

In the eighteenth century, the genre was varied, but very much bound to tradition. Its development was primarily an internal one. The majority of *maqāmas* written during the century follow earlier models rather closely and cannot be called innovative in theme, style or technique. Their variety arises from an intensive use of the whole width of the genre, not so much from inventing new forms or making new conquests. There were, however, changes in the statistical profile of the genre: some subgenres gained in favour, others lost, but no new subgenres were developed nor were important innovations made that would have gained access to the standard repertory of the genre. Compared with earlier centuries, we may see a slight preference for the panegyric *maqāma* and a continuation of the neglect of narrative in favour of rhetoric, which may be seen in the comparative lack of picaresque *maqāmas*. Picaresque *maqāmas* were occasionally written in the eighteenth century, but it has only been modern taste that has pointed them out as the most interesting pieces of the genre and this has caused a misguided evaluation of their importance in the development of the genre. The heavy rhetoricization of the genre began with Al-Ḥarīrī and went further with each successive generation of *maqāma* authors, perhaps culminating in Ibn aṣ-Ṣayqal ([82], d. 701/1301) whose *maqāmas* verge on the unreadable. Narrative gave place to linguistic finery.

The role of Al-Ḥarīrī in the following, nineteenth century deserves a short note. The often-repeated legend of Al-Yāziğī ([193] d. 1287/1871) "finding" Al-Ḥarīrī thanks to Western incentives should be erased from histories of modern Arabic literature. He did model himself on Al-Ḥarīrī and he did study Al-Ḥarīrī's texts intensively while correcting the proofs of the second edition of Silvestre de Sacy's edition of the *maqāmas*, but the idea that he, or for that matter, any Arab gentleman of the eighteenth or early nineteenth century could have been ignorant of Al-Ḥarīrī is preposterous. The numerous imitations of, and competitions with, Al-Ḥarīrī throughout these centuries show that there is no point in claiming that someone could have "discovered" Al-Ḥarīrī.[7] Al-Yāziğī knew Al-Ḥarīrī perfectly well before coming across Silvestre de Sacy's edition which is why he was given the task of correcting the edition in the first place. What may be counted as Western influence in the nineteenth-century *maqāma* is that his labour with the Western edition brought Al-Yāziğī into intimate contact with the *maqāmas* which he knew well,

[7] See Hämeen-Anttila, *Maqama*, pp. 351–352.

and this inspired him to write his *Majma‘ al-baḥrayn* which could well have remained unwritten had Al-Yāziğī not worked with an edition of Al-Ḥarīrī.

One can hardly call the eighteenth-century *maqāma* an innovative genre. The genre was, though, not thoroughly imitative and adverse to new developments. There are individual pieces of interest which have remained little studied, mainly, I think, because they fall in between Classical and modern literature. For Classical scholars, they are, perhaps, too late to kindle interest, and modern scholars tend to be more interested in those works that can be perceived as predecessors of modernity, which in the case of *maqāmas* is rarely the case. The eighteenth-century *maqāma*, thus, falls in between two different interests, neither of which fully covers the eighteenth-century literature.

Of the more interesting *maqāmas* several were written either by members of the Baghdadian As-Suwaydī family or their dependents. A curiously constructed *maqāma* that deserves attention is Al-‘Umarī’s ([170] d. 1193/1779) *Al-Maqāma ad-Duğailiyya*,[8] which contains a long exposition of heresies inserted within a well-told *maqāma* frame, and ends with a panegyric reference to two of the As-Suwaydīs. The narrative parts show dramatic sensitivity and the author is in creative dialogue with tradition. This is at its clearest in the beginning, where we have the typical scene of a company of elegant youths in a garden being disturbed by an intruder. What is new is that here the intruder is the narrator and the hero is one of the elegant youths, which turns the usual setting upside down. The innovative feature is, however, in a sense also extremely conservative. It inverts one of the basic topoi of the *maqāma* since Al-Hamaḏānī and, for its effect, depends on the familiarity of the topos. The innovation is based on internal development within the genre and it receives its piquancy from the fact that it stands in dialogue with the tradition.

The central part of Al-‘Umarī’s *maqāma*, the learned discussion of heresies, is basically an overly long showpiece of the hero’s eloquence and erudition. It differs from, e.g., Al-Ḥarīrī’s respective pieces only in two points, viz. its length and also perhaps its topic, which is less concerned with linguistic mastery than earlier *maqāmas* tended to be. When Al-Ḥarīrī gave his attention to the *fatāwā al-‘arab*,[9] it was not so much the religious content of the *fatwās* that was the point than the linguistic legerdemain involved in them. It is no wonder that the technical part in Al-Ḥarīrī’s *maqāma* was quoted by As-Suyūṭī in his linguistic encyclopaedia,[10] not in any of his religious works. Al-‘Umarī’s learned discussion is, moreover, written in a lively way which, rather surprisingly, is able to capture the attention of the reader through the lengthy exposition of heresies.

Another innovative *maqāma* written by the dependents of the As-Suwaydī family is *Al-Maqāma az-zar‘iyya* by Abū al-Fatḥ Naṣr Allāh al-Ḥusaynī ([162], presumably from the mid-eighteenth century), which, on first sight, might seem astonishingly modern in

---

[8] O. Rescher (ed.), *Maqāmāt al-Ḥanafī wa-Ibn Nāqiyā wa-ghayrihimā*, Istanbul 1330 A.H., pp. 199–285.

[9] In *al-maqāma al-Ṭaybiyya* (32). The technical part, for which see, e.g., Aš-Šarīšī: *Šarḥ maqāmāt al-Ḥarīrī*, ed. Muḥammad ‘Abd al-Mun‘im Ḫafāğī, Bayrūt s.a., vol. III, pp. 140–149, forms the core of the *maqāma*.

[10] As-Suyūṭī: *Al-Muzhir fī ‘ulūm al-luġa wa-anwā‘ihā*, eds. Muḥammad Aḥmad Ǧād al-Mawlā Beg, Muḥammad Abū al-Faḍl Ibrāhīm, ‘Alī Muḥammad al-Biğāwī, Ṣaydā/Bayrūt 1406/1986, vol. I, pp. 622–635.

tenor.[11] In this *maqāma*, the narrator (who bears the same name as the author) listens to complaints by the neglected crop made against the new town-dwelling owner of the field. The *maqāma* sounds like a eulogy on agriculture and is most untypical of Classical literature, which always remained either urban or Bedouin in tone. It could be read as social criticism and, hence, taken as an indication of changing times and changing social conditions and attitudes. Yet I am doubtful about such a reading, however tempting it might be. The tone of the *maqāma* is far from serious and it difficult to discern any real social agenda behind the lamentations by the crop. It is not the aim of the author to draw attention to the neglected agricultural system in eighteenth-century Iraq, however much it would have deserved attention. Instead, the *maqāma* is a playful petition to a patron and the rural point of view is there, I believe, to make the listeners/readers laugh, not to awaken them to the social malaise in the countryside. In this, it is somewhat similar to Aš-Širbīnī's ([144], d. after 1099/1687) *Hazz al-quḥūf*, which laughs at the villagers and their customs, but does this by presenting their life in a way which to a modern reader may bring social criticism to mind.[12] *Al-Maqāma az-zar'iyya* does, however, widen the scope of *maqāmas* by introducing a rural setting. It may also be that the gradual awakening of an interest in things outside contemporary cities and past fantasies of the imagined desert does foreshadow a change in social relations and attitudes and, hence, the *maqāma*, despite its basically conservative attitude may be taken as a sign of a changing world.

The As-Suwaydī family not only patronized *maqāma* authors. Some of them also tried their own hand at the genre. The most successful of the As-Suwaydīs was Šihāb ad-Dīn Aḥmad Ibn Abī al-Barakāt ([176] d. 1210/1795), whose romantic *maqāma* successfully describes garden scenes and romantic involvements, skilfully avoiding *muǧūn*, yet playing with erotic overtones.[13] The end of the *maqāma* turns to panegyric aims: the Lady, in whom the narrator-cum-author has fallen in love, advises him to turn to 'Uṯmān Efendi al-'Umarī, a *maqāma* author himself (cf. above), who will certainly be attentive to the eulogies which close the *maqāma*. A homoerotic *maqāma* of the late eighteenth century by Aḥmad al-Rasmī ([171] d. 1197/1783), ultimately inspired by Al-Hamaḏānī's *Al-Maqāma al-Asadiyya* and the tradition starting from there, is less successful, and descends at points into the obscene.[14] In fact, it seems that homoerotic themes more often verge on the obscene than heteroerotic ones. This phenomenon is already to be seen in, e.g., the *ghazals* of Abū Nuwās, whose *muḏakkarāt* are often bolder than his *mu'annaṯāt*.[15]

Eighteenth-century *maqāmas* did, then, sometimes introduce minor innovations. But where does this innovativeness come from? Changes in the eighteenth and the early nineteenth centuries are often attributed to European influence. In the case of *maqāmas*

---

[11] Rescher, *Maqāmāt*, pp. 311–328.

[12] H.T. Davies (ed. and transl.), *Yūsuf al-Shirbīnī's Kitāb Hazz al-Quḥūf bi-Sharḥ Qaṣīd Abī Shādūf ("Brains Confounded by the Ode of Abū Shādūf Expounded")*, I–II, Leuven 2004–2007.

[13] Rescher, *Maqāmāt*, pp. 286–311.

[14] Al-Murādī: *Silk al-durar fī a'yān al-qarn ṯ-ṯānī 'ašar*, I–IV, Al-Qāhira 1291–1301 A.H I, pp. 73–77.

[15] Jaakko Hämeen-Anttila, *Abū Nuwās and Ghazal as a Genre*, in: Thomas Bauer, Angelika Neuwirth (eds.), *Ghazal as World Literature* I: *Transformations of a Literary Genre*, Beirut 2005, pp. 87–105, 89–91.

it seems, though, that these changes are unlikely to be due to any European or outside influence. They grow from the tradition of the genre itself, crossbred mainly by the adjacent genre of *munāẓara* as well as romantic tales. Ḥasan al-ʻAṭṭār ([188] d. 1250/1834) did, to be sure, write a *maqāma* on the coming of the French and it certainly does take up an unprecedented theme, yet it hardly evidences European *literary* influence.

There was nothing new in making slight changes and introducing minor innovations in the genre. Most authors had always written strictly within the framework delineated by their predecessors, most notably by Al-Ḥarīrī, but there had always been exceptions, innovative authors searching for new ways of using the structure of the *maqāma*. Islamic Spain had been the hothouse of such innovations and some steps were taken there by authors such as Ibn aš-Šahīd ([12], late 5th/11th century) or even Ibn al-Aštarkūwī ([29] d. 538/1143) towards writing a kind of precursor to the modern novel, though the authors never took the final steps. After that, in late Medieval and Early Modern times, the *maqāma* made other innovative attempts. Limited innovativeness was part and parcel of the Classical tradition, and not every innovation needed to be backed up by foreign influence, literary or social. Classical Arabic literature in later centuries was conservative but not paralysed.

The eighteenth-century *maqāma* thrived within the Classical tradition, though this, perhaps, was its undoing. Al-Yāziğī's attempt to revive the genre was in a way fundamentalist. His *maqāmas* are strictly Ḥarīrian and it is no surprise that they could not revive the genre in the changing literary environment despite their own success. When Classical Arabic culture dwindled, *maqāmas* more or less dwindled with them.

After the eighteenth century, the development of the *maqāma* was twofold. Classical *maqāmas* were, and still are, written but more as an antiquarian hobby than as modern literature. Some, like Al-Ǧabārī ([211] d. before 1331/1913), made slight innovations, but still remained strictly within the framework of the Classical tradition.[16] Al-Ǧabārī's use of substandard language in his otherwise rather Ḥarīrian *maqāmas* might seem a European-inspired innovation, especially as the author worked as a civil servant for the French, yet this actually follows the tradition of the vulgar *maqāma*, which originated in the late twelfth century.

At the end of the 19th century and later, the Classical *maqāma* was crossbred with modern, Western-influenced literature by men such as Aḥmad Fāris al-Šidyāq (d. 1305/1887), Muḥammad al-Muwayliḥī (d. 1349/1930), Ḥāfiẓ Ibrāhīm (d. 1351/1932) and Bayram at-Tūnusī (d. 1380/1961). Yet the *maqāma* is merely one constituent part in their respective works and not perhaps the most seminal one. In other words, these authors wrote within the tradition of modern, Western-inspired literature and merely borrowed the title and/or some technical features from the *maqāmas*. Their works do not grow out of the *maqāma* genre, but only borrow from it. One may borrow the use of

[16] G. Faure-Biguet, M.G. Delphin, *Les Séances d'El-Aouali. Textes arabes en dialecte maghrebin*, "Journal Asiatique", Onzième Série 2 (1913), pp. 285–310; 3 (1913), pp. 303–374; 4 (1913), pp. 307–378.

complicated language, or even *sağ'*, or a picaresque hero, but the result is only loosely connected with Classical *maqāmas*, even when the term *maqāma* is used in the title.

Maqāmas may perhaps exemplify the situation of early modern literature in general. The Classical literary tradition did live on, but it was not very vivid. In time, it gave way to new genres which were only marginally influenced by the older tradition. In modern literature, the *maqāma* perhaps fared less well than some other genres. What, then, were the causes of the demise of the *maqāma*? Such questions are never answerable and proposed answers must always remain speculative. But if I am allowed to speculate on this, I would like to point out the highly specialized style of the *maqāmas*, which are defined more by their technique than by their content. Once you take the linguistic legerdemain out of a *maqāma* the cornerstone of the genre is lost and what remains is a variety of prose texts that may make excellent reading, but hardly differ from anecdotes and other genres. Obviously, anecdotes were the origin of picaresque *maqāmas*, which one might call long anecdotes with certain stylistic additions. Once these stylistic features are taken away, we are back to the anecdotes and the genre of *maqāma* has vanished into thin air.

Finally, one should not forget that even if we may be more interested in texts that presage the nascent modern literature, the eighteenth-century was still predominantly Classical. There were few texts that were in any sense modern and the (largely un-interesting) bulk of literature, quantitatively speaking, remained Classical or post-Classical. And when it specifically comes to *maqāmas*, one is hard put to point to any significant departures towards modernity in this genre.

R O C Z N I K O R I E N T A L I S T Y C Z N Y, T. LXV, Z. 2, 2012, (s. 13–20)

BARBARA MICHALAK-PIKULSKA

Theatre in the United Arab Emirates

Abstract

In the Emirates the first theatre productions took place in schools, for example in the al-Qassimiyya school in Aš-Šāriqa. For Emirate schools and those teaching within them were to produce the actors and dramatists of latter years. Following the gaining of independence in 1971 the Ministry of Culture lavished financial support on the numerous theatre groups that were coming into being. In the 1980s there were already 14 histrionic troupes. The organisation of the Ash-Shariqa Theatre Days (Ayyām Aš-Šāriqa al-Masraḥiyya) is viewed as a breakthrough in the history of Emirate theatre, this had its beginnings in 1984. The aim of the festival was the development of theatre all over all of the Emirates, the promoting of the performing arts, the development of knowledge about the theatre and art amongst young people. The theatrical productions that were staged from the very beginning were connected with the social current of expression which diligently accompanied the economic changes. The dramas presented a society that was comprehended the aim of life and the status of individual family members. Dramatists in presenting concrete examples from the reality that surrounded them desire to inform one of, and to instruct society. For the discovery of oil changed and divided society, one that had hitherto lived from fishing and the trade in pearls. The young generation brought up in plenty is directed towards quick profits, comfort and a consumer style of life.

Keywords: United Arab Emirates, theatre, drama, literature

Ḥabīb Ġulūm al-‘Aṭṭār in the introduction to the book *The Development of Theatrical Activity in the Gulf Region* wrote that theatre occupied an important place within the societies of the countries of the Gulf. At present theatre in these countries has been equipped with advanced technological equipment which has enabled those connected

with it to follow the very latest achievements in the field of the performing arts. Besides the Higher Institute of Theatre Arts in Kuwait there has been opened a theatre faculty at the Sultan Qābūs University in Oman as well as at two Saudi universities: the King Sa'ūd University and the Imām Muḥammad Ibn Sa'ūd University. Finally in 1999 the Theatre Institute was founded in Aš-Šāriqa.[1]

The development of theatre in the countries of the Gulf has been connected with the development of schooling. And so the first production entitled *Al-Qāḍī bi-amr Allāh* ("A Judge from God's Will") took place in Al-Muḥarraq in Bahrain 1925 on the boards of the al-Hadāya al-Ḫalīfiyya school.[2]

Equally in the Emirates the first theatre productions took place in schools, for example in the Al-Qāsimiyya school in Aš-Šāriqa. For Emirate schools and those teaching within them were to produce the actors and dramatists of latter years. Further development of theatre was to take place in sports clubs: Nādī al-'Umānī i Nādī aš-Ša'b wa-al-'Urūba in Aš-Šāriqa, Nādī Aš-Šurṭa and Nādī al-Ahlī ar-Riyāḍī in Abu Dhabi, Nādī aš-Šabāb in Dubai, Nādī an-Naṣr in Ajman, Nādī 'Umān in Ra's al-Khayma. Up until 1972 there were active within the United Arab Emirates twenty four clubs and in each of these there was a theatre troupe.[3] They did not always present plays. These were often merely sketches or occasional words and music pieces. The actors independently prepared the stage, the decorations and the costumes. In the day of no television or Internet these clubs fulfilled an exceptionally significant social role. The inhabitants met, talked, exchanged views. It was this very transfer of theatre from the schools to the clubs that resulted in its development. For actors did not have to be recruited from amongst pupils while the texts no longer needed to be confined to didactic matters.

The play by the Egyptian Maḥmūd Ġunaym *Al-Murū'a al-muqni'a* ("Sufficient Chivalry")[4] staged in 1955 is considered the beginning of the theatre movement in the United Arab Emirates. The first text to be written by an Emirate writer, by Sulṭān Ibn Muḥammad al-Qāsimī is the play entitled *Nihāyat Ṣahyūn* ("The End of Zion", 1958)[5]. This drama, in a similar way to the work by Ǧum'a Ġarīb, entitled *Al-Islām wa-at-ta'āwun* ("Islam and Cooperation") and performed in 1959, generated a wave of demonstrations against the British. *Nihāyat Ṣahyūn* examines the problem of the Palestinian conflict while at the same time sharply condemning the British authorities. The play heats up the lively debate as to the future of the Arab world as well as the role of western powers

---

[1] Habib Ghuloom al-Attar, *The Development of Theatrical Activity in the Gulf Region*, United Arab Emirates 2009, p. 11.

[2] Cf. Barbara Michalak-Pikulska, *Contemporary Arabic Theatre in Kuwait and Bahrain*, in: "Quaderni di Studi Arabi", No. 19, 2001, p. 168, Sami A. Hanna, *A Modern Cultural History of Bahrain*, Bahrain 1991, pp. 89–95.

[3] 'Abd Ilāh 'Abd al-Qādir, *Tārīḫ al-ḥaraka al-masraḥiyya fī Dawlat al-Imārāt al-'Arabiyya al-Muttaḥida 1960–1986*, Aš-Šāriqa-Abū Ẓabī 2007, 2nd edition, p. 20.

[4] This play is also found entitled *Ǧābir 'Aṯarāt al-Kirām* (own name).

[5] This play also had the title *Wukalā' Ṣahyūn* ("Agents of Zion").

in the settling of the problems of the Middle East.[6] Both plays were performed at the Folk Club (Nādī Aš-Ša'b) in Aš-Šāriqa.

An exceptionally important role in the development and propagating of theatre in the Emirates has been played by the local newspapers: "Ar-Rūla", "Kawālīs" and "Al-Masraḥ".

Following the gaining of independence in 1971 the Ministry of Culture lavished financial support on the numerous theatre groups that were coming into being. It helped with the organising of workshops. New artists and directors came to the Emirates. Amongst whom it follows to mention: Al-Munṣif as-Suwaysī, Ibrāhīm Ǧalāl, Fu'ad Aš-Šaṭṭī, and Ṣaqr Rašūd, who died tragically in an accident.

In the 1980s there were already 14 histrionic troupes. The most important of which is the National Theatre for Youth and Art (Al-Masraḥ al-Qawmī li-aš-Šabāb wa-al-Funūn) in Dubai. The idea to found this group was taken in 1972 while a year later it was already in operation as the first artistic body in the Emirates. Young people were associated with different clubs that put on plays under the auspices of the Ministry of Sport and Youth. One of the most important plays is: *At-Tubaḥ hā-al-marra* ("Forgive Me this Time") by 'Īsā Lūtāh and directed by Ẓā'in Ǧum'a in 1987. The drama concentrates on one of the most important social weaknesses that is indifference. The author points to the lack of possibility for understanding between people, while man is not the only element in the Universe. He has to understand his transitory nature. For too much attention is paid in man' life to unimportant things and he consequently losses everything that has real worth. The most important things in life happen quickly and one has to be diligent so as not to miss them. Art appears to bring with it a message of understanding amongst people. It shows that man devotes too much time to an analysis of his own experiences and consequently becomes indifferent to the problems of others.

The play entitled *Laḥaẓāt mansiyya* ("Forgotten Moments") by the Iraqi dramatist Ǧalīl al-Qaysī and directed by Ḥabīb Ġulūm in 1989 shows the heroine, one still in love with her husband, living in the hope of the return of her beloved. The day begins with thoughts of him. She does not feel the need to analyse the psychic state that has accompanied her since he left. She is filled with happiness and joy when she receives a telegram that he is returning. When it turns out, however, that the postman has given her another letter by mistake and the husband is not going to return to her she falls into sorrow and despair. Life seems to her to be an endless band of unhappiness which results in her inability to see in life any sense.

The members of the theatre under discussion came from various towns in the Emirates: Dubai, Aš-Šariqa, Ajman, Ra's al-Ḫayma, Umm al-Qaywayn. The most eminent personalities include: 'Abd Allāh 'Alī al-Muṭawwa', 'Alī Abū Ḫalīl, Ibrāhīm Ǧum'a, Ibrāhīm Ya'qūb, Ǧum'a Ġarīb, Mūza al-Mazrū'ī, Sulṭān Aš-Šā'ir, Aḥmad as-Sayyid, Ḥammād Sulṭān.

The National Theatre in Aš-Šāriqa (Masraḥ aš-Šāriqa al-Waṭanī) was created in 1976 and became one of the most active places for theatre in the United Arab Emirates.

---

[6] 'Abd al-Ilāh 'Abd al-Qādir, *Tārīḫ*…, pp. 18–19.

Troupe members included: ‘Alī Ḫumays, Muḥammad Yūsuf, Ṣayf al-Ġunaym, ‘Abd Allāh al-Manā‘ī. The most important task of the group was the reactivation of cultural life in Aš-Šāriqa.

One of the most interesting plays of this group is the drama *Hal šākil yā Za‘āfarān?* (“Is that What You Did to Zafaran?”) by the Qaṭarī ‘Abd ar-Raḥman al-Manā‘ī and directed by the Kuwaiti Fu’ad Aš-Šaṭṭī in 1983. The hero of the play, Za‘farān, a peasant cultivating melons, under the influence of pressure exerted by his wife stops selling the goods in his village and goes to the town so as to cash in more favourably on his harvests. This is an opportunity for him to confront the simple life led in the countryside with the pace of life in the town. The author is on the one hand referring to the Biblical influence exerted by Eve on Adam, who persuaded him to eat from the forbidden fruit which finally resulted in their expulsion from paradise, while on the other to show people who stand before a dilemma and choice involving new life routes. They are not devoid of fears over prospective changes. Only adapting to the new conditions will enable them to occupy a higher position in the social hierarchy.

The Dubai Folk Theatre (Masraḥ Dubayy Aš-Ša‘bī) was founded in 1976 as a branch of the Dubai Association of Folk Arts and Theatre (Firqat Masraḥ Ǧam‘iyyat Dubayy li-al-Funūn aš-Ša‘biyya). Among its eminent representatives are: Ismā‘īl Muḥammad, Aḥmad al-Anṣārī, Ǧum‘a Mubārak, Samīra Aḥmad, Munā Hamza. The first performance was staged in 1977.

There have appeared within the literary output of the Gulf many works devoted to domestic staff and service. Their heroes are usually Asian servants. The subject matter being an echo of the sizeable influx of labour motivated by financial remuneration. The play *Maṭlūb ḫaddāma ḥālan* (“Home Help Required at Once”) written by Muḥammad Sayyid, and directed in 1984 by Aḥmad al-Anṣārī shows the situation and problems connected with the presence of immigrants in Emirate households. The greatest of these is the influence on the upbringing of children. Servants were on the whole of another religion, spoke different languages and represented another cultural tradition. The authors of the spectacle wanted to arouse in their audience a sense of responsibility for their children.

Human existence and the attitude of man to suffering is the subject of the play *Bū Mahyūs fī warṭa* (“Bu Mahyus in Trouble”) written by Ǧamāl Sālim and directed in 1992 by Muḥammad Sayyid. The problem matter undertaken is one of the most important within the countries of the Gulf, namely the search for medical treatment abroad. This is connected with the unwillingness on the public in general to be treated by local doctors. They are witnesses to the inadequacies of the healthcare system in their country and know no peace until they have gone abroad. Foreign doctors appear to them to be more efficient and worthy of their trust. The dramatist attempts to convince the public, i.e. ordinary citizens to regain trust in local doctors and specialists.

National Theatre in Dubai (Masraḥ Dubayy al-Ahlī) was founded in 1981 (earlier it had functioned under the name of the Experimental Theatre (Al-Masraḥ at-Taǧrībī). The company was joined by numerous young well educated enthusiasts something that found reflection in the high level of creativity produced. These included: Ǧamāl Yūsuf

Maṭar, Ḫālid Aḥmad Ǧawād, Ḫālid Ǧum‘a, ‘Umar Ġubāš, Nāǧī al-Hāy. Besides the staging of theatrical works, the organising of lecturers and literary meetings there were also promoted presentations for children.

The action of the play *Ǧamīla* (“Jamila”) written and directed by Ǧamāl Maṭar in 1991 is played out on the coast, for the inhabitants of the Emirates are daily linked to the seashore and the experiences of all of them are directed to the coast. This was the main motor of local life that gave the population employment, nourishment, rest, freedom, hope and a subject for stories. In the play the grandmother is the representative of the past and tells the grandchildren stories and resurrects the local legends. While the heroine of the drama is a beautiful girl whose father has put aside a rich dowry for whoever tries for her hand. Finally this is to befall poor Maǧnūn, a boy from a social underclass, who unaware of the danger dives and in bringing pearls wins her hand. The father bound by his promise must give his daughter over to this good-for-nothing. The heroine equally does not object for her dream is to leave the family home. Once again it is shown what an important role is played in social relationships by breeding and wealth.

The Umm Al-Qaywayn National Theatre (Masraḥ Umm al-Qaywayn al-Qawmī) was founded in 1978. Its leading representatives include: Sa‘īd Sālim, Ǧāsim Ḫalfān, Sālim Sayfa, Sayf al-Ġāwī. The theatre’s activity is presented by the play *Bidūn ‘unwān* (“Without Address”) written by the Egyptian Aḥmad Sālim and directed by Sayyid Sālim in 1986. Once again the authors have taken up the subject of the newly enriched society that has forgotten about its basic obligations. The protagonists are parents neglecting their children. Absorbed by the ‘dash for cash’ they have no time to bring up their charges, who fall foul of drugs and bad company.

The theatre movement in the Emirates is not limited to these five groups. We may note equally the activities of others such as: *Masraḥ ‘Aǧmān aš-Ša‘bī* (The Folk Theatre in Ajman) and *Masraḥ an-Nādī al-Waṭanī li-aṭ-Ṭaqāfa wa-al-Funūn* (The National Club of Culture and Art) in Ajman, *Al-Masraḥ al-Ḥadīṯ* (The Contemporary Theatre) in Ash-Shariqa, *Masraḥ Ra’s al-Ḫayma al-Waṭanī* (The National Theatre) in Ra’s al-Khayma, *Masraḥ al-Fuǧayra al-Qawmī* (The National Theatre in Fujayra), *Masraḥ aṭ-Ṭalī’a* (The Avant-Garde Theatre) in Khor Fakkan, *Masraḥ Kalbā’ aš-Ša‘bī* (The Folk Theatre) in Kalba, *Ǧam‘iyyat Dibbā li-aṭ-Ṭaqāfa wa-al-Funūun wa-al-Masraḥ* (The Association of Culture, Art and the Theatre) in Diba.[7]

The activities of these many theatres prove that Emirate theatre is buoyant. Presently drawing more heavily on local Emirate texts, from the plays of Syrian dramatists such as Sa‘d Allāh Wannūs and ‘Alī ‘Uqla ‘Ursān or Egyptians: Sa‘d ad-Din Wahba, ‘Alī Sālim and Maḥfūẓ ‘Abd ar-Raḥmān. There are also produced adaptations of western plays with minor adaptations to accommodate them to local conditions in order for them to be well received by local theatre goers.

The organisation of the Aš-Šariqa Theatre Days is viewed as a breakthrough in the history of Emirate theatre, this had its beginnings in 1984. The originator was Sheikh of

---

[7] Cf. Al-Attar, *The Development*…, pp. 87–94.

Aš-Šariqa, Sulṭān Ibn Muḥammad al-Qāsimī. The aim of the festival was the development of theatre all over all of the Emirates, the promoting of the performing arts, the development of knowledge about the theatre and art amongst young people.

A subsequent step in reply to the need for development of theatre in the United Arab Emirates was the founding in the 1990s of the Theatre Association (Ǧam'īyyat al-Masraḥiyyīn), whose task is to combine in activities with the authorities aimed at achieving the greater financial and developmental possibilities. Besides the Association represents Emirate theatrical institutions abroad. It was also responsible for the organisation of theatre workshops, conferences, festivals, competitions and the popularisation of theatre amongst young people.

Without doubt Emirate theatre differs today noticeably from what it was in the past. It is an obvious fact that the movement has achieved a level of maturity both in the quantity and quality of the dramas written and produced. The originality of Emirate theatrical creators suggests that the period of infancy for this recently born art is already truly in the past.

The most interesting dramas of the last decade include: *Qabr al-wālī* ("The Benefactor's Grave") by Ǧamāl Maṭar of 1998. The subject under discussion is a timeless one and recalls the novel by Ṭaha Ḥusayn *Šaǧarat al-bu's (*"The Tree of Unhappiness") and the short stories by Maḥmūd Taymūr. The story takes place in a small village where rain has not fallen for a long time. The drought is blamed on the dumb heroine of the drama (in a similar way to how the son's ugly wife is blamed for all the misfortunes the befall the family in the novel *Šaǧarat al-bu's)*. They happen upon the village two men who desire to enrich themselves through the sale of the water they have brought on their donkey. When the animal dies they bury it under a nearby tree. Then the inhabitants of the village approach and while greetings of welcome are exchanged it starts to rain. The situation is a great blessing and saviour of the village. The inhabitants consider the guest to be sent from heaven, while the buried animal as holy remains (there are similar occurrences in the short stories of Taymūr, e.g. *'Āmm Mitwallī* ("The Uncle Mitwallī"), *Šayḫ Sayyid al-abīt* ("Stupid Sheikh Sayyid"). The incomers decide to take advantage of the naivety of the people and to stay on in the village which results in many amusing situations. The drama is enhanced by local colour and folk songs. The subject is for certain to be repeated many times more as exploitation of the poor and the naive is prevalent in all times and places.[8]

The subject matter of the play *Wa maḏā ba'd?* ("And What Then") by Ḥabīb Ġulūm al-'Aṭṭār from 2002 is the freedom of the word. It depicts an unhappy and lonely journalist who loses his job as a result of articles of a political nature. This event disillusions him and forces him to give up on his youthful ideals. He shuts himself away in a room with a computer and piles of paper. After losing his wife – with who he assumes he is conducting a conversation – he feels lonely, he experiences a period of depression and cannot perceive

[8] On the basis of an interview conducted by Barbara Michalak-Pikulska with Bilāl Baddūr in Dubai 20th of January 2010.

the sense in life itself. His dead wife symbolises in the play the lost homeland, which is constantly present in the life of the hero. The room becomes his prison, in which he undergoes the loss of his individuality. He writes articles which he sells a budding journalist. Ḥabīb Ġulūm al-'Aṭṭār's play *Wa maḍā ba'd?* was given an award in 2002.[9]

Upon reading the play reflections on the media come to the fore, the television and Internet, which play and will play a key role in the forming of ways of behaviour in Arab society as well as shaping outlooks. The author considers, in a way similar to many publicists and journalists within the Emirates, that the best way to fight the negative influences within the state is the development, modernisation and free functioning of the local media.[10]

In the works of the dramatists theatrical plays cease being a passive account of events illustrating traditional social life, but rather consciously undertake the question of man and his place in the contemporary world. Not only has the thematic scope of the dramatists broadened but also the differentiation of the roles of the heroes' individual and social attitudes to the changes brought in by the current times. The quick arising of new rich districts that accompanies the economic development arouses mixed feelings in the older inhabitants. This is recounted by the play entitled *Šammā* ("Shammā", 2003) by 'Umar Ġubāsh. The heroine observes the destruction of the old houses and bazaars on whose place new building arise that reflect in their dimensions and splendour the newly enriched society. A women experiences sadness, pain, helplessness and loss. In a similar way to the hero of Ḥabīb Ġulūm al-'Aṭṭār's play she also finds solace in talking to her dead husband. She is aware of her own distinctness and is tormented by the social regulations in force. The play is clearly linked to the economic boom which resulted in an influx of capital, labour and the construction of the cities. The new social class caused damage to the traditional model of life. Despite the fact that the generation of grandfathers and fathers still tightly held on to traditional values and religion this generation of educated sons was and is open to progress and civilisation.

The theatrical productions that were staged from the very beginning were connected with the social current of expression which diligently accompanied the economic changes. The dramas presented a society that was comprehended the aim of life and the status of individual family members. For from men there was expected strength, riches, a high social position, while from women total subservience, a conscientious fulfilment of domestic duties as well as numerous heirs which would consolidate the image of a woman as a wife and mother. Dramatists in presenting concrete examples from the reality that surrounded them desire to inform one of, and to instruct society. For the discovery of oil changed and divided society, one that had hitherto lived from fishing and the trade in pearls. The young generation brought up in plenty is directed towards quick profits, comfort and a consumer style of life.

---

[9] On the basis of an interview conducted by Barbara Michalak-Pikulska with Ḥabīb Ġulūm al-'Aṭṭār in Shariqa on the 21st of January 2010.

[10] Cf. F. as-Sayegh, *Arab Media must try to meet its social responsibility*, "Gulf News" 23.07.2004.

We also observe in Emirate literature the problems of struggled for independence along with those of Arab unity. This can be particularly strongly felt in the plays of Sulṭān Ibn Muḥammad al-Qāsimī. The drama mentioned at the beginning *Nihāyat Ṣahyūn* of 1958 undertakes an analysis of the Palestinian conflict to ultimately lay blame at the foot of Western powers for the undoing of the Palestinian people. Another play by Al-Qāsimī, entitled *'Awdat Hūlākū* (*Holaku's Return*) from 1998 plays out the action in the 13th century though events actually refer to the present day. Already in the Prologue does the dramatist make it clear that "In reading the history of the Arabs I discovered that what occurred before the collapse of the Abbasid Caliph is similar to that which is occurring at present within Arab countries. Therefore I wrote this play from the perspective of history in order to present our painful present".[11]

The event in the drama are based on historical facts and relate to the taking of the Abbasid capital by the grandson of Chingiz Khan. The author shows the background of negotiations between the Caliph Musta'ṣim and Hulagu and the crisis that subsequently arose. All the events end tragically – with the death of the caliph and the fall of Baghdad. The play exposes two heroes: the figure of the weak and naive caliph as well as of the wise military leader Ad-Duwaydār. Caliph Musta'ṣim in the face of danger escapes in the face of responsibility into pleasure and play. He is unable to behave in a dignified way in opposition to his commander who is prepared to sacrifice his life for the good of his homeland. Between them Al-Qāsimī places the figure of the traitor Ibn al-'Alqām, the minister who has conspired with Hulagu in order to later become the marionette ruler of Baghdad. He is reduced to the rank of a physical object completely subordinated to the invaders in a way that later his son is also to be. The minister finally becomes aware of the immensity of the evil he has instigated but it is already too late. His place is taken by his son – bearing the self same name.

The play shows how weak and defenceless man can be in the face of history. The dramatist ponders the moral evaluation of his protagonists' deeds, wherein the threat of which arouse raw instincts, rapacity and hypocrisy. For after all history is awash with the constant letting of blood, of victories, the defeated and death. Thus man is embroiled in history. It appears that subsequent generations are on their way to death. The past, the present and the future do not differ from each other. Therefore the play *'Awdat Hūlākū* by Sulṭān Ibn Muḥammad al-Qāsimī as a timeless quality to it.

In summing up it follows to state that within the course of a few dozen years Emirate writers have created a substructure for the dramatic arts in every possible meaning of the phrase. They have developed their own style and subject matter. They have shown contemporary society in the day of immense economic-social changes. They have been courageous enough to criticise backward traditions and customs, to expose naked rapacity and have analysed the behaviour of this newly enriched society regardless of the consequences that threaten them. They have become the witnesses of social, cultural and structural changes.

---

[11] Sultan bin Mohammed Al Qasimi, *Holaku's Return*, Sharjah 2004, p. 5.

ROCZNIK ORIENTALISTYCZNY, T. LXV, Z. 2, 2012, (s. 21–47)

EDWARD LIPIŃSKI

Arabic Linguistics
A Historiographic Overview

Abstract

The study of Arabic language seems to have started under the driving need to establish a correct reading and interpretation of the Qur'ān. Notwithstanding the opinions of some writers about its origins one should stress that the script and spelling of the Holy Writ derives directly from the Nabataean cursive. Aramaic Nabataean script was used to write Old Arabian since the first century A.D., also at Taymā' and Madā'in Ṣaliḥ, in the northern part of the Arabian Peninsula. Variant readings and divergent interpretations of Qur'ānic sentences, based on ancient Arabic dialects, are not expected to disturb the Arabic grammatical tradition, which was possibly influenced to some extent by Indian theories and Aristotelian concepts. It served as foundation to modern European studies and was then expanded to Middle Arabic, written mainly by Jews and Christians, and to the numerous modern dialects. From the mid-19th century onwards, attention was given also to pre-classical North-Arabian, attested by Ṣafaitic, Ṯamūdic, Liḥyanite, and Ḥasaean inscriptions, without forgetting the North-Arabian background and the loanwords of Nabataean Aramaic, as well as the dialectal information from the 7th–8th centuries, preserved in Arabic sources.

Keywords: Arabic language, Linguistics, Grammar, Qur'ān, North-Arabian

The study of Semitic grammar, either Arabic, Syriac or Hebrew, started under the driving need to establish a correct reading and a proper interpretation of the Holy Scriptures, the Qur'ān and the Bible, both in their formal and semantic dimensions. In the first centuries of Islam, the lack of a vowel system and of diacritical signs distinguishing

some consonants, as well as the territorial expansion of the Arabs to countries with a population speaking other idioms, required a grammatical and semantic analysis of problematic passages in the Qur'ān and in the Ḥadīṯ[1]. Besides, the Qur'ān was basically written in the Hiğāzi idiom used in the Qurayš tribe for poetry and perhaps also for writing in general. Its language was regarded as close to a classical form of Arabic, the purity and clarity of which had to be preserved.

1. The Qur'ān and Classical Arabic

According to the Muslim tradition, Muḥammad did not collect himself the revelations of the Qur'ān, "recited" to him by Allāh or by his angel. This was done, after various attempts, about twenty years after the Prophet's death in 632 A.D. The first comprehensive written version is attributed by the tradition to Zayd Ibn Ṯābit, who has been Muḥammad's secretary. He was instructed in the reign of Abū Bakr (*ca*. 573–634 A.D.) to collect the scattered records in one volume. This manuscript passed to 'Umar (*ca*. 581–644 A.D.) and, at his death, to his daughter Ḥafṣa, one of Muḥammad's widows. When in the reign of 'Uṯmān (*ca*. 574–656 A.D.) quarrels arose as to the true form of the Qur'ān, Zayd was again appointed by the caliph, together with three members of the Qurayš tribe, to prepare an authoritative version, obviously based also on oral tradition. Copies of this were sent to the main cities of the empire, and all earlier written versions or transcripts, except the text of Ḥafṣa, were ordered to be burned. The recension of 'Uṯmān thus became the only standard text for the whole Muslim world up to the present day. Its absolute value was guaranteed by the *tadwīn*, a term used in the 10th-century *Rasā'il Iḫwān aṣ-Ṣāfa*[2] to describe the divinely inspired editing of the Qur'ān.

The final result of this tradition broadly corresponds to the opinion of Western scholars who generally accept Theodor Nöldeke's and Friedrich Schwally's conclusion that the written Qur'ān was not sent into general circulation among the Muslims until some time after the death of *Mu*ḥammad[3]. In the meantime, however, the political situation of the Arab world had so profoundly altered that Günther Lüling, a German Arabist, assumed that 'Uṯmān's recension amounted to nothing less than a reworking of the Qur'ān

---

[1] This other Islamic holy writ was at least partly put in writing in the 8th century, probably earlier. Cf. I. Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien* II, Halle 1890 (reprints, Hildesheim 1971, 2004), pp. 1–274.

[2] "Writings of the Pure Brethren" edited in four volumes in 1347 A.H.; cf. C. Brockelmann, *Geschichte der arabischen Literatur*, 2nd ed., vol. I, Leiden 1943, pp. 236–237.

[3] Th. Nöldeke's original *Geschichte des Qorâns* was published at Göttingen in 1860, but its second edition is generally used nowadays: Th. Nöldeke, *Geschichte des Qorāns* I–III, 2nd ed., Leipzig 1909–1938 (6th reprint, Hildesheim 2008). Vol. I (1909), dealing with the origins of the Qur'ān, was revised by F. Schwally; vol. II (1919), concerning its compilation, was completely rewritten by F. Schwally; vol. III (1926), the history of the text, was reworked by G. Bergsträsser and O. Pretzl. The indices to the three volumes were prepared by A. Gottschalk-Baur and issued in 1938.

texts[4]. His thesis and the forwarded arguments are unconvincing, while the presence of such a precept as Sura XXIV, 2, contradicting the Islamic death penalty for adultery, shows that the preservation of the original contents was the main concern of the redactors, possibly of Zayd Ibn Ṯābit.

Lüling's ideas are paralleled to a certain extent by the views of John Wansbrough who dates the basic codification of the Qur'ān from the 9th century A.D.[5] Few readers seem to have embraced this opinion. In fact, Chapter 101 of the *Dialectica*, written by St. John of Damascus (*ca*. 675–752) in the first half of the 8th century, refers to the Qur'ān, which no doubt constituted a well-known work at that time[6]. Its existence in the mid-8th century or at an earlier date is implied also by two Arabic papyri from Egypt, going probably back to the time of Theodore Abū Qurra (*ca*. 740–820)[7], bishop of Harran, and paraphrasing some passages of the Qur'ān. Moreover, titles of Suras appear already in *Dialectica* 101 and in the papyri in question, indicating that the Qur'ān had a relatively firm shape at that time[8]. This does not mean of course that variants and free copies or paraphrases did not exist or have disappeared completely with the introduction of the standard version. The fragments of the so-far oldest Qur'ānic text, a palimpsest discovered at Ṣan'ā' (Yemen) in the 70's of the 20th century and probably dating from the first half of the 8th century A.D., show different sequences of Suras and verses, omissions and additions, as well as some different vowel letters[9]. Such fragments do certainly not imply that the edition of a standard version is a utopian idea. As for the Arabic script, its perfect development in the early 8th century is shown for instance by the inscription engraved on the capital from Al-Muwaqqar (Jordan), shown here below. Its date, 104 A.H., i.e. 723 A.D., is inscribed on the shaft of the column.

---

[4] G. Lüling, *Über den Ur-Qur'ān*, Erlangen 1974; id., *Die Wiederentdeckung des Propheten Muhammad. Eine Kritik am "christlichen" Abendland*, Erlangen 1981.

[5] J. Wansbrough, *Quranic Studies. Sources and Methods of Scriptural Interpretation*, Oxford 1977; id., *The Sectarian Milieu, Content and Composition of Islamic Salvation History*, Oxford 1978.

[6] For the authenticity of this chapter, see A.-Th. Khoury, *Les théologiens byzantins et l'Islam. Textes et auteurs (VIII^{e}–XIII^{e} s.)*, Münster i. W. 1966, pp. 49–65; id., *Der theologische Streit der Byzantiner mit dem Islam*, Paderborn 1969, pp. 12–17; D.J. Sahas, *John of Damascus on Islam: The "Heresy of the Ishmaelites"*, Leiden 1972, pp. 60 ff.

[7] First published by G. Graf in F. Bilabel and A. Grohmann (eds.), *Griechische, Koptische und Arabische Texte zur Religion und religiösen Literatur in Ägyptens Spätzeit*, Heidelberg 1934, pp. 1–24 (No. 112) and pp. 24–31 (No. 113).

[8] Cf. J. van Ess, rev. in "Bibliotheca Orientalis" 35 (1978), pp. 349–353, in particular pp. 352–353. There is a lack of concrete evidence in some discussions of Wansbrough's books, e.g. H. Berg (ed.), *Islamic Origins Reconsidered: John Wansbrough and the Study of Islam*, Berlin 1997; J.A. Majaddedi, *Taking Islam Seriously: The Legacy of John Wansbrough*, in: "Journal of Semitic Studies" 45 (2000), pp. 103–114.

[9] E. Puin, *Ein früher Koranpalimpsest aus Ṣan'ā'*, in: M. Gross and K.-H. Ohlig (eds.), *Schlaglichter. Die beiden ersten islamitischen Jahrhunderte*, Hans Schiler, Berlin 2009, pp. 463–515; G.-R. Puin, *Die Utopie einer kritischen Koranedition. Ein Arbeitsbericht*, ibid., pp. 516–571.

Capital from Al-Muwaqqar (Ammān, Archaeological Museum, J. 5058)

However, a serious question can be raised because of the lack of diacritics and vowel signs in the early manuscripts of the Qur'ān. The shape of one character has no less than five reading possibilities (*b, t, ṯ, n, y*), if the diacritical dots are missing, while other have three *(ǧ, ḥ, ḫ)* or two possibilities (*d* and *ḏ*, *r* and *z*, *s* and *š*, *ṣ* and *ḍ*, *ṭ* and *ẓ*, ‘ and *ġ*). This situation results from the use of the cursive post-Nabataean script[10] to write the Qur'ān in the mid-7th century. This Aramaic script was not distinguishing a number of phonemes existing in spoken Arabic; besides, it was lacking diacritics and vowel signs. Both were progressively introduced, following the Syriac example[11]. The earliest attestation of diacritics in Arabic is found in an inscription from 58 A.H. and their use was slowly generalized in the 8th and 9th centuries[12]. In the early Islamic period, two types of Arabic writing existed, known as Kufic and cursive *nasḫī*. The former was discontinued except for formal purposes, where cursive writing could not be employed. The *nasḫī* is the parent of usual and modern Arabic writing.

---

[10] Cf. E. Lipiński, *Émergence et diffusion des écritures alphabétiques,* "Rocznik Orientalistyczny" 63/2 (2010), pp. 71–126, in particular pp. 116–117 with earlier literature. All Arabic characters are similar to the cursive Nabataean ones, and ten are similar to Nabataean only, not to Syriac. The question can thus be regarded as finally resolved.

[11] W. Diem, *Untersuchungen zur frühen Geschichte der arabischen Orthographie I. Die Schreibung der Vokale*, "Orientalia" 48 (1979), pp. 207–257; *II. Die Schreibung der Konsonanten,* "Orientalia" 49 (1980), pp. 67–106; *III. Endungen und Endschreibungen,* "Orientalia" 50 (1981), pp. 332–383; *IV. Die Schreibung der zusammenhängenden Rede. Zusammenfassung*, "Orientalia" 52 (1983), pp. 357–404. Cf. S. Morag, *The Vocalization System of Arabic, Hebrew and Aramaic. Their Phonetic and Phonemic Principles*, 's Gravenhage 1962.

[12] A. Grohmann, *Arabische Paläographie* II, Wien 1971, p. 41.

Vellum leaf of a Qur'ān manuscript (8 x 13 cm.) from the 10th century A.D., probably from Kairouan, written in *Kufic* script with only a few diacritics marked in red

Considering the problematic or obscure Qur'ānic passages one should accept the possibility of mistakenly added diacritics. For instance, St. John the Baptist is called *Yaḥyā* in the present punctuation of the Qur'ān[13], but the consonants also allow the reading *Yuḥannā*, which probably corresponds to an early pronunciation of the name. In fact, when the Mandaeans introduced John the Baptist in their literary tradition to show to the Muslims that they have a Prophet recognized in the Qur'ān, they first called him *Yōḥannā*, as shown by his mentions in the *Ginza*, their earliest sacred book. Later, in the so-called *John-Book*, they mainly use the name *Yaḥyā*[14]. This punctuation was very likely chosen by Muslim scholars because *Yuḥannā* does not appear in Arabic onomastics, while *Yaḥyā* is a well attested name, occurring already in Ṣafaitic inscriptions[15].

Some twelve years ago, Christoph Luxenberg (a pseudonym) suggested a number of repunctuations of Qur'ānic words, referring sometimes to Aramaic or Syriac[16]. The most spectacular case is supposed to occur in Sura XLIV, 54 and LII, 20, where the happy afterlife of the pious dead is described also by the phrase: "We coupled them (*zawwağnāhum*) with nymphs (*ḥūrīyāt*)". Luxenberg proposes changing the diacritics in order to read *rawwaḥnāhum*, "we gave them rest", while the *ḥūrīyāt* become "white", in Aramaic *ḥiwwārāt*[17]. However, he hardly pays attention to the *y* of *ḥūrīyāt* and to the use of the variant *rayyaḥa* or of Stem IV *arāḥa* in the sense "to give rest", while *rawwaḥa* could rather mean "to revive the spirits". There are errors in Luxenberg's transcriptions of Syriac words, but it is pointless to discuss them because the basic idea of a Syriac

---

[13] Sura III, 34/39; VI, 85; XIX, 7.

[14] Cf. M.-J. Lagrange, *La gnose mandéenne et la tradition évangélique* (suite), "Revue Biblique" 37 (1928), pp. 5–36 (see pp. 25–31).

[15] G.L. Harding, *An Index and Concordance of Pre-Islamic Arabian Names and Inscriptions* (Near and Middle East Series 8), Toronto 1971, p. 662: *YḤYY*.

[16] Chr. Luxenberg, *Die syro-aramäische Lesart des Koran. Ein Beitrag zur entschlüsselung der Koransprache*, Das Arabische Buch, Berlin 2000; 3rd ed., 2007. Cf. S. Hopkins, rev. in "Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam" 28 (2003), pp. 377–380; F. Corriente, *On a Proposal for a 'Syro-Aramaic' Reading of the Qur'ān*, "Collectanea Christiana Orientalia" (Cordoba) 1 (2004), pp. 305–314; M. Grodzki, *Philological and Historical Contribution to an Unconventional Review of Early Islamic History*, "Rocznik Orientalistyczny" 63/2 (2010), pp. 23–38, referring also to later publications of Chr. Luxenberg and other authors.

[17] Chr. Luxenberg, *Die syro-aramäische Lesart des Koran* (n. 16), pp. 256–275.

background lacks any factual support. Besides, as a matter of principle, one should reckon with ancient Arabian dialects, as done by Chaim Rabin[18], and with the North-Arabian inscriptions[19] before using Aramaic, whose vocabulary influenced Arabic, as shown already in the 19th century by Sigmund Fraenkel (1855–1909)[20], but mainly at a somewhat later stage. This is a basic methodological question undermining Luxenberg's approach. The language of the Qur'ān certainly exhibited differences from the spoken dialects, but it was also supposed to contain real or assumed dialectal words[21]. Moreover, one should not forget that Arabic script derives from Nabataean cursive, not from Syriac. Also the non-classical feminine ending *-a* is indicated by *-h* like in Nabataean, e.g. *nḥlh*, "estate", *š'h*, "hour", contrary to Syriac, which always uses the *ālaf*.

One should still stress here that some statements of Luxenberg and of authors defending similar ideas are historically incorrect, for instance when stating that the personal name *Muḥammad* does not appear before year 67 A.H., i.e. towards the end of the 7th century A.D. In reality, this name is attested already hundreds of years earlier in Sabaic and in Ṣafaitic, which was a pre-Classical Arabic dialect[22]. Also the name '*Abd-Ilah* of Muḥammad's father is well attested in Ṯamūdic, Ṣafaitic, and South-Arabian onomastics[23]. Such examples can be multiplied.

Arab commentators of the Qur'ān knew its internal problems, and their early treatises demonstrate that ambiguous and variant readings did indeed occur across the whole range of lexical and morphosyntactic issues: from simple pronunciation variants through different case endings or verbal forms, synonyms or near synonyms, to interpretations of whole phrases. A state of the art is presented in the *Encyclopaedia of the Qur'ān*[24], where one should consult not only the article on Qur'ānic readings[25], but also the contributions dealing with textual criticism[26], grammar[27], and exegesis[28].

---

[18] C. Rabin, *Ancient West-Arabian. A Study of the Dialects of the Western Highlands of Arabia in the Sixth and Seventh Centuries A.D.*, London 1951.

[19] Cf. here below, pp. 37–47.

[20] S. Fraenkel, *Die aramäischen Fremdwörter im Arabischen*, Leiden 1878 (reprint, Hildesheim 1982). Cf. also A. Mingana, *Syriac Influence on the Style of the Ḳur'ān*, "Bulletin of the John Rylands Library" 11 (1927), pp. 77–98. Since Mingana regards *'allāh, kāhin, nafs, qur'ān*, etc., as words derived from Syriac, one should approach his article with a critical mind. A plural like *sfrh*, "scribes", in Sura LXXX, 15, goes certainly back to Aramaic, but it could be Syriac as well as Jewish Aramaic. In any case, one must remember that Nestorian missionaries have reached South Arabia in the 5th century A.D. at the latest.

[21] Now, one must remember that it was often impossible for the Arabic script to express genuine dialect forms, just as it is inadequate today for writing the colloquial forms of speech.

[22] G.L. Harding, *An Index and Concordance* (n. 15), p. 531.

[23] Ibid., pp. 397, 400.

[24] J.D. McAuliffe (ed.), *Encyclopaedia of the Qur'ān* I–VI, Leiden 2001–2006.

[25] F. Leemhuis, *Readings of the Qur'ān*, in J.D. McAuliffe (ed.), *Encyclopaedia of the Qur'ān* IV, Leiden 2004, pp. 353–363.

[26] J.A. Bellamy, *Textual Criticism of the Qur'ān*, in *Encyclopaedia of the Qur'ān* V, Leiden 2006, pp. 237–252.

[27] R. Talmon, *Grammar and the Qur'ān*, in *Encyclopaedia of the Qur'ān* II, Leiden 2002, pp. 345–369.

[28] C. Gilliot, *Exegesis of the Qur'ān: Classical and Medieval*, in *Encyclopaedia of the Qur'ān* II, Leiden 2002, pp. 99–124.

Among the problematic passages best known are "the seven variant readings" or *qirā'āt*, described by Abū Bakr Ibn Muğāhid (d. 935 A.D.)[29], but phonological, semantic, and grammatical analyses of problematic passages in the Qur'ān are more important than simple lists of variants to establish the "true" meaning of the text. Hence the endeavour of early Arab philologists to explain rare or difficult Qur'ānic words in works quoted later under the name *Kitāb al-luġāt*, "Book on the Dialects", or the like. We possess one of these monographs, the *Risāla* ("Treatise") ascribed to Abū 'Ubayd Qāsim Ibn Sallām al-Harawī[30]. The purpose of those lexicographers was somewhat similar to that of the oldest linguistic treatise preserved in India: the *Nirukta* ("Etymology") of Yāska, a Sanskrit scholar of the 5th century B.C.[31] He provides brief explanations of Rigvedic words which had become obscure. As a matter of fact, Abū 'Ubayd's *Risāla* was written when the study of Arabic grammar was already established as an independent discipline, traditionally represented by the Kufan and Basran schools[32].

Farrā' (d. 822 A.D.) from Kufa (12 km north-east of An-Naǧaf, Iraq) analyzed problematic Qur'ānic passages from the phonetic, morphological, and contextual points of view in his "Meanings of the Qur'ān"[33]. Without presenting a complete study of syntactic structures, he examined the sense of various words in larger components, sometimes above the level of the sentence. This approach records the Indian treatises following the *Mahābhāṣya* ("Great Commentary") of Patañjali (*ca*. 150 B.C.). Farrā' was extremely detailed as to questions of pronunciation and morphology, while scarcely touching syntax. Instead, a considerable attention was given to the syntax in the Basran school of Arabic grammar, whose main representative is Sībawayhi (d. 793 A.D.)[34], who studied at Basra under Al-Ḫalīl Ibn Aḥmad Ibn 'Amr (710–786 A.D.)[35]. Al-Ḫalīl was the leader of the Basran school and the compiler of the first Arabic dictionary, the *Kitāb al-'Ayn*, "The

---

[29] Abū Bakr Ibn Muğāhid, *Kitāb as-sab'a fī al-qirā'āt*, ed. Šawqi al-Ḍayf, Cairo 1979.

[30] Abū 'Ubayd Qāsim Ibn Sallām al-Harawī (d. 838 A.D.), *Risāla fī-mā warada fī al-Qur'āni al-Karīmi min luġāt al-qabā'ili*, Cairo 1310 A.H.

[31] For a comparison of ancient Semitic and Sanskrit semantic speculations, see W. van Bekkum, J. Houben, I. Sluiter, and K. Versteegh, *The Emergence of Semantics in Four Linguistic Traditions: Hebrew, Sanskrit, Greek, Arabic*, Amsterdam 1997. The classical grammar of Panini was published and translated by O. Böthlingk, *Panini: Grammatik*, Leipzig 1887 (reprint, Hildesheim 1977).

[32] For a survey of the Arabic grammatical literature, see F. Sezgin, *Geschichte des arabischen Schrifttums* IX. *Grammatik*, Leiden 1984. For the early period, see C.H.M. Versteegh, *Arabic Grammar and Qur'ānic Exegesis in Early Islam*, Leiden 1993; R. Talmon, *Eighth-Century Iraqi Grammar: A Critical Exploration of Pre-Ḫalīlian Arabic Linguistics* (Harvard Semitic Studies 53), Winona Lake 2003; cf. K. Versteegh, rev. in: "Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam" 30 (2005), pp. 528–535. A bibliography concerning grammatical questions of classical and colloquial Arabic can be found in E. Lipiński, *Semitic Languages. Outline of a Comparative Grammar* (OLA 80), Leuven 1997, pp. 610–617; 2nd ed., Leuven 2001, pp. 628–636.

[33] Abū Zakariyyā al-Farrā', *Ma'ānī al-Qur'ān*, ed. by M. 'Ali an-Naǧǧār and A. Yūsuf Naǧātī, Beirut 1983. Cf. N. Kinberg, *A Lexicon of al-Farrā"s Terminology in His Qur'ān Commentary*, Leiden 1995.

[34] Sībawayhi is the nickname of Abū Bišr 'Amr Ibn 'Uṯman Ibn Qanbar. He was a Persian client of an Arab tribe.

[35] W. Reuschel, *Al-Ḫalīl ibn Aḥmad, der Lehrer Sībawaihs, als Grammatiker*, Berlin 1959.

Book of the Eye"[36]. The work was compiled with the help of Al-Layṯ Ibn al-Muẓaffar, a Khorasani. Al-Ḫalīl paid attention also to dialectal usages, listing roots separately in accordance with the number of letters they contained: two, three, four or five. He also invented a special alphabetic order based on phonetic principles, beginning with the gutturals and ending with the labials. This suggests Sanskrit grammatical influence[37], but no direct contacts are known. However, Basra was a harbour trading with India and its area was inhabited also by Mandaeans, among whom we find names such as *Ḥyndw* and *Ḥyndwyt'*, revealing relations with Northwestern India[38]. Some knowledge of Sanskrit grammar could thus reach Al-Ḫalīl quite easily.

The same can be said about Sībawayhi's *Kitāb*[39], the first known full-scale Arabic grammar, on which all subsequent Arabic grammars were based. Like Sanskrit, which makes a perfect distinction between nouns and verbs, the *Kitāb* distinguishes the categories of noun and verb, but adds a third part of the speech, viz. the particle, while Sanskrit includes the indeclinable words in the category of nouns. The *Kitāb* applies both to nouns and to verbs the notion of *'irāb*, literally "Arabization" in the sense of "accidence" or inflection of words. This appellation seems to be suggested by the Greek use of ἑλληνισμός to designate the correct Greek speech. Instead, Sanskrit grammarians termed inflection *vibhakti-*, "modification", as being a change in the bare stem-form. Greek influence on Sībawayhi is appearing also in the use of some other grammatical terms and in the choice of particular words for the paradigms of the nouns. Such influence is likely to have been carried into Arabic by the early converts from the conquered territories, many of whom belonged to educated social classes. The parts of speech and their syntactic use are dealt with in the *Kitāb* in great detail, with supporting quotations from the Qur'ān and from Arabic poetry. Instead, Sībawayhi shows little interest in the dialects[40] and he mainly mentions such dialectal usages that were permissible in the *luġā faṣīḥā*, the "correct speech" as he conceived it.

Similarities in some terminology do no answer the question of the origins of the Arabic grammatical tradition[41], which as early as *ca*. 800 A.D. had a depth and precision

---

[36] There are manuscripts of the *Kitāb al-'Ayin* in Tübingen and Baghdad. Cf. S. Wild, *Das Kitab al-'Ain und die arabische Lexikographie*, Wiesbaden 1965. For a survey of Arabic lexicography, see F. Sezgin, *Geschichte der arabischen Schrifttums* VIII. *Lexikographie*, Leiden 1982.

[37] J. Danecki, *Indian Phonetical Theory and the Arab Grammarians*, "Rocznik Orientalistyczny" 44/1 (1985), pp. 127–134; V. Law, *Indian Influence on Early Arab Phonetics – or Coincidence?*, in: K. Versteegh and M.G. Carter (eds.), *Studies in the History of Arabic Grammar* II, Amsterdam 1990, pp. 215–227.

[38] J.A. Montgomery, *Aramaic Incantation Texts from Nippur*, University of Pennsylvania. The Museum. Publications of the Babylonian Section III, Philadelphia 1913, Nos. 40 and 38; E.M. Yamauchi, *Mandaic Incantation Texts*, New Haven 1967, Nos. 25, 16 (*Ḥyndw*); 23, 3.9.12.13.14 *(Ḥyndwyt*' with variants).

[39] Sībawayhi, *Al-Kitāb fi'l an-naḥw*, published by H. Derenbourg, *Le livre de Sibawayhi, traité de grammaire arabe*, Paris 1881–1889 (reprint, Hildesheim 1970), and translated into German by G. Jahn, *Sibawayhi's Buch über die Grammatik, übersetzt und erläutert*, Berlin 1894–1900 (reprint, Hildesheim 1969).

[40] A. Levin, *Sibawayhi's Attitude to the Spoken Language,* "Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam" 17 (1994), pp. 204–243.

[41] The debate among Western scholars have been presented several times by J. Owens, *The Foundations of Grammar: An Introduction to Medieval Arabic Grammatical Theory*, Amsterdam 1988; id., *Early Arabic Grammatical*

unexplainable in terms of borrowing. Its earlier stage was scrutinized by Raphael Talmon on the basis of twenty-seven scattered texts[42], but none stands as a work of pure grammar and one can hardly follow him in assuming the existence of a full-fledged "Old Iraqi School", reformed by Al-Ḫalīl and Sībawayhi[43].

Arabic grammar and linguistics have generally been regarded by native scholars as a science elaborated by Arabs independently from a foreign model during the first centuries of the Islam. Modern scholarship has concurred with this view to a large extent and Henri Fleisch only admitted the influence exercised by a few concepts of Aristotelian logic[44]. Against this view, C.H.M. Versteegh maintained that the Greek impact on the nascent Arabic grammar should not be traced to the Aristotelian logic, still unknown in the 8th century among Arab grammarians[45], but that "the real influence was exercised by Hellenistic education institutes with their long-standing tradition of grammar-teaching"[46]. The sudden appearance of a complete grammatical system with Al-Ḫalīl and Sībawayhi at Basra should thus be explained by direct contacts with schools of Greek rhetoric and grammar. Instead, the influence of Aristotelian logic, presupposing the translation of Greek philosophical texts into Arabic, did not become apparent before the 10th century, when some grammarians of Arabic introduced Aristotelian notions, methods, and arguments in their writing. The basic system of Arabic grammar was then elaborated since two centuries.

Versteegh's basic hypothesis of "growing acquaintance with Greek grammatical practice"[47] lacks any evidence and one cannot accept his sheer assumption that Arab grammarians failed to mention any Greek grammarians because of their hostility to foreign culture[48]. Rather, the mode of transmission of Aristotelian concepts and of some Greek grammatical elements must have been similar to that of Christian influences on early Muslim law and theology, as exposed already by J. Schacht[49]. Such influences were carried into Islam by converts from cities in conquered territories, many of whom belonged to the educated classes. One should refer here especially to Syriac-speaking

---

Theory: Heterogeneity and Standardization, Amsterdam 1990; id., *Models for the Interpretation of the Development of Medieval Arabic Grammatical Theory*, "Journal of the American Oriental Society" 111 (1991), pp. 225–238; id., *The Arabic Grammatical Tradition*, in: R. Hetzron (ed.), *The Semitic Languages*, London 1997, pp. 46–58.

[42] R. Talmon, *Eighth-Century Iraqi Grammar* (n. 32).

[43] R. Baalbaki, rev. in: "Journal of Semitic Studies" 50 (2005), pp. 413–416.

[44] H. Fleisch, *Traité de philologie arabe* I, Beyrouth 1961, pp. 1–50, 470–500. The idea was first expressed by A. Merx, *Historia artis grammaticae apud Syros*, Leipzig 1889 (reprint, Nendeln 1966), pp. 141–148.

[45] The hypothesis of early Arabic translations of Greek logical treatises lacks so far a solid basis. It was formulated both by F. Rundgren, *Über den griechischen Einfluss auf die arabische Nationalgrammatik*, "Acta Universitatis Upsaliensis", n.s. 2 (1976), pp. 119–144, and by R. Talmon, *Eighth-Century Iraqi Grammar* (n. 32).

[46] C.H.M. Versteegh, *Greek Elements in Arabic Linguistic Thinking* (Studies in Semitic Languages and Linguistics 7), Leiden 1977, p. 13.

[47] Ibid., p. 18

[48] Ibid., p. 120.

[49] J. Schacht, *New Sources for the History of Muhammadan Theology*, "Studia Islamica" 1 (1953), pp. 23–42 (see pp. 26–27).

people, either having access to Syriac translations of Aristotelian philosophical writings, like that of the *Categories*, going back to the 6th century[50], or trying to prevent an inappropriate reading of the Holy Scripture by introducing the vocalic signs[51]. This system was in fact adopted by Arab scribes in the 8th century and further research should look for other elements of Syriac origin in early Arabic grammar without running off the rails like Luxenberg and company.

Arabic system of grammar as a whole, however, was developed without foreign influence. The latter is appearing in some lexicographic conceptions, in an apparently similar terminology, in reflexes of Aristotelian logic[52], but basic grammatical notions seem to presuppose a native understanding of the spoken language. This is exemplified by the absence of an univocal concept of subject in mediaeval Arabic linguistic theory. This is no sign of its inferiority, as stated by Henri Fleisch, but the correct assessment of the different role of the subject in a verbal and in a nominal clause. The logical subject of the verbal clause, *al-fā'il*, "the acting one", seems in fact to go back to the *casus agens* of an ergative grammatical system, while the subject of the nominal clause, *al-mubtada' bihi*, "the one with whom one begins", goes apparently back to the *casus patiens*. These are remote traces of ergativity the characteristic feature of which is that the object of transitive verbs is the same case as the subject of intransitive verbs, whereas the subject of transitive verbs is in a particular case, the ergative. In Berber dialects, this difference appears also in stative and fientive sentences, e.g. ***a***-*ġyul immut*, "the donkey is dead", and *immut* ***u***-*ġyul*, "the donkey died".

The grammars of the post-Sībawayhi period were more transparent than the *Kitāb*. The centre of grammatical studies shifted in the mid-9th century to Baghdad, the seat of the caliphate, and some creative activity lasted there until the end of the 10th century, influenced undoubtedly by Aristotelian logical principles[53]. With Abū 'Alī al-Qālī, still known as al-Baġdādī, the Arabic grammatical tradition migrated to Cordoba[54], in Spain, while various summaries of reference grammars were then written. Nevertheless, the Arabic grammatical tradition remained basically unchanged[55], and it served as foundation to the modern European grammars of Classical Arabic[56], the first one being Guillaume Postel's (1510–1581) *Grammatica Arabica*, issued in 1538. It was followed by the grammar of

---

[50] D. King, *The Earliest Syriac Translation of Aristotle's* Categories*: Text, Translation and Commentary* (Aristoteles Semitico-Latinus 21), Leiden 2010. In the same period, Τέχνη γραμματική of Dionysius Thrax was translated into Syriac by Joseph Ḥūzāyā.

[51] See here above, pp. 24–25.

[52] Cf. here above, p. 28.

[53] A. Elamrani-Jamal, *Logique aristotélicienne et grammaire arabe*, Paris 1983; Shukri ibn Abed, *Aristotelian Logic and the Arabic Language in Alfārābi*, New York 1991.

[54] J. Grand' Henry, *De Baghdad à Cordoue. Une migration de la tradition grammaticale arabe,* "Res Orientales" 7 (2010), pp. 119–128.

[55] For a concise presentation of its form, see J. Owens, *The Arabic Grammatical Tradition*, in: R. Hetzron (ed.), *Semitic Languages*, London 1997, pp. 46–58, with further bibliography.

[56] J. Fück, *Die arabischen Studien in Europa bis in den Anfang des 20. Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig 1955. Cf. also I.J. Kratschkowski, *Die russische Arabistik. Umrisse ihrer Entwicklung*, Leipzig 1957.

Thomas Erpenius (1584–1624)[57], reedited several times, among others by Jacob Gool in 1656.

The remarkable achievement of George Sale (*ca*. 1697–1736) should be mentioned here, although this was no linguistic publication. Sale was a lawyer, but his heart lay in oriental scholarship and he had a European reputation as an orientalist. Having studied Arabic for some time in England alongside Arab scholars who had come to London to assist in the Arabic version of the New Testament to be used by Syrian Christians, he became the chief corrector of this work, begun in 1720 by the Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge. But Sale's main accomplishment was an admirable English translation of the Qur'ān, printed in 1734[58]. It was the first English version based on the original Arabic text and it surpassed earlier works of the kind in the quality of translation. Sale's Qur'ān remained the best available English version of the Holy Writ until the end of the 19th century.

Erpenius' "immortal grammar" was followed by the works of Antoine Isaac Silvestre de Sacy (1758–1838)[59], of Heinrich G.A. Ewald (1803–1875)[60], Carl Paul Caspari (1814–1892)[61], Albert Socin (1844–1899)[62], M.S. Howell[63], N.V. Yushmanov (1896––1946)[64], M. Gaudefroy-Demombynes and R. Blachère (1900–1973)[65], C. Brockelmann (1868–1956)[66], B.M. Grande[67], W. Fischer[68], Janusz Danecki[69]. The majority of European

---

[57] Th. Erpenius, *Grammatica Arabica*, Leiden 1613; new ed., Leiden 1748. He also published a grammar of the Hebrew language: Th. Erpenius, *Grammatica Ebraea generalis*, Leiden-Geneva 1621; 2nd ed., 1627.

[58] G. Sale, *The Koran, commonly called The Alcoran of Mohammed*, London 1734; 2nd ed., 1764.

[59] A.I. Silvestre de Sacy, *Grammaire arabe* I-II, Paris 1810; 2nd ed., 1831; 3rd ed., 1904.

[60] H.G.A. Ewald, *Grammatica critica linguae Arabicae*, Leipzig 1831-33. For the role of H.G.A. Ewald in biblical studies and in comparative historical Semitics, see T.W. Davies, *Heinrich Ewald, Orientalist and Theologian*, London 1903; H.J. Kraus, *Geschichte der historisch-kritischen Erforschung des Alten Testaments*, Neukirchen 1956, pp. 182–190.

[61] C.P. Caspari, *Grammatik der arabischen Sprache*, 2nd ed., Leipzig 1859; 3rd ed., 1866; *Arabische Grammatik*, 5th ed. by A. Müller, Halle 1887, translated into English, revised, and published by W. Wright, *A Grammar of the Arabic Language*, Cambridge 1862; 3th ed. rev. by W.R. Smith and M.J. de Goeje, 1896–1898 (reprints, 1951, 1986). French edition: C.P. Caspari, *Grammaire arabe. Traduite de la 4e éd. allemande et en partie remaniée par E. Uricoechea*, Paris 1881.

[62] A. Socin, *Arabische Grammatik* (Porta Linguarum Orientalium 4), 4th ed., Berlin 1899; 6th ed., 1909; 9th ed. by C. Brockelmann, 1925.

[63] M.S. Howell, *A Grammar of the Classical Arabic Language*, Allahabad 1883–1911 (reprint 1986).

[64] Н.В. Юшманов, *Грамматика литературного арабского языка*, Leningrad 1928.

[65] M. Gaudefroy-Demombynes and R. Blachère, *Grammaire de l'arabe classique*, Paris 1937; 3rd ed., 1952 (reprint, 1975).

[66] C. Brockelmann, *Arabische Grammatik*, 10th ed., Berlin 1929; 12th ed., Leipzig 1948; 21st ed., 1982 (reprint, 1992).

[67] Б.М. Гранде, *Грамматическое таблицы арабского литературного языка*, Moscow 1950; id., *Курс арабской грамматики в сравнительно-историческом освещении*, Moscow 1963.

[68] W. Fischer, *Grammatik des klassischen Arabisch*, Wiesbaden 1972; 3rd ed., 2002, with a rich bibliography. For a concise presentation by the same author, see W. Fischer, *Classical Arabic*, in: R. Hetzron (ed.), *The Semitic Languages*, London 1997, pp. 187–219. See also W. Fischer and H. Gätje (eds.), *Grundriss der arabischen Philologie* I–III, Wiesbaden 1982–1992.

[69] J. Danecki, *Gramatyka języka arabskiego*, Warszawa 1994; id., *Klasyczny język arabski*, Warszawa 1998.

grammars of Arabic are based on the old traditions of Arab grammarians. An exception is N.V. Yushmanov's grammar, as well as the syntax of modern Arabic prose by V. Cantarino[70].

Arab scholars were active also in the field of lexicography. A particular problem is created there by the *aḍdād*. A *ḍidd* is a word or a root with supposed two opposite meanings. An instructive analysis of *aḍdād* has been provided by David Cohen[71], who distinguishes "false *aḍdād*" from real "antithetic meanings". The first group contains not only unnoticed textual errors and misspellings, but also apparently opposite meanings resulting from syntagms using different prepositions, like *raġiba fī*, "he turned to", and *raġiba 'an*, "he turned away from", providing seemingly contrary meanings: "to like" and "to dislike". Disregard of dialectal differences, popular idioms, technical or professional language, semantic development lead also to the creation of alleged *aḍdād*. Instead, actually opposite meanings result from metaphors and euphemisms, like *baṣīr*, "seeing", to denote a blind man, from extrapolations, like in the case of *bay'a*, "commercial transaction", what can mean either "sale" or "purchase", and mainly from extra-linguistic factors, like traditional, dogmatic or theological interpretations of passages in the Qur'ān and the Ḥadīṯ. Although these contrary meanings were interpretative in their origin ("this means that ..."), they were conceived by Arab lexicographers as *aḍdād* and projected into the semantic sphere.

The fifteen volumes of Ibn Manẓūr's (1232–1311 A.D.) *Lisān al-'Arab* contain about 80,000 entries[72], but the main organizing principles within the lemmas, representing a root, were semantic with little or no attention to the morphology. In Europe, one had to wait until the early 17th century to have a proper dictionary of the Arabic language. Pedro de Alcála's *Vocabulista* of 1505 was a Spanish-Arabic glossary in transcription only, and the Arabic lemmas of Valentin Schindler's (d. 1604) *Lexicon pentaglotton*, published in 1612, were printed in Hebrew characters. The first dictionary of the Arabic language in Arabic characters to be printed was the *Lexicon Arabicum* of Franciscus Raphelengius (1539–1597), the son-in-law of Plantin and collaborator of the Antwerp Polyglot Bible. He became printer to Leiden University in 1586 and was appointed professor of Hebrew in 1587. His dictionary was published by his sons after his death, and was composed with the Arabic types specially cut for him in 1595 by Hondius. Thomas Erpenius added an important section of philological *Observationes in Lexicon Arabicum* (pp. I–LXVII)[73].

The Arabic lexicon of Jacobus Golius (Gool, 1625–1667)[74] dominated the field until Georg Wilhelm Freytag's dictionary appeared[75]. The next large-scale modern Arabic

---

[70] V. Cantarino, *Syntax of Modern Arabic Prose* I–III, Bloomington 1974–1975. See further: H. El-Ayoubi, W. Fischer, and M. Langer, *Syntax der arabischen Schriftsprache der Gegenwart* I/1-2, Wiesbaden 2000–2003.

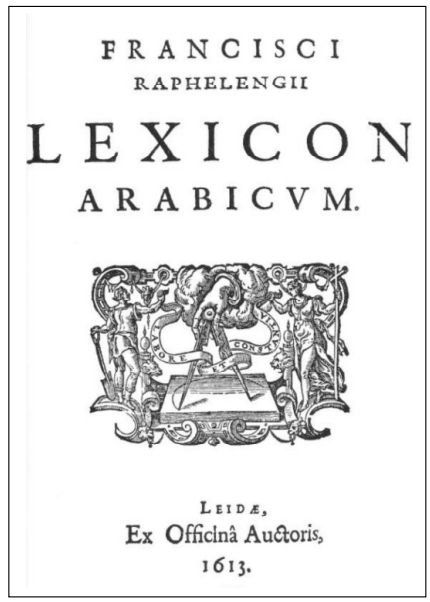
[71] D. Cohen, *Études de linguistique sémitique et arabe*, The Hague 1970, pp. 79–104.

[72] Ibn Manẓūr, *Lisān al-'Arab*, Beirut 1955–1956 (reprint, 1970).

[73] F. Raphelengius, *Lexicon Arabicum*, Leiden 1613.

[74] J. Golius, *Lexicon Arabico-Latinum*, Leiden 1653.

[75] G.W. Freytag, *Lexicon Arabico-Latinum, praesertim ex Djeuharii Firuzubadiique et aliorum libris confectum* I–IV, Halle 1830–1837 (reprint, 1975).


FRANCISCI
RAPHELENGII
LEXICON
ARABICVM.
LEIDÆ,
Ex Officinâ Auctoris,
1613.

dictionary was the Arabic-English lexicon of Edward William Lane (1801–1876), which has hardly been superseded[76]. However, the lexicon is incomplete and only sketches remain after the beginning of letter *kāf*. The International Congress of Orientalists adjudged the completion of the work as a matter of high priority, but only the letters *kāf* and *lām* have so far been published in order to fill the gaps in Lane's work[77]. Among the major dictionaries of Classical Arabic used nowadays, one can mention the volumes prepared by R. Blachère, C. Pellat, M. Chouémi, and C. Denizeau[78], and the dictionaries of H. Wehr[79], Ch.K. Baranov[80], J. Kozłowska and J. Danecki[81], Jerzy Łacina[82]. There are also specialized dictionaries, as the one concerning the Aristotelian terminology of Al-Fārābī (*ca*. 870–950)[83] or the Arabic translations of Galen's medical work *De simplicium medicamentorum temperamentis ac facultatibus*, translated *ca*. 800 by Al-Biṭrīq and *ca*.

[76] E.W. Lane, *Arabic-English Lexicon*, 8 vols, London-Edinburgh 1863–1893 (reprints, 1955–1956, 1968). Parts 6–8 were edited by his nephew S. Lane-Poole.

[77] M. Ullmann, *Wörterbuch der klassischen arabischen Sprache* I, *kāf*, Wiesbaden 1970; II/1-4, *lām*, Wiesbaden 1984–2009. No further volumes are planned for the near future. The letters still missing are *mīm, nūn, hā', wāw*, and *yā*'.

[78] R. Blachère, C. Pellat, M. Chouémi, and C. Denizeau, *Dictionnaire arabe-français-anglais (langues classique et moderne)*, Paris 1963 ff. The modern language is, of course, the Standard Literary Arabic.

[79] H. Wehr, *Arabisches Wörterbuch für die Schriftsprache der Gegenwart*. *Arabisch-Deutsch*, Wiesbaden 1952; 5th ed., 1985. English edition by J.M. Cowan: *Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic*. *Arabic-English,* Wiesbaden 1971; 4th ed., 1979.

[80] Х.К. Баранов, *Арабско-русский словарь*, Moscow 1957; 6th ed., 1985.

[81] J. Kozłowska and J. Danecki, *Słownik arabsko-polski*, Warszawa 1996.

[82] J. Łacina, *Słownik arabsko-polski*, Poznań 1997.

[83] I. Alon and S. Abed, *Al-Farabi's Philosophical Lexicon* I–II, Cambridge 2007.

870 by Ḥunayn Ibn Isḥāq[84]. Comparison of these two versions, as well as of translations of other Gallen's works, of Hypocrates, Dioscurides Pedanius, Philomenus of Alexandria, Aristoteles, etc., enables M. Ullmann to follow the development of Arabic scientific terminology from its beginnings to its maturity. One should also mention the Greek and Arabic lexicon in progress[85].

2. Middle Arabic and Arabic Dialects

Grammatical study of Classical and Standard Literary Arabic represents only one aspect of Arabic linguistics as practiced on a scholarly level since the 20th century. Modern colloquial Arabic in its multiple forms, spoken from Central Asia (Uzbekistan)[86] and the Persian Gulf to the Atlantic Ocean, is an important field of linguistic research[87], promoted in the mid-20th century by J. Cantineau, Ph. Marçais, etc. The recent introduction to the geography of Arabic dialects can be helpful here[88], while studies of particular modern dialects are published, among others, in the series *Semitica Viva*[89]. Useful information on the linguistic situation in the Maghrib is provided by Gilbert Grandguillaume[90].

Arabic-speaking societies are continuously confronted with problems arising from the so-called diglossia, i.e. the simultaneous existence of regional dialects of low social status and a rather different literary language of high prestige, the modern form of Classical Arabic: the Modern Standard Arabic (MSA), symbol of the Arabic cultural heritage. The latter is mastered more or less perfectly after many years of studying, while the dialect, acquired by children as a first language, generally remains the language one thinks in.

---

[84] M. Ullmann, *Wörterbuch zu den griechisch-arabischen Übersetzungen des 9. Jahrhunderts*, Wiesbaden 2002; *Supplement* I–II, Wiesbaden 2006–2007.

[85] G. Endress (ed.), *A Greek and Arabic Lexicon*, Leiden 1992 ff.

[86] O. Jastrow, *Wie arabisch ist Uzbekistan-Arabisch?*, in: E. Wardini (ed.), *Built on Solid Rock. Studies in Honour of Prof. E.E. Knudsen*, Oslo 1997, pp. 141–153.

[87] The manual of W. Fischer and O. Jastrow, *Handbuch der arabischen Dialekte*, Wiesbaden 1980, gives an idea of the extension of this field. See also J. Danecki, *Wstęp do dialektologii języka arabskiego*, Warszawa 1989; id., *Współczesny język arabski i jego dialekty*, Warszawa 2000; A.S. Kaye and J. Rosenhouse, *Arabic Dialects and Maltese*, in: R. Hetzron (ed.), *The Semitic Languages*, London 1997, pp. 263–311; O. Jastrow, *Arabic Dialectology. The State of Art*, in: Sh. Izre'el (ed.), *Semitic Linguistics: The State of the Art at the Turn of the 21st Century*, Winona Lake 2002, pp. 347–377. There is a dictionary of the dialects spoken in the main Levantine centres: A. Barthélemy, *Dictionnaire arabe-français. Dialectes de Syrie: Alep, Damas, Liban, Jérusalem*, Paris 1935–1969, with Arabic words printed in the International Phonetic Alphabet. A supplement was published by C. Denizeau, *Dictionnaire des parlers arabes de Syrie, Liban et Palestine*, Paris 1960. For Yemen, there is the work of M. Piamenta, *Dictionary of Post-Classical Yemeni Arabic*, Leiden 1990–1991. See further B. Podolsky, *A Selected List of Dictionaries of Semitic Languages*, in: Sh. Izre'el (ed.), *Semitic Linguistics: The State of the Art at the Turn of the 21st Century*, Winona Lake 2002, pp. 212–221, in particular pp. 214–216.

[88] P. Behnstedt and M. Woidich, *Arabische Dialektgeographie. Eine Einführung*, Leiden 2005; īd., *Wortatlas der arabischen Dialekte* I. *Mensch, Natur, Fauna und Flora*, Leiden 2010.

[89] *Semitica Viva*, Wiesbaden 1987 ff.

[90] G. Grandguillaume, *Arabisation et politique linguistique au Maghreb*, Paris 1983.

The interferences are thus frequent and their importance depends mainly on social factors and situations. This Arabic bilingualism or diglossia has phonological, morphological, syntactical, and lexical aspects, as well as literary and cultural ones. The concrete problems differ from country to country. Arabic diglossia in Syria, Lebanon, and Cairo has been admirably studied and its complexity clearly presented by Werner Diem[91] in the line of Uriel Weinreich's theoretical study of languages in contact[92].

Some fifty years ago, C.A. Ferguson developed the theory that mediaeval and modern Arabic dialects have developed from a single *koiné* after the Islamic conquest[93]. In the light of studies on Arab dialectology, this theory is simply unacceptable, as stressed already by Joshua Blau[94]: "the picture would seem to be that of a great variety of Bedouin and Middle Arabic dialects existing from the very beginning of the conquests"[95]. One can certainly go up to the Byzantine and Roman times, pointing at the varieties of Ṣafaitic and Ṯamūdic dialects. Also David Cohen's[96] hypothesis of modern dialects emerging from a number of *koinés* in different centres seems to be unacceptable. The dialects of the Bedouin and of the country people existed independently from the various urban vernaculars, and local *koinés* rather developed from regional dialects. Of course, innovations in modern Arabic dialects can result from external influences, especially in bilingual societies. This is certainly the case of the Cypriot Maronite Arabic, where the protracted linguistic influence of Greek is perceptible, especially in phonology and vocabulary[97]. A similar situation occurs in Maltese Arabic[98].

The modern idioms can be morphologically quite different from the Classical language, even so the dialects spoken in the interior of the Arabian Peninsula, although they preserve some archaic features[99]. Middle Arabic, known thanks to mediaeval sources, is closer to the colloquial forms of Arabic than is the idiom used in Muslim literature, which is a classical form. These sources are generally either Christian or Jewish. Christian Arabic texts comprise documents, translations from Greek, Syriac, etc., and original compositions like the theological treatises of Yaḥyā Ibn ʻAdī (893–974), the language of which is almost classical[100]. The reference grammar to Christian Arabic, published in 1965–1967

---

[91] W. Diem, *Hochsprache und Dialekt im Arabischen. Untersuchungen zur heutigen Zweisprachigkeit*, Wiesbaden 1974; 2nd ed., 2006.

[92] U. Weinreich, *Languages in Contact*, New York 1953.

[93] C.A. Ferguson, *The Arabic Koiné,* "Language" 35 (1959), pp. 616–630.

[94] J. Blau, *The Importance of Middle Arabic Dialects for the History of Arabic,* in: *Studies in Islamic History and Civilization*, Jerusalem 1961, pp. 206–228.

[95] Ibid., p. 226.

[96] D. Cohen, *Études de linguistique* (n. 71), pp. 105–125.

[97] M. Tsiapera, *A Descriptive Analysis of Cypriot Maronite Arabic*, The Hague 1969; A. Borg, *Cypriot Arabic*, Stuttgart 1985.

[98] D. Cohen, *Le système phonologique du maltais, aspects synchroniques et diachroniques*, in: *Études de linguistique* (n. 71), pp. 126–149.

[99] H. Palva, *Linguistic Observations of the Explorers of Arabia in the 19th century*, in: E. Wardini (ed.), *Built on Solid Rock. Studies in Honour of Prof. E.E. Knudsen*, Oslo 1997, pp. 226–239.

[100] G. Endress, *The Works of Yaḥyā ibn ʻAdī*, Wiesbaden 1997.

by Joshua Blau[101], could of course not take recently discovered texts into account, like the 155 Christian Arabic manuscripts found in 1975 in St. Catherine's Monastery at Mount Sinai, some of which date from the 9th century[102].

Judaeo-Arabic texts, either Rabbanite or Karaite, have the peculiarity of being written in Hebrew characters. A large number of such Karaite manuscripts from both Firkovitch collections are in St. Petersburg and many fragments of the kind have been found in the Cairo Genizah. The Judaeo-Arabic language has been studied by J. Blau[103]. A further linguistic study, characterized by a diachronic approach and based on mediaeval and post-mediaeval letters from the Cairo Genizah, is provided by Esther-Myriam Wagner[104]. It mainly aims at describing the features of epistolary Arabic from different periods, as distinguished from both the vernacular and literary languages. Beside Judaeo-Arabic, there is a lexicon of Andalusian Arabic, composed by Pedro de Alcalá and analyzed by F. Corriente[105], who also studied the grammar of some Andalusian Arabic compositions[106] and provided a dictionary[107].

One should record here the existence of *garshuni* texts, written in Arabic but in Syriac script. It was used by Christians, just as Jews were writing Arabic in Hebrew script, and by no means indicates that Arabic writing system was not yet fully developed. Its beginning can be dated to the 9th century A.D., when Arabic has become the dominant language in northern Mesopotamia. Its earliest known example seems to be provided by a *garshuni* receipt, written exceptionally in *estrangela* script, in the manuscript Add. 14644 of the British Library[108]. This *garshuni* text is undoubtedly a transcription of an original *nasḫī* text, written without diacritics, as shown by some erroneous readings. The earliest

---

[101] J. Blau, *A Grammar of Christian Arabic based mainly on South-Palestinian Texts from the First Millennium* (CSCO 267, 276, 279), Louvain 1965–1967.

[102] Their catalogue was published by I.E. Meïmáris, *Κατάλογος τῶν νέων ἀραβικῶν χειρογράφων τῆς 'Ιερᾶς μονῆς 'Αγίας Αἰκατερίνης τοῦ 'Ορους Σινᾶ*, Athens 1985. See also B. Isaksson, *The Monastery of St. Catherine and the New Find*, in: E. Wardini (ed.), *Built on Solid Rock. Studies in Honour of Prof. E.E. Knudsen*, Oslo 1997, pp. 128–140, in particular pp. 136–137.

[103] J. Blau, *A Grammar of Medieval Judaeo-Arabic*, Jerusalem 1961; 2nd éd., 1980 (reprint, 1995) (in Hebrew); id., *The Emergence and Linguistic Background of Judaeo-Arabic. A Study of the Origins of Middle Arabic*, London 1965; 2nd ed., Jerusalem 1981; 3rd ed., 1999; id., *Studies in Middle Arabic and Its Judaeo-Arabic Variety*, Jerusalem 1988; id., *A Handbook of Early Middle Arabic*, Jerusalem 2002; id., *A Dictionary of Mediaeval Judaeo-Arabic Texts*, Jerusalem 2006.

[104] E.M. Wagner, *Linguistic Variety of Judaeo-Arabic in Letters from the Cairo Genizah*, Leiden 2010.

[105] P. de Alcalá, *Arte para ligeramente saber la lengua arávigna*, Granada 1505, reedited by F. Corriente, *El lexico árabe andalusi según P. de Alcalá*, Madrid 1988. See also A. Lonnet, *Les textes de Pedro de Alcalá. Édition critique*, Louvain-Paris 2002.

[106] F. Corriente, *A Grammatical Sketch of the Spanish Arabic Dialect Bundle*, Madrid 1977; id., *Gramática, métrica y texto del cancionero hispanoárabe de Aban Quzmán*, Madrid 1980. See also L.P. Harvey, *The Arab Dialect of Valencia in 1595*, "Al-Andalus" 36 (1971), pp. 81–115.

[107] F. Corriente, *A Dictionary of Andalusi Arabic*, Leiden 1997, with the critical review of J.D. Latham, "Journal of Semitic Studies" 45 (2000), pp. 200–209.

[108] F. Briquel Chatonnet, A. Desreumaux, and A. Binggeli, *Un cas très ancien de* garshuni*? Quelques réflexions sur le manuscrit BL Add. 14644*, in: P.G. Borbone, A. Mengozzi, and M. Tosco (eds.), *Loquentes linguis. Studi linguistici e orientali in onore di Fabrizio A. Pennacchietti*, Wiesbaden 2006, pp. 141–147.

dated *garshuni* text would instead date from 1402[109]. It is only towards the end of the 19th century that attention was attracted by B. Carra de Vaux to these linguistically and thematically interesting Arabo-Christian texts. Orthography, vocabulary, and syntax are in general conform to Classical Arabic, but vowels can be added, revealing the actual pronunciation. There are, for instance, funerary inscriptions, various manuscripts[110], as well as fragments of a Christian commentary to the Qur'ān[111]. The latter's original goes probably back to the 9th century.

3. Pre-Classical North-Arabian

Pre-Islamic North-Arabian dialects are known thanks to the early Arab philologists, who have preserved some dialectal information from the 7th–8th centuries A.D. As far as recorded in ancient Arabic sources, they have been examined by C. Rabin and F. Corriente[112]. Thousands of Ṣafaitic graffiti from southern Syria, Jordan, and northern Saudi Arabia, in part still unpublished, provide an older source for the Old Arabian dialects. Written in a variant of the South-Arabian alphabet, they date from the 1st century B.C. through the 4th century A.D. They are called Ṣafaitic because they belong to a type of inscriptions first discovered and copied in 1857 by Cyril C. Graham in the basaltic desert of Ṣafā', southeast of Damascus[113]. The following year, in 1858, J.G. Wetzstein, the Prussian consul in Damascus, copied 379 texts in the Ḥarra region, ten of which he published in his report[114]. On his travels in Syria, Melchior de Vogüé (1829–1916) copied 402 inscriptions, which he published in 1869–1877[115]. Attempts to decipher them were then made by O. Blau and D.H. Müller, but it is Joseph Halévy (1827–1917) who managed in

---

[109] F. Briquel Chatonnet, *De l'intérêt de l'étude du garshouni et des manuscrits écrits selon ce système*, in: G. Gobillot and M.-T. Urvoy (eds.), *L'Orient chrétien dans l'empire musulman. Hommage au Prof. Gérard Troupeau*, Paris 2005, pp. 463–475.

[110] A. Harrak, *Syriac and Garshuni Inscriptions of Iraq*, Paris 2010; id., *Catalogue of Syriac and Garshuni Manuscripts. Manuscripts owned by the Iraqi Department of Antiquities and Heritage* (CSCO 639), Leuven 2011.

[111] J.C.J. Sanders, *Commentaire coranique d'un chrétien. Quelques pages presque perdues*, in: C. Laga, J.A. Munitz, and L. Van Rompay (eds.), *After Chalcedon. Studies in Theology and Church History offered to Prof. Albert Van Roey*, Leuven 1985, pp. 297–307.

[112] C. Rabin, *Ancient West-Arabian* (n. 18); F. Corriente, *From Old Arabic to Classical Arabic through Pre-Islamic Koine: Some Notes on the Native Grammarians' Sources, Attitudes, and Goals,* "Journal of Semitic Studies" 21 (1976), pp. 62–96.

[113] *Notiz des Herrn Cyril C. Graham zu den von ihm copirten Inschriften*, "Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft" 12 (1858), pp. 713–714; Cyril C. Graham, *On the Inscriptions Found in the Region of the el-Ḥarrah in the Great Desert South-East and East of the Ḥaurān,* "Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society" 17 (1860), pp. 280–297.

[114] J.G. Wetzstein, *Reisebericht über Hauran und die Trachonen nebst einem Anhange über die Sabäischen Denkmäler in Ostsyrien*, Berlin 1860. Further inscriptions were published by D.H. Müller in 1876 and by H. Grimme.

[115] Ch.E.M. de Vogüé, *La Syrie centrale: Inscriptions sémitiques*, Paris 1869–1877.

1882 to identify sixteen letters correctly[116]. The remaining seven letters were identified in 1901 by Enno Littmann[117], and almost 1,500 new inscriptions were published in 1901–1904 by R. Dussaud, F. Macler[118], and E. Littmann himself[119]. They are all included in the largest corpus of Ṣafaitic graffiti, published in 1950 by Gonzague Ryckmans (1887–1969) as *Pars quinta* of the *Corpus Inscriptionum Semiticarum*, containing 5,380 inscriptions in its first instalment, the only one published so far[120]. Further inscriptions were edited by E. Littmann[121], G.L. Harding[122], F.V. Winnett[123], A. Jamme[124], W.G. Oxtoby[125], and M.C.A. Macdonald[126]. About 1,500 inscriptions are included in the Ph.D. dissertation of V. Clark[127], 304 in Mahmoud M. Rousan's[128], more than 1,000 in the publication of Mohammad I. Ababneh[129]. Further graffiti from Wadi Salma were edited by S. Abbadi[130],

---

[116] J. Halévy, *Essai sur les inscriptions de Ṣafa*, reprint from "Journal Asiatique", 7th ser., 10, 17, 19 (1877–1882), Paris 1882.

[117] E. Littmann, *Zur Entzifferung der Ṣafā-Inschriften*, Leipzig 1901. This was immediately accepted by J. Halévy, *La fixation définitive de l'alphabet safaïtique*, "Revue Sémitique" 9 (1901), pp. 128–145, 220–233; id., *Nouvel essai sur les inscriptions proto-arabes*, "Revue Sémitique" 9 (1901), pp. 316–355; 10 (1902), pp. 61–76, 172–173, 269–274; 11 (1903), pp. 63–69, 259–262; id., *Remarques complémentaires sur les inscriptions du Safa*, "Revue Sémitique" 12 (1904), pp. 37–54; id., *Nouvelles remarques sur les inscriptions proto-arabes*, "Revue Sémitique" 12 (1904), pp. 349–370.

[118] R. Dussaud and F. Macler, *Voyage archéologique au Safa et dans le Djebel ed-Drûz*, Paris 1901; id., *Rapport sur une mission scientifique dans les régions désertiques de la Syrie moyenne*, "Nouvelles Archives des Missions Scientifiques" 10 (1903), pp. 411–744, together about 1,316 graffiti.

[119] E. Littmann, *Semitic Inscriptions* (The Publications of an American Archaeological Expedition to Syria in 1899–1900. Part IV), New York 1904.

[120] *CIS*. *Pars V Inscriptiones Saracenicas continens* I/1 and *Tabulae* 1, Paris 1950–1951.

[121] E. Littmann, *Safaitic Inscriptions* (Publications of the Princeton University Archaeological Expeditions to Syria in 1904–1905 and 1909. Division IV, Section C), Leiden 1943, with 1,302 graffiti.

[122] G.L. Harding, *The Cairn of Hani'*, "Annual of the Department of the Antiquities of Jordan" 2 (1953), pp. 1–56; F.V. Winnett and G.L. Harding, *Inscriptions from Fifty Safaitic Cairns*, Toronto 1978, with 4,000 graffiti. Cf. A. Jamme, rev. in: "Orientalia" 48 (1979), pp. 478–528.

[123] F.V. Winnett, *Safaitic Inscriptions from Jordan*, Toronto 1957, with 1,009 new texts.

[124] A. Jamme, *Safaitic Inscriptions from Saudi Arabia*, "Oriens Antiquus" 6 (1967), pp. 189–213; cf. also id., *Safaitic Notes*, Washington 1970.

[125] W.G. Oxtoby, *Some Inscriptions of the Safaitic Bedouin*, New Haven 1968, with 480 texts.

[126] M.C.A. Macdonald and G.L. Harding, *More Safaitic Texts from Jordan*, "Annual of the Department of the Antiquities of Jordan" 21 (1976), pp. 119–133; M.C.A. Macdonald, *Cursive Safaitic Inscriptions? A Preliminary Investigation*, in M.M. Ibrahim (ed.), *Arabian Studies in Honour of Mahmoud Ghul*, Wiesbaden 1989, pp. 62–81.

[127] V.A. Clark, *A Study of New Safaitic Inscriptions from Jordan*, Ph.D. University of Melbourne 1979, published by University Microfilms International, Ann Arbor 1997. Cf. the extensive report by A. Jamme, *Miscellanées d'ancien arabe* XIII, Washington 1983, pp. 2–116.

[128] M.M. Rousan, *New Epigraphical and Archaeological Materials from Wadi Salma (Northern Jordan)*, Ph.D. King Saud University, ar-Riyadh 2002, with 304 new inscriptions.

[129] M.I. Ababneh, *Neue safaitische Inschriften und deren bildliche Darstellungen* (Semitica et Semitohamitica Berolinensia 6), Aachen 2005 [2006]. Cf. M.J. Roche, *Deux corpus d'inscriptions safaïtiques de Jordanie par M. Ababneh et A.Y.K. Al-Manaser*, "Orientalia" 80 (2011), pp. 105–116 (see pp. 105–109 and 113–116).

[130] S. Abbadi, *Nuqūš ṣafāwiyya ǧadīda min Wādī Salmā (al-Bādiya al-'Urduniyya)*, 'Ammān 2006.

and 425 inscriptions from Al-Fahda and Wādī al-Aḥīmr have been published by Ali Yunes Khalid al-Manaser[131], while Ṣafaitic graffiti from the Hauran were issued by H. Zeinadden[132]. Other publications of Ṣafaitic inscriptions are listed in M. Rousan's dissertation[133].

About 20,000 Ṣafaitic inscriptions are known at present, but hundreds of them are not yet published, although most have been copied. Their decipherment by E. Littmann was followed by a grammatical study joined to his publication of other Ṣafaitic inscriptions[134]. Regarding the syntax, one should notice the regular use of formal syndetic parataxis instead of subordinate relative clauses, e.g. *l-ḥd bn nṣr bn grm'l bn kn w-wgm 'l 'mh*[135], "By[136] Ḥadda, son of Naṣr, son of Ǧaram'il, son of Kanna, who is grieving over[137] his mother"; *l-kddh bn s²mrt w-t'r*[138], "By Kudāda, son of Shamrit, who is keeping watch". This construction is a particular case of the widespread use of parataxis to express logical hypotaxis[139]. Ṣafaitic has been compared to Classical Arabic by W.W. Müller[140] and situated by M.C.A. Macdonald in the general frame of ancient North-Arabian[141].

To a large extent, Ṣafaitic graffiti are memorial inscriptions that mention the name of the person involved and of his ancestors, often indicate his job or the circumstances of his passage at the site, and call on a deity to protect the inscription and ensure peace to him. Since the Ṣafaitic graffiti have been found on the Nabataean territory and are contemporaneous with Nabataean Aramaic inscriptions, some of them are likely to be written in Nabataean Arabic. In any case, the Nabataeans are mentioned in Ṣafaitic inscriptions, but are often regarded as enemies[142]. This notwithstanding, Ṣafaitic texts do not belong to a single dialect, as shown e.g. by the use of two different articles, namely *h-*, which is very common in Ṣafaitic inscriptions, and *al*, which is widely used

---

[131] A.Y.Kh. al-Manaser, *Ein Korpus neuer safaitischer Inschriften*, Aachen 2008. Cf. M.J. Roche, *Deux corpus* (n. 129), pp. 110–116.

[132] H. Zeinadden, *Safaitische Inschriften aus dem Ǧabal al-'Arab*, "Damaszener Mitteilungen" 12 (2000), pp. 265–289.

[133] For instance, A. Jamme, *Safaitic Inscriptions from Saudi Arabia*, "Oriens Antiquus" 6 (1967), pp. 189–213.

[134] E. Littmann, *Safaitic Inscriptions* (n. 121), pp. XII–XXIV: "The Language".

[135] M.M. Rousan, *New Epigraphical and Archaeological Materials* (n. 128), No. 11.

[136] The translation of the preposition *l* by English "by" corresponds to our conception of a text written *by* somebody. Instead, the preposition *l* basically expresses a relation of dependence and signifies here that the writer is the "owner" of his inscription, which should not be "stolen" by defacing or changing it.

[137] For *wgm 'l*, see A. Jamme, *The Ṣafaitic Verb* wgm, "Orientalia" 36 (1967), pp. 159–172.

[138] M.M. Rousan, *New Epigraphical and Archaeological Materials* (n. 128), No. 55. Cf. other examples in E. Lipiński, *Semitic Languages* (n. 32), § 55.8.

[139] E. Lipiński, *Semitic Languages* (n. 32), § 55.5-7.

[140] W.W. Müller, *Das Frühnordarabische*, in: W. Fischer, *Grundriss der arabischen Philologie* I, Wiesbaden 1982, pp. 22–25.

[141] M.C.A. Macdonald, *Ancient North Arabian*, in: R.D. Woodard (ed.), *The Ancient Languages of Syria, Palestine and Arabia*, Cambridge 2008, pp. 488–533.

[142] F.V. Winnett and G.L. Harding, *Inscriptions from Fifty Safaitic Cairns* (n. 122), pp. 7–8, 68, 71, 325, 406, 514, 515, 538; V.A. Clark, *A Study of New Safaitic Inscriptions* (n. 127), pp. 85–96.

in Nabataean proper names but appears exceptionally in names attested by the Ṣafaitic graffiti.

In spite of their Arab origin, the Nabataeans used an Aramaic literary dialect as their written language, but their colloquial language was Arabic, what is reflected to some extent by their proper names[143], by Arabic loanwords[144], and by four inscriptions in Aramaic Nabataean script[145]. The bilingual inscription, found in 1979 at Oboda (‘En ‘Avdat, Israel), should probably be dated between A.D. 88/9 and 125/6. Its lines 1-3 and 5 are written in Aramaic, while lines 4-5 are obviously North-Arabian[146]. The first sentence, read by the writer *fa-yaf‘al lā fidā’ wa-lā aṯara*[147], is important from the linguistic point of view because the old preterite, corresponding to Akkadian *iprus*, seems to be used there after the conjunction *fa-* as a narrative past tense[148], like *wa-yqtl* in Hebrew, Moabite, Phoenician, Old Aramaic, South-Arabian, and even Arabic.

These inscriptions testify to the evolution of the Arabic language. While the case endings of the nouns are still used correctly in the bilingual from Oboda, dated *ca*. 100 A.D., there was no longer a fully functioning case system in the 3rd and 4th centuries A.D. This appears from an inscription of Ḥegrā’ (Madā’in Ṣāliḥ, Saudi Arabia), dated in A.D. 267/8[149], and from the epitaph of “Mar’ al-Qays Ibn ‘Amr, King of all the Arabs”, found at An-Namāra (Syria) and bearing a date corresponding to A.D. 328. The inscription was discovered in 1901 by René Dussaud and deciphered by Charles Clermont-Ganneau,

---

[143] F. al-Khraysheh, *Die Personennamen in den nabatäischen Inschriften des Corpus Inscriptionum Semiticarum*, Marburg 1986; A. Negev, *Personal Names in the Nabatean Realm*, Jerusalem 1991.

[144] M. O’Connor, *The Arabic Loanwords in Nabatean Aramaic*, “Journal of Near Eastern Studies” 45 (1986), pp. 213–229; J.C. Greenfield, *Some Arabic Loanwords in the Aramaic and Nabatean Texts from Naḥal Ḥever*, “Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam” 15 (1992), pp. 10–21. Cf. Y. Yadin, J.C. Greenfield, A. Yardeni, and B.A. Levine, *The Documents from the Bar Kokhba Period in the Cave of Letters. Hebrew, Aramaic and Nabatean-Aramaic Papyri*, Jerusalem 2002, pp. 27–33, 169–276, 405–410.

[145] W. Diem, *Die nabatäischen Inschriften und die Frage der Kasusflexion in Altarabischen*, “Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft” 123 (1973), pp. 227–237; id., *Untersuchungen* (n. 11), § 140–142; W.W. Müller, *Das Frühnordarabische* (n. 140), pp. 30–31; M. Morgenstern, *The History of the Aramaic Dialects in the Light of Discoveries in the Judaean Desert: The Case of Nabataean,* in: *F.M. Cross Volume* (Eretz-Israel 26), Jerusalem 1999, pp. 134*–142*.

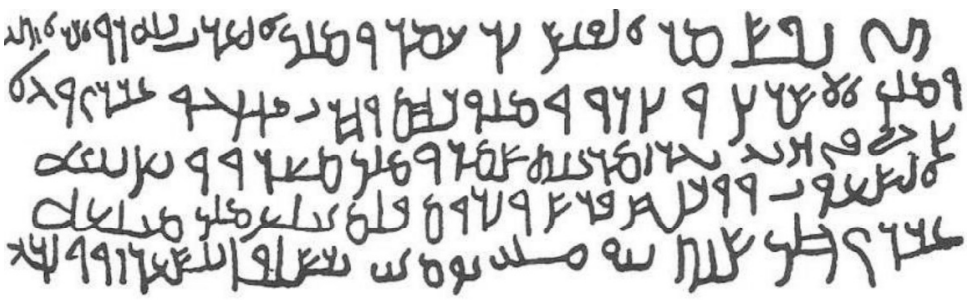
[146] A. Negev, *Obodas the God*, “Israel Exploration Journal” 36 (1986), pp. 56–60. Beside the reading of J. Naveh and S. Shaked in A. Negev’s article (p. 58), one can refer to J.A. Bellamy, *Arabic Verses from the First/Second Century: The Inscription of ‘En ‘Abdat*, “Journal of Semitic Studies” 35 (1990), pp. 73–79; R. Snir, *The Inscription of ‘En ‘Abdat: an Early Evolutionary Stage of Ancient Arabic Poetry*, “Abr-Nahrain” 31 (1993), pp. 110–125; S. Noja Noseda, *Über die älteste arabische Inschrift, die vor kurzem entdeckt wurde*, in: M. Macuch, C. Müller-Kessler, and B.G. Fragner (eds.), *Studia Semitica necnon Iranica R. Macuch … dedicata*, Berlin 1989, pp. 187–194; id., *A Further Discussion of the Arabic Sentence of the 1st Century A.D. and Its Poetical Form*, in *Semitica. Serta Philologica Constantino Tsereteli dicata*, Torino 1993, pp. 183–188; G. Laceranza, *Appunti sull’iscrizione nabateo-araba di ‘Ayn ‘Avdat*, “Studi epigrafici e linguistici” 17 (2000), pp. 105–114.

[147] Line 4: *p-yp‘l l’ pd’ w-l’ ’tr’*, “And he acted neither for reward nor by self-interest”.

[148] E. Lipiński, *Semitic Languages* (n. 32), § 38.11.

[149] J.F. Healey and G.R. Smith, *Jaussen-Savignac 17 – The Earliest Dated Arabic Document*, “Aṭlāl” 12 (1989), pp. 77–84, pl. 46, and Arabic, pp. 101–110.

who recognized that it was written in Arabic. The inscription was published by R. Dussaud in 1902[150], and Felix Peiser immediately noticed that Mar' al-Qays Ibn 'Amr was the Laḫmid king of Al-Ḥīra, known from Arab tradition[151].



The An-Namāra inscription after R. Dussaud

There is a fourth inscription, found in 1884 by Charles Huber and Julius Euting in the oasis of Taymā' (Saudi Arabia) and housed at present in the Louvre museum[152]. It is written in a particular and irregular Nabataean script variety and it is engraved with embossed letters like the Taymā' stele of the 5th century B.C. (*CIS* II, 113). Its various decipherments are not convincing, even impossible, especially the readings of the first word, *qṣr', 'mr'* or *ḥgr'*, and of the beginning of line 3, read either *ltr/dh* or *lmnwh*, although it obviously does not begin with *l*. The X-shape of the final *aleph* in line 4, misread in previous decipherments, suggests dating the inscription from the first century B.C. or A.D., while its vocabulary indicates that it is written in an Old Arabian dialect, except for the ligature *br* in line 2 and the stereotyped formula '*l ḥy'* in line 4.

---

[150] R. Dussaud, *Inscription nabatéo-arabe d'en Nemâra*, "Revue Archéologique" 1902-II, pp. 409–421. Cf. M. Hartmann, *Zur Inschrift von Namāra*, "Orientalistische Literaturzeitung" 9 (1906), col. 574–584; M. Lidzbarski, *Ephemeris für semitische Epigraphik* II, Giessen 1908, pp. 34–37; Th. Nöldeke, *Der Araberkönig von Nemâra*, in: *Florilegium M. de Vogüé*, Paris 1909, pp. 463–466; *RÉS* 483; etc. A bibliography can be found in: B. Gruendler, *The Development of the Arabic Scripts*, Cambridge Mass. 1993, p. 12.

[151] F.E. Peiser, *Die arabische Inschrift von En-Nemâra*, "Orientalistische Literaturzeitung" 6 (1903), col. 277–281. Cf. R. Dussaud, *La pénétration des Arabes en Syrie avant l'Islam*, Paris 1955, pp. 63–65.

[152] AO 26599, published in *CIS* II, 336, with a facsimile.

Taymā' inscription (Louvre, AO 26599)

1) *mbr' z qrb*	This building (was) offered (by)
2) *Mzmw br Rgzm*	*Mzmw,* son of *Rgzm,*
3) *ml l-'lm Lht z*	(in) full title for feasting this Goddess,
4) *'l ḥy'*	for the life of
5) [...]	[...]

The noun *mbr*', "building" (line 1), and the syntagm *'lm lht*, "to hold banquet for Lāhat" (line 3), with the divine name in the accusative, are well attested in South-Arabian[153]. Besides, the patronymic *Rgzm* (line 2) occurs in Sabaic as a tribal name *Rgz*[154], while the proper name *Mzmw* of the dedicator is attested in Ṣafaitic[155]. The demonstrative adjectives *ḏā* (line 1) and *ḏī* (line 3) are simply written *z*, although Arabian *ḏ* was usually indicated in Aramaic script by *d*, already in an inscription from Eliachin (Israel), going back to the 5th century B.C.[156] The verb *qrb* (line 1) is obviously used here in the fa''ala form; it is a characteristic Arabian term signifying that one presents something to God as offering[157]. The noun *māl*, "property" (line 3), is the second object of the verb *qrb* and must here mean "in full title", as the result of the "offering". The syntagm *'l ḥy'* (line 4) corresponds to Nabataean Aramaic *'l ḥyy*, but we find the spelling with final *aleph* here, like in the construct state of many Palmyrene and Hatraean inscriptions[158]. If this is a construct state also at Taymā', as one can assume, a further written line is

[153] A.F.L. Beeston, M.A. Ghul, W.W. Müller, and J. Ryckmans, *Sabaic Dictionary / Dictionnaire sabéen*, Louvain-la-Neuve–Beyrouth 1982, pp. 5 and 30.

[154] G.L. Harding, *An Index and Concordance* (n. 15), p. 271.

[155] G.L. Harding, *An Index and Concordance* (n. 15), p. 543: *MZM*.

[156] The inscription was published by R. Deutsch and M. Heltzer, *Forty New Ancient West Semitic Inscriptions*, Tel Aviv-Jaffa 1994, pp. 80–83, No. 39 (7). A corrected decipherment and interpretation are given by E. Lipiński, rev. in: "Orientalia Lovaniensia. Periodica" 26 (1995), p. 26, and id., *The Cult of 'Ashtarum in Achaemenian Palestine*, in: L. Cagni (ed.), *Biblica et Semitica. Studi in memoria di Francesco Vattioni*, Napoli 1999, pp. 315–323.

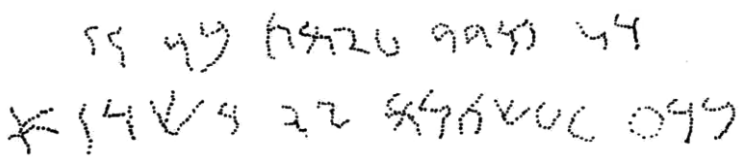
[157] Cf. E. Lipiński, *The Cult of Ashtarum* (n. 156), p. 317, with further references.

[158] This formula was studied by K. Dijkstra, *Life and Loyalty*, Leiden 1995.

broken off at the bottom of the inscription. The structure of the verbal clause in lines 1-2 is typically Arabic: the direct object (*mbr' z*) precedes the verb (*qrb*), which is followed by the subject (*Mzmw*). The vocabulary of the inscription apparently witnesses a dialect with North- and South-Arabian lexemes, but a larger North-Arabian corpus with a richer lexicon would be needed to formulate a judgement. The theonym *Lht* is still spelled in such a way in Liḥyanite[159].

The building dedicated by *Mzmw* was a dining room or *triclinium* with two or three couches which must have served to celebrate ritual banquets in honour of the goddess Lāhat. It was very likely built in the precinct of her sanctuary at Taymā'.

One could still refer here to the inscription from Eliachin, mentioned above[160], since it is written in Old Arabian, except *br* and the final *zy b-Šrn*'. The second object of the verb *qrb* is *br*', obviously corresponding to Sabaic *brḍ*, a kind of offer. Instead of assuming that the spelling *br*' implies an Aramaic intermediary[161], one could simply point at the pharyngealized character of the emphatics, which led to the notation of *ḍād* by '*ayin* because of the lack of an appropriate character. As noticed already by Ph. Marçais, the articulation of '*ayn* concerns "la même région arrière de la langue que la construction d'emphase"[162].



dw qrb ʿzmt br nn
brʿ lʿštrm zy bšrn'

"What ʿAzmāt, son of Nūn,
brought as offering for ʿAshtarum who is in the Sharon (plain)".

The so-called Ṯamūdic graffiti form another group of North-Arabian inscriptions, deciphered by Enno Littmann[163]. They are named after Ṯamūd, one of several Arabian tribes mentioned in Assyrian annals (*Tamudi*) and Neo-Babylonian letters[164]. A mention of Ṯamūd occurs later in a bilingual Graeco-Nabataean temple foundation text, dating

---

[159] W. Caskel, *Liḥyan und Liḥyanisch*, Köln-Opladen 1954, p. 46; M. Höfner, *Die Stammesgruppen Nord- und Zentralarabiens in vorislamitischer Zeit*, in: H.W. Haussig (ed.), *Götter und Mythen im Vorderen Orient*, Stuttgart 1965, pp. 407–481 (see p. 423). For the divine name, see also: S. Krone, *Die altarabische Gottheit al-Lât*, Bern 1991.

[160] See n. 156.

[161] This was assumed by the writer: E. Lipiński, *The Cult of 'Ashtarum* (n. 156), p. 318.

[162] Ph. Marçais, *L'articulation de l'emphase dans un parler arabe maghrébin*, "Annales de l'Institut d'Études Orientales" (Alger) 7 (1948), pp. 5–28 (see p. 20).

[163] E. Littmann, *Zur Entzifferung der thamudenischen Inschriften* (MVÄG IX/1), Berlin 1904; cf. id., *Thamud und Safa*, Leipzig 1940 (reprint, 1966); W.W. Müller, *Das Frühnordarabische* (n. 140), pp. 18–20.

[164] I. Eph'al, *The Ancient Arabs*, Jerusalem 1982, pp. 7, 36, 39, 87, 89, 105, 189, 230.

from 166/169 A.D. and found at Rawwafah, in northern Al-Ḥiğāz[165], then in a 5th-century Byzantine source referring to a cameleer corps on the north-eastern frontier of Egypt, also in North-Arabian graffiti from the Taymā' region, in many passages of the Qur'ān, and in writings of Arab geographers[166].

Ṯamūdic epigraphy is greatly indebted to travellers of the 19th century who have collected hundreds of inscriptions. Charles Montagu Doughty (1843–1926) spent two years in Arabia (1876–1878)[167], marching with the Mecca pilgrims in the *ḥağğ* caravan as far as Madā'in Ṣāliḥ, where he studied the Nabataean monuments and inscriptions, which he later published[168]. Then he wandered all over the Nağd-Ḥiğāz borderland, visiting Taymā', where he discovered the famous stele afterward acquired by C. Huber for the Louvre. The following year he travelled to Ḥāyil and, after many perils and arduous journeys, managed to visit Ṭā'if and finally reached the coast at Jedda.

Charles Huber travelled through Arabia in 1878–1882[169], and in 1883–1884 he set off again with Julius Euting (1839–1913) on an expedition to Central Arabia aiming at seeking out traces of pre-Islamic history, such as inscriptions and monuments[170]. From these travels Huber brought hundreds of copies of Ṯamūdic inscriptions. The three expeditions of J.A. Jaussen O.P. and R. Savignac O.P. to Madā'in Ṣāliḥ, Al-'Ulā, Taymā', and Al-Ḥiğr in 1907, 1909, and 1910 yielded 761 Ṯamūdic graffiti beside the hundreds of Minaic, Nabataean, and Liḥyanite inscriptions[171].

These sources indicate that the Ṯamūdaeans were living between Mecca and Taymā'. However, the word *ṯ-m-d* occurring in graffiti from this area and interpreted as "Ṯamūd" rather means "pool" or "puddle", and occasionally can be a "broken plural" *ṯimād*. The word is etymologically related to Mishnaic Hebrew *tmd*, "sour liquid". It is already attested at Qumran in 3Q15, col. IX, 14-15, mentioning a *byt tmd*, "a receptacle of sour water", and in the Mishnah[172]. Besides, one cannot identify the supposed Ṯamūdaeans of North

---

[165] The Greek text, mentioning a *Thamoudenon ethnos*, was published by H. Seyrig, *Antiquités syriennes*, "Syria" 34 (1957), pp. 249–261 (see pp. 259–261), while the fragmentary Nabataean text, referring to *šrkt tmwdw*, was deciphered by J.T. Milik, *Inscriptions grecques et nabatéennes de Rawwafah*, "Bulletin of the Institute of Archaeology" (University of London) 10 (1971), pp. 54–58 and pls. (see pp. 54–57). No convincing new data emerge from *DNWSI*, p. 1193, but see also K. Dijkstra, *Life and Loyalty* (n. 158), pp. 77–80.

[166] For details of these sources, see A. Van den Branden, *Histoire de Thamoud* (Publications de l'Université Libanaise. Section des études historiques 6), Beyrouth 1960; 2nd ed., 1966, pp. 1–20, to be used with caution.

[167] Ch.M. Doughty, *Travels in Arabia Deserta* I–II, Cambridge 1888. Edition abridged by Edward Garnett: Ch.M. Doughty, *Travels in Arabia Deserta*, New York 1931; reprint, Garden City N.Y. 1955. German translation: Ch.M. Doughty, *Die Offenbarung Arabiens (Arabia Deserta)*, Leipzig 1937.

[168] Ch.M. Doughty, *Documents épigraphiques recueillis dans le nord de l'Arabie*, Paris 1884, edited by E. Renan.

[169] C. Huber, *Inscriptions recueillies dans l'Arabie Centrale*, "Bulletin de la Societé de Géographie", 7th ser., 5 (1884), pp. 289–303; id., *Voyage dans l'Arabie Centrale: Hamâd, Šammar, Qaçîm, Hedjâz, 1878–1882*, "Bulletin de la Societé de Géographie", 7th ser., 5 (1884), pp. 304–363, 468–530; 6 (1885), pp. 92–148 = offprint, Paris 1885.

[170] C. Huber, *Journal d'un voyage en Arabie (1883–1884)*, Paris 1891; J. Euting, *Tagebuch einer Reise in Inner-Arabien*, Leiden 1896–1914 (reprint, Hildesheim 2004); the second part of the diary was published posthumously by Enno Littmann.

[171] A. Jaussen and R. Savignac, *Mission archéologique en Arabie* I–II, Paris 1909–1914.

[172] *Maaseroth* V, 6; *Maaser Sheni* I, 3; *Hullin* I, 7.

Arabia with the Banū Ṯamad of Saba, mentioned by Al-Hamdānī[173]. In other words, the name Ṯamūdic was incorrectly applied to various types of graffiti found throughout Arabia, dating from the 6th century B.C. to the 3rd or 4th century A.D. and belonging to different dialects[174]. Some inscriptions found in the Negeb and in the surrounding areas are described as "Ṯamūdic" as well[175]. Their script shows differences, revealing diverse scribal traditions and various periods. According to Winnett's first classification one should distinguish Ṯamūdic A-B-C-D-E[176], but he later reduced this fivefold grouping to three categories[177].

The Ṯamūdic graffiti often contain only proper names and patronymics. The names or, at least, their elements are known from the pre-Islamic Arabian onomasticon. Considering such a small basis, the grammatical study of the inscriptions cannot lead easily to firm results. One should notice that even phonology presents difficult problems. The phonetic interpretation of some signs is controversial, as in the case of {ḍ}, {g}, and {ṯ} in the majority of "Ṯamūdic" E or Tabuki inscriptions. Geraldine King rightly reached the conclusion that {ḍ} represents the etymological /ṯ/ in these graffiti[178]. However, where writing is not based on a solid scribal tradition, the signs represent articulated words and names, not etymological forms. One should thus admit a shift in the articulation of /ṯ/, as stated by E. Lipiński[179], and assume that {ḍ} stands possibly for a pharyngealized palato-alveolar [ṣ̌], considering the original value /ṣ́/ of {ḍ} and the well-known change *ṯ* > *š*. As for {g} and {ṯ}, E.A. Knauf's opinion is perhaps correct. He argued in several articles[180] that the grapheme {ṯ} represents etymological /g/ with a pronunciation [ǧ],

---

[173] L. Forrer, *Südarabien nach al-Hamdānī's "Beschreibung der arabischen Halbinsel"*, Leipzig 1942, p. 147, n. 7.

[174] Major publications and studies of the so-called "Ṯamūdic" inscriptions, found throughout Arabia, but also in the Negeb, include: A. Van den Branden, *Les inscriptions thamoudéennes*, Louvain 1950, collects all previously published graffiti, except four, as it seems; cf. E. Littmann, rev. in "Bibliotheca Orientalis" 9 (1952), pp. 216–220, and M. Höfner, rev. in: "Orientalia" 23 (1954), pp. 309–318. Further: G.L. Harding and E. Littmann, *Some Thamudic Inscriptions from the Hashimite Kingdom of Jordan*, Leiden 1952; A. Van den Branden, *Les textes thamoudéens de Philby* I–II (Bibliothèque du Muséon 39 & 41), Louvain 1956, with about 2,000 graffiti; cf. J. Ryckmans, rev. in: "Bibliotheca Orientalis" 17 (1960), pp. 199–204. Further: A. Van den Branden, *Les textes thamoudéens de Huber et d'Euting*, "Le Muséon" 69 (1956), pp. 109–137; J. Ryckmans, *Graffites "thamoudéens" du Yémen septentrional*, "Le Muséon" 72 (1959), pp. 177–189; A. Jamme, *Thamudic Studies*, Washington 1967; F.V. Winnett and W.L. Reed, *Ancient Records from North Arabia*, Toronto 1970, pp. 67–138.

[175] J. Naveh and E. Stern, *A Stone Vessel with a Thamudic Inscription,* "Israel Exploration Journal" 24 (1974), pp. 79–83, pls. 12–13; J. Naveh, *Thamudic Inscriptions from the Negev*, in: *Nelson Glueck Memorial Volume* (Eretz-Israel 12), Jerusalem 1975, pp. 129–131, pl. 27 (in Hebrew); id., *Ancient North-Arabian Inscriptions on Three Stone Bowls*, in: *H.L. Ginsberg Volume* (Eretz-Israel 14), Jerusalem 1978, pp. 178–182, pls. 4–6 (in Hebrew). One can also mention A. Jamme, *A Safaitic Inscription from the Negeb*, in: "'Atiqot. English Series" 2 (1950), pp. 150–151.

[176] F.V. Winnett, *A Study of the Lihyanite and Thamudic Inscriptions*, Toronto 1937.

[177] F.V. Winnett and W.L. Reed, *Ancient Records* (n. 174), pp. 69–70.

[178] G. King, *Some Inscriptions from Wadi Malakh*, in: M.M. Ibrahim (ed.), *Arabian Studies in Honour of Mahmoud Ghul*, Wiesbaden 1989, pp. 37–55.

[179] E. Lipiński, *Semitic Languages* (n. 32), § 13.9.

[180] E.A. Knauf, *Eine Gruppe safaitischer Inschriften aus Ḥesmā*, "Zeitschrift des Deutschen Palästina-Vereins" 96 (1980), pp. 169–173; id., *Südsafaitisch*, "Annual of the Department of the Antiquities of Jordan" 27 (1983),

while the grapheme {g} represents etymological /g/ with a pronunciation foreign to the dialects in question and only occurring in loanwords and loan names. In "Ṯamūdic" D, some graffiti begin with the demonstrative *zn*, "this", but *ḏ* occurs in proper names of the same inscriptions, e.g. *ḏmrsbr*. The problem *d*:*ḏ*:*z* is not yet solved in a satisfactory way.

An older stage of North-Arabian is represented by the Liḥyanite inscriptions from the 6th–4th centuries B.C., engraved in a variety of the South-Arabian script[181]. Liḥyanite is the local dialect of the oasis of Al-'Ulā, ancient Dedān, that had its own king in the 6th/5th century B.C. Nabonidus defeated a king of Dedān *(šarru šá Da-da-nu)*[182] and a Liḥyanite epitaph mentions "Kabar'il, son of Mati''il, king of Dedān"[183]. The Liḥyanite inscriptions were dated by W. Caskel about 300 years later than is commonly accepted[184], while evidence of Babylonian rule is provided by the date-formula of Jaussen-Savignac 349 lih: "At the time of Geshem, son of Śahr, and of 'Abd, governor of Dedān" (*b'ym Gšm bn Šhr w-'bd fḥt Ddn*). *Šhr* is a royal name, since it appears as *Šhrw* on a coin from Samaria, probably indicating a Liḥyanite king or king-governor of the 4th century B.C.[185] At least seven kings of Liḥyan in the 4th-early 2nd centuries B.C. are identified by Saba Farès-Drappeau[186].

Liḥyanite should not be distinguished from the idiom of the so-called "Dedānite" inscriptions, which are somewhat older[187]. The language is represented by a series of graffiti[188] and of mainly monumental inscriptions engraved in a variety of the South-Arabian script[189], in an alphabet counting 28 letters. The available epigraphic material was increased twelve years ago by the excellent publication of 189 new inscriptions by Alexander Sima[190]. This work is an important tool for the study of North-Arabian in the 5th–2th centuries B.C.

---

pp. 587–596; id., *Altnordarabischer Register*, "Zeitschrift des Deutschen Palästina-Vereins" 100 (1984), pp. 153–154; id., *A South Safaitic Alphabet from Khirbet es-Samrā'*, "Levant" 17 (1985), pp. 204–206.

[181] W. Caskel, *Liḥyan und Liḥyanisch* (n. 159); cf. W.W. Müller, *Das Frühnordarabische* (n. 140), pp. 20–22.

[182] I. Eph'al, *The Ancient Arabs* (n. 164), p. 181.

[183] A. Jaussen and R. Savignac, *Mission archéologique en Arabie* (n. 171), No. 138 lih.

[184] W. Caskel, *Liḥyan und Liḥyanisch* (n. 159), pp. 33–37; id., *Die alten semitischen Gottheiten in Arabien*, in: S. Moscati (ed.), *Le antiche divinità semitiche*, Roma 1958, pp. 95–117 (see pp. 95–100).

[185] M.A. Rizack, *A Coin with the Aramaic Legend ŠHRW, a King-Governor of Lihyān*, "American Numismatic Society Museum Notes" 29 (1984), pp. 25–28; F.M. Cross, *A New Aramaic Stele from Taymā'*, "The Catholic Biblical Quarterly" 48 (1986), pp. 387–394 (see pp. 391).

[186] S. Farès-Drappeau, *Dédan et Liḥyān. Histoire des Arabes aux confins des pouvoirs perse et hellénistique (IVe–IIe s. av. l'ère chrétienne)*, Lyon-Paris 2005.

[187] M.C.A. Macdonald, *Reflections on the Linguistic Map of Pre-Islamic Arabia*, "Arabian Archaeology and Epigraphy" 11 (2000), pp. 28–79 (see p. 33). However, we prefer keeping the appellation "Liḥyanite" rather than using "Dadanitic", as suggested by the author.

[188] A. Van den Branden, *Nouveaux textes lihyanites de Philby-Bogue*, "Al-Machriq" 1960, pp. 92–104; id., *Les inscriptions dédanites*, Beyrouth 1962.

[189] A. Jaussen and R. Savignac, *Mission archéologique en Arabie* (n. 171), have collected 379 Liḥyanite inscriptions. They have been recently analyzed by S. Farès-Drappeau, *Dédan et Liḥyān* (n. 186).

[190] A. Sima, *Die lihyanischen Inschriften von al-'Ubayd (Saudi-Arabien)*, Rahden/Westf. 1999. Most of them seem to have a ritual character: C.J. Robin, rev. in: "Bibliotheca Orientalis" 60 (2003), col. 773–778.

Finally, Ḥasaean is the name given to the language of the inscriptions written in a variety of the South-Arabian script and found mainly in the great oasis of Al-Ḥasā', in the east of Saudi Arabia. Ḥasaean inscriptions were first published by A. Jamme[191]. A new edition was provided by A. Sima[192]. As a matter of fact, North-Arabian words occur also in other texts written in South-Arabian script[193].

4. Bibliographic researches

Bibliographic research, required by a more detailed historical survey of Arabic linguistics, was greatly enhanced by the work of J.H. Hospers[194], the two bibliographies of Mohammed Hasan Bakalla[195], and by the specialized bibliography of Werner Diem[196], who quotes Persian titles and M.A. theses from Cairene universities. One could add the sociolinguistic bibliography compiled by Richard W. Schmidt[197] and, of course, the *Index Islamicus*[198], the usefulness of which is increased by the *Bio-bibliographical Supplement*[199] and by the *Concise Biographical Companion*[200]. One should further record the *Abstracta Islamica*[201], as well as the *Journal of Arabic Linguistics*, edited from 1978 onwards by Hartmut Bobzin and Otto Jastrow[202]. It deals with all the historical stages of the language, as well as with the regional and social variants of Arabic up to Modern Standard Arabic. A rich bibliography is offered by Wolfdietrich Fischer in his grammar of Classical Arabic and in the most important synthesis on Arabic philology that has appeared in the late 20th century thanks to him and to H. Gätje[203].

---

[191] A. Jamme, *Sabaean and Hasaean Inscriptions from Saudi Arabia*, Roma 1966. Cf. J. Ryckmans, rev. in: "Bibliotheca Orientalis" 26 (1969), pp. 246–249; W.W. Müller, *Das Frühnordarabische* (n. 140), pp. 25–26.

[192] A. Sima, *Die hasaitischen Inschriften*, in: N. Nebes (ed.), *Neue Beiträge zur Semitistik*, Wiesbaden 2002, pp. 167–200.

[193] W.W. Müller, *Das Frühnordarabische* (n. 140), pp. 26–28.

[194] J.H. Hospers, *A Basic Bibliography of the Semitic Languages* II, Leiden 1974, pp. 1–87.

[195] M.H. Bakalla, *Bibliography of Arabic Linguistics*, München 1976; id., *Arabic Linguistics: An Introduction and Bibliography*, London 1983. One should be aware of printing mistakes in the titles and incorrect transcriptions.

[196] W. Diem, *Sekundärliteratur zur einheimischen arabischen Grammatikschreibung*, "Historiographia Linguistica" 8 (1981), pp. 431–486.

[197] R.W. Schmidt, *Arabic Sociolinguistics: A Selected Bibliography*, "Sociolinguistics. Newsletter" 8 (1977), pp. 10–17.

[198] *Index Islamicus 1906–1955*, compiled by J.D. Pearson, Cambridge 1958, and continued from 1962 onwards.

[199] *Bio-bibliographical Supplement to Index Islamicus*, *1665–1980*, I–III, Leiden 2004–2006.

[200] W. Behn, *Concise Biographical Companion to Index Islamicus* I–III, Leiden 2004 ff.

[201] *Abstracta Islamica*, "Revue des Études Islamiques" 1 (1927) ff., published apart from 19 (1965).

[202] "Zeitschrift für arabische Linguistik / Journal of Arabic Linguistics / Journal de linguistique arabe", Wiesbaden 1978 ff.

[203] See here above, n. 68.

R O C Z N I K O R I E N T A L I S T Y C Z N Y, T. LXV, Z. 2, 2012, (s. 48–61)

BOGUSŁAW R. ZAGÓRSKI

Late Appearance of Early Arab Cartography. A 19th C. Manuscript Map by Az-Zayyānī: Its Toponymy and Its Vision of the World[1]

Abstract

The question of survival of the Ptolemaic cartographical tradition in the Arab World, all through the Idrisian transmission chain and down to the modern times, is the subject of this article. A handwritten map found in Arabia, which – in this author's opinion – was authored by a Moroccan intellectual Az-Zayyānī at the break of the 18th–19th cc., is apparently the last pre-modern Arabic cartographical creation. It's history is obscure, but the physical shape bears strong resemblance to the other two published maps by the same author (whereabouts of those two manuscript specimens, unfortunately, are unkown at present). The map is analysed in respect of its geographical contents as depicting the world, as well as of the intellectual horizons the map presented to its users at its time, and questions about its relevance are asked.

Keywords: Moroccan culture, manuscripts, Arab cartography, Idrisian tradition, Abū al-Qāsim az-Zayyānī

---

[1] This is a slightly revised version of a paper read at the 25th International Cartographic Conference in Paris, in July 2011, Section E-1: History of Cartography and GIS Science. The participation in the Conference was made possible thanks to a subsidy from the Islamic Society for Cultural Formation in Poland, to whom I express my warm gratitude. I also thank Dr Philip W. Matthews for his kind assistance with the final edition of this article.

1. Early Arab Cartography

Under this heading we usually understand the classical period of the Arab cartography which began with translations of the Ancient works by Ptolemy (ca 100–168 B.C.) into Arabic (8–9th cc.), followed by the earliest Arabic cartographic productions (8–9th cc.), at present only known from verbal second-hand accounts, and with the so-called Al-Balḫī school (9th c.) and independent works by Al-Bīrūnī (11th c.). It reached its apex with the famous geographer Al-Idrīsī (12th c.) and his map of the world produced at the order of King Roger of Sicily. The tradition of Idrisian cartography barely survived until the early 17th c. and came to an end with the sudden but isolated outburst of the very characteristic portolan maps executed by Aṣ-Ṣafāqisī family in Tunisia.

However, two centuries later, quite unexpectedly, the Idrisian tradition reemerged in Morocco like the Phoenix from the ashes and made its last known appearance, marking the final stage of premodern Arabic cartography. It was an early 19th c. map of the world by a Moroccan Az-Zayyānī (1734/35–1833), which, like most of all previous cartographic productions of the Arabs, was not an independent item *per se* but was meant to accompany and illustrate a written text.

Thus ended the premodern Arabic cartography based on Ptolemy's works. Five years after the death of Az-Zayyānī, an Egyptian intellectual Rifā'a Badawī Rāfi' at-Taḥtāwī (1801–1873) elaborated and published an Arabic translation of Conrad Malte-Brun's *Géographie universelle*, under the title: *Al-ǧuġrāfiyā al-ᶜumūmiyyaᵗ*; this was accompanied by a geographical dictionary: *At-Taᶜrīfāt aš-šāfiyaᵗ li-murīd al-ǧuġrāfiyā* (*Visible definitions for seekers of geography*), published in Al-Qāhira (Būlāq) in 1838. It was the beginning of a completely new era in Arabic geography and cartography.

2. Az-Zayyānī, his book and his map

On the 12th day of the month Rabī' al-Awwal of the Muslim (Hiǧrī) year 1233, corresponding to 20th or 21st of January 1818, a Moroccan statesman, traveler, poet and historian, named Abū al-Qāsim az-Zayyānī, successfully completed his main and most important work, drawing on history and geography, titled *At-Turǧumānaᵗ al-kubrá fī aḫbār al-maᶜmūr barrᵃⁿ wa-baḥrᵃⁿ* (*The great interpreter of relations from the inhabited world on land and sea*). In fact, none of his works (about fifteen titles altogether) were ever completed in the proper sense of the word, because until the last of his days the author used to place additional notes on the margins of his books which thus amplified the earlier texts and always tried to bring out some new material for readers.

At the beginning of the 20th century *At-Turǧumānaᵗ al-kubrá* came to be known to exist in only two manuscripts in unspecified private Moroccan collections in the cities of Salā and Marrākuš (Salé and Marrakech), as vaguely mentioned by Évariste Lévi-Provençal in 1922. Forty five years later, in August 1967, the book was published in the Arabic

original in Morocco, without any indication as to the origin of a handwritten codex (or codices) on which the printed edition was based.

The manuscript of *At-Turğumāna*^{t} *al-kubrá* was accompanied by a map which was meant – in principle – to illustrate the book and give its readers a better spatial presentation of the facts mentioned in its contents. There was only that one map in the book, and at present we have no information about anything else beside the map.

That map from *At-Turğumāna*^{t} *al-kubrá* is the subject of the present short study. How the purpose of the map was achieved, will be discussed below.

3. The Map (copies A and B)

The map accompanying *At-Turğumāna*^{t} *al-kubrá* has until recently been only known from two technically imperfect printed photographs in black and white.

The first of them in the order of appearance and which will be called here Map A, was reproduced from the original and published by Évariste Lévi-Provençal in 1922, as the plate/figure 3 on p. 188, in his book. Lévi-Provençal named it facticiously "la carte des mers" ("map of the seas") but gave no information as regards the source of the reproduced map and which codex (possibly one of the two mentioned above) it originally came from. The same Map A was again reprinted after the Lévi-Provençal's book by J.B. Harley and D. Woodward (1992, p. 172) in their insightful study of Islamic cartography. The authors inform us sadly that "attempts to locate a manuscript of this work [*At-Turğumāna*^{t} *al-kubrá*] have proved fruitless".

A photograph of the second copy of the map, here called Map B, was included in the Arabic printed edition of *At-turğumāna*^{t} *al-kubrá*, (Az-Zayyānī 1967, between pp. 30–31), without indication of the source of both the map and the text. It could have been reproduced from one of the codices mentioned by Lévi-Provençal in 1922, or from a different one. We have no information about where in the manuscript text the map was originally inserted. It is not known which of the two hitherto known maps came from which codex (Salā or Marrākuš, or possibly another one).

This author's endeavours in detecting the present whereabouts of the two earlier known manuscripts of *At-Turğumāna*^{t} *al-kubrá* and/or their maps did not yield any result. Nor could it be ascertained if there exist any other manuscripts of that book except those two from Salā and Marrākuš. *Nota bene*, recently an information was received from a source which choose to remain anonymous, that the Map A could be found in a manuscript no. Ms. 2470 in the collection of Al-Ḫizāna^{t} al-Ḥasaniyya^{t} of the Royal Palace in Rabat, but that indication could not be confirmed.

Both Maps A and B are very similar but at the same time certainly distinct, like any two manuscript copies of the same work. Map A was reproduced by both Lévi-Provençal and Harley/Woodward in its entirety, while the Moroccan reproduction of the Map B covers only its right half (that is its Western part, since the map, following an old Islamic tradition in cartography, was oriented towards the South). No information is available on

the actual size of those maps, but both maps were apparently folded in two, to match the size of their respective codices.

4. A third copy of the map appears

Forty one years after the printing of the Arabic text of *At-Turǧumāna*^{t} *al-kubrá*, in 2008, another copy of apparently the same map, which will be called here Map C, appeared on the antiquarian market in Saudi Arabia. In November of that year it was acquired for the library of Ibn Khaldun Institute in Poland.

The vendors could furnish only basic information about Map C. It had remained for quite a long time as a property of a Saudi family in the city of Ǧudda (Djedda, Jeddah), who recently decided to sell it. The map is a separate sheet obviously extracted from a book. The last owners of the map, and the vendors alike, had no information about the book itself nor about earlier owners of the map. It may only be hypothetically assumed that at a certain time, between ca mid 19th century and mid 20th century, the map was brought to Arabia by a Moroccan (or, more largely speaking, Maġribian) pilgrim who covered a part of his travel and living expenses during *ḥaǧǧ* through selling it to a local customer. Unless new evidence comes to light, the veracity of both the vendor's story and our hypothesis cannot be tested.

Was the map taken out of one of the earlier mentioned manuscripts or still from a third one? That question cannot be answered without close examination of all the manuscripts of *At-Turǧumāna*^{t} *al-kubrá*, but their number and present locations remain unknown. In consequence it is not known, either, how many other similar maps may exist now in unsearched and uncatalogued collections.

5. Map C – physical description

Map C is a hand-written copy, drawn and painted in water-colors on what appears to be a thin, white, hand-made sheet of paper, pasted to another thin white paper (*doublure*). It has a shield water-mark which still awaits identification. The reverse side of the second sheet is clear, without any drawing or writing on it. The map was folded in two, apparently so as to match the size of the book of which it was an integral part.

The size of the map within drawn frames, is 37.8 cm (bottom) or 38.5 cm (top) by 28 cm (right) or 27.8 cm (left). The overall size of the whole sheet, with margins, is 42 cm by 31.5 cm. When folded in two, the map has the size of a modern A-4 office paper. The manuscript, from which the map originates, was therefore of significant dimensions and certainly must have been a sumptuous object.

Map C is very similar in shape and disposition to the other two maps, but contains visibly more extensive toponymic coverage. It seems that Map C was drawn separately from A and B (those two seem more to resemble each other than C). It is interesting to

note, however, that Map B has a compass rose in lower right (NW) corner, while Maps A and C do not.

Numbering of pages, executed in pencil on a painted side, is preserved in the center of upper (Southern) margins of the map, in European figures as used in the Maghrib (contrary to Middle-Eastern usage), judging by the character of writing. Page numbers 531 and 532, indicating two halves of the map, go from right to left, according to Arabic way of reckoning the pages. It may be assumed that the numbers follow the numbering of pages of the non-extant (?) manuscript of *At-Turğumāna*^{t} *al-kubrá,* from which Map C originates. It should be noted that the number 5 in both cases has overwritten another undecipherable number (perhaps 2?).

One can certainly ask questions about correct attribution of Map C. Is it really a map produced to illustrate the book by Az-Zayyānī? There is no definitive argument to support this hypothesis. On the other side, however, there is a strong resemblance between the three maps in outline and disposition, and also a visible lack of any other similar maps, known to exist in other books originating from the same region and times (in fact – from any area and any times). It is most unlikely that in a period when Arabic maps were almost no longer produced (except this special case) there could emerge, out of nothing, a complete, separately created, cartographic work. That allows us to believe that we really have before us a third sister – an original map from *At-Turğumāna*^{t} *al-kubrá*.

Another mysterious fact is the deliberate change of the numbering of pages. Who did that, when and why? Was the map initially integrated with one manuscript and then removed and put into another one?

Finding manuscripts of this book, that may possibly still exist somewhere, and comparing them with Map C, could perhaps give a final argument in favor of our interpretation or offer a new solution of the problems.

The map is unevenly preserved. Quite big spaces are in almost perfect condition and are easy to read. However, even there there are wormholes which sometimes mutilate the inscriptions. The fold in the middle is in bad condition with some small parts of the map missing: ca 1 cm^2 in the bottom part (Northern Europe), ca 2 cm^2 in the middle part (Northern Mesopotamia), and ca 4–5 cm^2 in the upper part (Central Arabia).

The second layer of paper was apparently used to repair the damages incurred by the original map, while the margins were on the reverse reinforced with still other bands of paper. Subsequently the map was again injured with wormholes everywhere and at the heavily used fold, and the two halves are now hardly attached to each other.

6. Contents of Map C

Judging from the imprecise topographical outlines and awkwardly spelled geographical names, the map comprises in the South (upper side), in Africa, the basin of Nīl as-Sūdān, the Nile of the Sudan, that is Senegal and Niger rivers, represented according to the old

Arab tradition as a one single waterway, originating together with Nīl Miṣr, the Nile of Egypt in an (unnamed) big lake, detaching from the Nile and flowing into the (unnamed) Atlantic Ocean. Further to the East (left) the map comprises the big part of the Indian Ocean and includes India and China with its eastern shores.

The bottom left (North-Eastern) part of the map shows the country of Yāǧūǧ (Biblical Gog and Magog), well separated from the rest of Asia by the (unnamed) mythical Alexander's Wall. The country of Yāǧūǧ extends as a narrow strip far to the West and finally touches on the North Sea.

The North-Western (bottom right) corner of the map includes the whole of England, Ǧazīraᵗ Niqlāṭiraᵗ, written over an irregular shape with the very characteristic promontory of Cornwall, and another, oblong island, located immediately to the North-East of England, named Ǧazīraᵗ R.slāndaᵗ. This island, which seems displaced from some other original location, allows free interpretation. May be it is Iceland. That Iceland, however, could perhaps be rather identified as Ireland, that was more commonly known to extra-European world. Another explication could be that the name repeated a German name of Russia – Russland, overheard during author's travels and applied to an island lying a bit out of context (distant Russia extending somewhere to the North-East of England).

Two more islands adjoin Great Britain from the left/Eastern side. The first, whose name was in greater part mutilated by bookworms, can still be identified (after Al-Idrīsī) as Ǧazīraᵗ Narbāġaᵗ or Narfāġaᵗ, i.e. Norway. The other one, lying more to the East and close to the country of Yāǧūǧ, does not have a name on it.

To sum up, the map shows – in its own way – all of Asia and Europe and about half of the African continent. The presented part of Africa (with adjoining seas) occupies ca 20% of the space on the map, Europe occupies another 20%, and the remaining 60% remains as the share of Asia.

Shapes of all geograhical features are very general, disproportionate and disfigured.

The scale of the map cannot be established for the whole of it since the proportions differ from one place to another.

The Asiatic part of the map, on which space is rendered in a symbolical rather than real way, and which does not offer fixed places for calculation, roughly corresponds to scale 1:24,000,000 when measured from North to South and 1:34,000,000 in the West-East direction.

In Europe and Africa it is quite different but not more precise. The scales vary from 1:15,000,000 (calculated after the distance İstanbul–Hamburg) and 1:13,000,000 (Ceuta–Alexandria), through 1:9,200,000 (İstanbul–Tīnbuktū) and 1:9,100,000 (Rome–Ǧuddaᵗ), to 1:8,500,000 (Ceuta–Hamburg) and 1:6,300,000 (İstanbul–Rome).

The map has the shapes of continents and islands drawn with countour lines in black.

Mountain chains are marked with black wavy or meandering lines.

Inland waters, that is rivers and lakes, are marked in red.

The nomeclature and short explicative texts on Map C (similarly to A and B) are in a typical cursive Maġribī script.

Names of inhabited places are written also in black but there are no special marks to indicate the location of those entities. Occasionally found black dots rarely coincide with localities, and the closer examination reveals their true nature as small worm-holes.

The seas, including the Caspian Sea, are all painted with an uneven layer of brownish green paint, reminding us of the colour of spinach. This paint occasionally overlays and covers some islands and inscriptions that were put on the map earlier. It seems that the paint was applied later, by the author or may be even a subsequent user, as if to make the map more decorated and nicer.

In analogy to Maps A and B, and following more than a millennium of the cartographical tradition of Ptolemy, transmitted by Al-Idrīsī, Map C is divided with black lines vertically (latitudinally) into seven climates (*iqlīm*), starting with the Southerthernmost one at the top of the map and ending with the Northernmost at the bottom of the drawing. Each climate is subsequently divided into ten horizontally (longitudinally) arranged sections (*ǧuz'*). This conventional grid system tries to arrange the global space orderly and reveals superficial similarity to the existing modern topographical grid networks. The technical bases of the two systems are incompatible and the grids should not be mistaken through taking one for the other or *vice versa*. As can be seen from Al-Idrīsī's or Az-Zayyānī's maps, they are now hardly comparable.

It should be remarked that most of the lines, that were originally drawn in black, have faded and now represent various shades of grey.

Contour lines depicting continents and islands extend in several places far beyond the frames of the map into the margins, together with inscriptions on them. That phenomenon can also be observed, although to a lesser degree, on Maps A and B. Oceans of Map C are painted also when they overlap the margins.

7. Toponymy

This section on toponymy will not include the review of all place names overwritten on the map, leaving their detailed study for another occasion. Some remarks are however due in order to better understand the nature of the map.

Geographical names on the map may be approximately reckoned and split by continents as follows:

Europe – 107 names (most of them in the Iberian peninsula),

Africa – 179 names,

Asia – 272 names (most of them in the Middle East).

It makes roughly 558 lexical units appearing on the map, with the reservation that after a careful study some of them may in reality appear to constitute jointly just one name and others may possibly have to undergo a division. Nevertheless, the quantities and proportions would not change considerably.

A brief review of the names on the map reveals that they belong to several categories:

1. Names of populated places;
2. Oronymic features, like: a) seas, gulfs and lakes, b) islands, c) mountains, d) rivers;
3. Regionyms referring to: a) physical areas, b) historical and political areas, c) tribal areas.

The toponymic coverage of the map is uneven, both as regards the relations between the continents and various categories of names. It is not in proportion to actual density of human settlements. Some seemingly important orographic elements, shown on the map in drawing, are devoid of names.

I would like to highlight just some particular features.

Many toponyms are equivocal and many of them are repeated.

They may either mean a tribe itself or a tribal territory, like the name At-Turk – *the Turks*. Al-ẖarāb – *the ruins,* which are dispersed (alongside with the name At-Turk) over large territories of North-Eastern Asia, may refer either to concrete abandoned human dwellings of whatever kind or, alternately, to a naturally devastated, unfertile and inhospitable land.

Among others we find the tribal name Qibğāq, without any generic term (it could be, for example, bilād, or dār, or arḍ, or some other one), but certainly referring to a territory. Another structure of a regionym, more developed, is exemplified by Mağālāt al-Ġuzz – *transhumance expanses of the Oguz tribe*. located not too far away from Qibğāq. The interchangable and repeated names like Al-Mafāzaᵗ and Al-Qafr, both of them meaning *desert*, may either refer to particular area bearing such a name or have a quite general character. Interesting to observe that some of them actually appear inside a neatly delimited area.

Names of populated places appear to be as if selected at random and sometimes it is difficult to ascertain when they mean a concrete place and when a territory. Some of them are repeated in areas where they never belonged – like Al-Banādiq, Venice, appearing all along the Eastern shore of the Apennine Peninsula. Place names along the Nīl as-Sūdān are systematically repeated on both shores of the river.

Most of geographical names, in all continents, seem to repeat (although in a more limited selection) the names known from Al-Idrīsī's works, that is reflecting the reality from before 800 years, at least verbally – because their localisation on the map leaves a lot to desire. Some names shown in Al-Maġrib repeat expressions earlier encountered in the geographical descriptions by Ibn Ḫaldūn (1332–1406), like Mağālāt al-Barbar or Mağālāt Hayyib wa-Ruwāḥaᵗ.

The highest density of populated places is shown all around the Mediterranean Sea: the Maġribian shores, Egypt, the Levant and Asia Minor, then Spain. In those areas, and in comparison with Maps A and B, Map C offers a true richness of toponyms.

There are, however, also signs of newer times, the names of entities that became known to our author through more up-to-date evidence. The name Ar-Rūsiyā (Russia,

Al-Idrīsī's Rūsiyya[t]) appears alternately with Al-Mūsk (Moscow, or the state of Muscovy), the name which could not be known to classical Arab geographers (see also above about the possible German name of Russia). Opposite Great Britain, on the European continent, we find Ġ.nb.rq (Hamburg), a very important economic center during the lifetime of Az-Zayyānī.

Interweaving old, obsolete names with newer ones introduces a lot of confusion into the geographical knowledge of the readers that could be gathered from the map. The names match but a little with geographical descriptions contained in *At-Turǧumāna[t] al-kubrá*, which further complicates the processus of communication between the author and the reader.

8. Textual descriptions

A few descriptive texts appear on Map C, like: Arḍ al-Yunān bi-hā – *a land [with] Greeks on it*, and a little further to the North: [*Arḍ] bi-hā Arnāwūṭ – *[*a land] on which [there are] Albanians*.

Hardly detectable inscriptions, because of an overlaying paint, can be traced on the Adriatic Sea, Black Sea and the Caspian Sea. For comparison, Maps A and B reveal several more inscriptions, including some numerical data, in the maritime areas.

The full list of names and descriptions from the map should be carefully compiled and studied in comparative light, specially as regards its relationship with the book itself and its two other sister maps, A and B, as well as other premodern Arabic sources, particularly Al-Idrīsī's work, on which this map seems to be directly dependent. The more insightful research will allow to identify all features named on the map and to establish correct spelling of the names, as well as assessing the informative value of the textual descriptions.

The first glimpse on the map and the book allows us to find, however, that the contents of this Idrīsīan map has in general little connection with the contents of the book, conceived according to a different scheme and outline, and the book is definitely less dependent on the descriptive geographical work by Al-Idrīsī than the map.

9. Relevance of the map and the vision of the world

Az-Zayyānī's map, the epigon of classical Arab cartography, appeared when the Arab geographical science was in a precarious situation. How could it happen?

Self isolation of the Moroccan Empire that some later observers called the "Japan of the West" created a split and separation from the modern trends in life and science that were coming to the Mediterranean. The Ottoman Empire under a pressing need to keep control of its waters as well as waters that – not yet? – belonged to the Empire, developed its own school of portolan cartography. This drew on Turkish intelligence sources and extensively used foreign maps, acquired for that purpose from (mainly) Italian producers

and other European cartographers. The technological transfer took place there on a large scale and lead to the development of Turkey's own cartographers who could satisfy the requirements of military and civil administration.

The exchange of technology and information between Al-Maġrib and the Ottomans was meagre, if any. Ottoman maps (for instance, those produced by Piri Reis, ca 1465–1554) used place names of the Maġribian sea shores in all sorts of European spellings, retransliterated into the Arabic script of the Ottoman Turkish. Confusion was complete as no information flow between two culturally related countries could really be observed in that sphere.

At the same time Moroccans remained isolated from the outside world by the will of the ᶜAlawī sultans, in fear of the competing Ottoman power and of the progress of European influence in the country and of possible aggression from that side (as we see from further history, those fears were quite justified). Thus they missed a chance of the development of intellectual exchange and technological transfer.

Az-Zayyānī, as other Moroccans of his times, had only the Arabic classical tradition at his disposal and used it the best he could, building a dead-end of that ancient and medieval tradition in modern times. Though his map may seem all too simplicist for our taste, it was nevertheless an important source of information for the readers in his closed-in society and offered them a wider vision of the world from which they were separated. There lay the relevance of the map for the contemporary users.

Continuation of the classical tradition in Arabic geography did not end completely with the appearance of first translations of modern scientific works from French. The Arabs did not only feel attached to their old poetry but also to their old scientific traditions which could last and last in parallel to the new developments. In Egypt, which looked to be so much culturally advanced in comparison with Morocco, Muḥammad Amīn al-Ḫāniǧī wrote a geographical dictionary which was a direct supplement to the famous dictionary *Muʿǧam al-buldān* by Yāqūt al-Ḥamawī (13th c.) and had it printed in 1907.

Az-Zayyānī should be praised for what he did in the given circumstances and not blamed for what the others did not. His map will remain a rare and intellectually significant document from those difficult times and conditions.

Short Bibliography

Ahmad, S. Maqbul, *India and the Neighbouring Territories in the Kitāb nuzhat al-mus̲h̲tāq fi'k̲h̲tirāq al-'āfāq of Al-Ṣ̲h̲arīf al-Idrīsī*, E.J. Brill, Leiden 1960.

Fischer, August, *Der marokkanische Historiker 'Abû-l-Qâsim ez-Zajânî*, ZDMG, 71, 1917, pp. 223–226.

Harley, J.B., David Woodward (eds.), *Cartography in the Traditional Islamic and South Asian Societies*, The University of Chicago Press, Chicago and London 1992.

Idrîsî, *La première géographie de l'Occident*. Présentation, notes, index, chronologie et bibliographie par Henri Bresc et Annliese Nef. Traduction du chevalier Jaubert, revue par Annliese Nef, GF Flammarion, Paris 1999.

Kračkovskij, Ignatij Julianovič, *Arabskaja geografičeskaja literatura*. Izdatel'stvo Akademii Nauk SSSR, Moskva–Leningrad 1957.

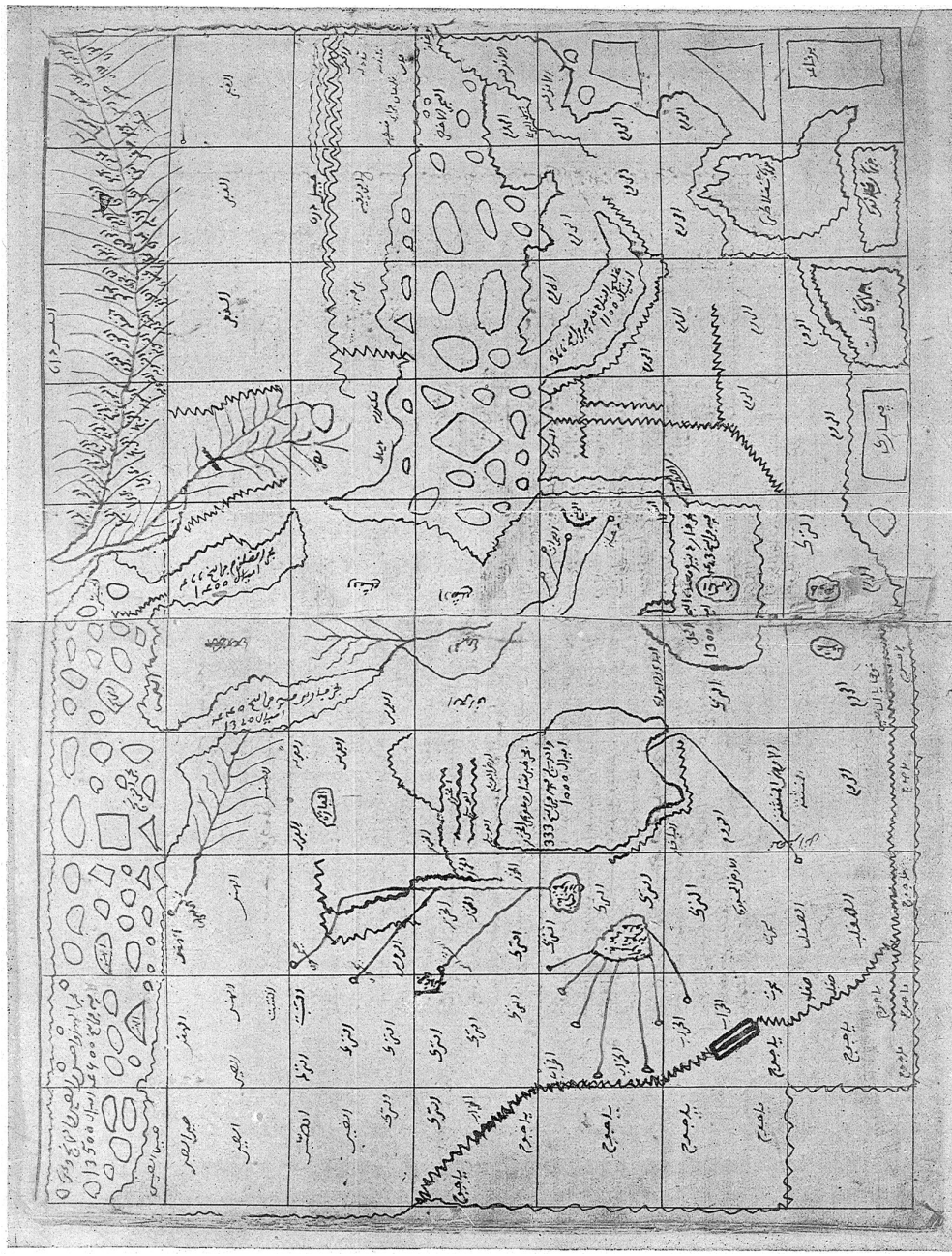
Lévi-Provençal, Évariste, *Les historiens des chorfa. Essai sur la littérature historique et biographique au Maroc du XVI^e au XX^e siécle*. E. Larose, Paris 1922. (reprinted: Ed. Afrique-Orient, Casablanca 1991; and: Maisonneuve & Larose, Paris 2001 – this last reedition without illustrations).

Nazmi, Ahmad, *The Muslim Geographical Image of the World in the Middle Ages. A Source Study*, Academic Publishing House DIALOG, Warsaw 2007.

Valensi, Lucette, *Le Maghreb avant la prise d'Alger (1790–1830)*. Cérès Éditions, Tunis 2004. "Collection Africana".

Zagórski, Bogusław R., *Ibn Khaldun's History as a Source Book of Maghrebian Toponymy*. Paper presented at the 31st International Geographical Congress, Tunis, August 12–15, 2008, Session TSS.1: *The Evolution of Geographical Thought*.

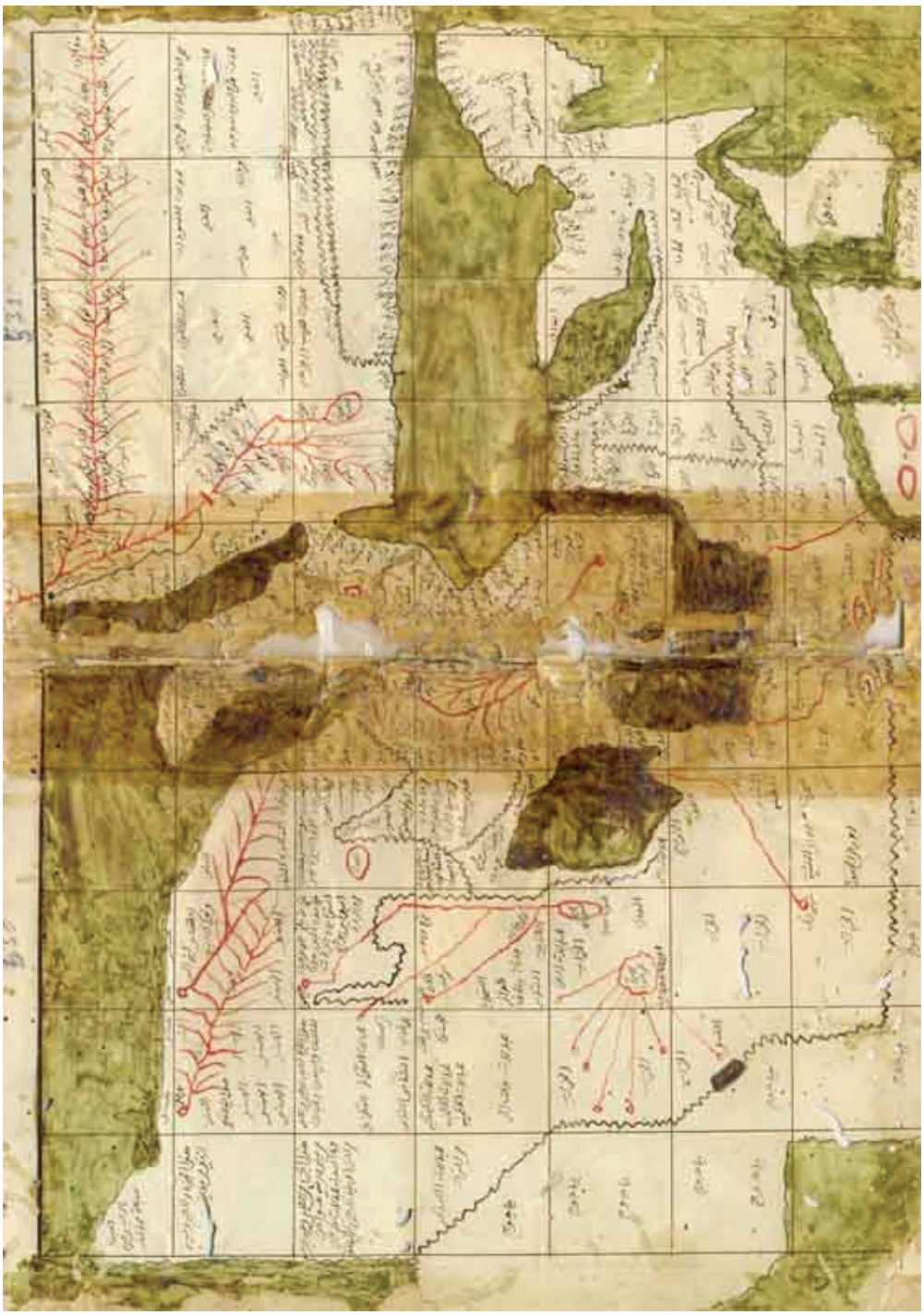
Zayyānī, Abū al-Qāsim az-, *At-Turǧumāna^t al-kubrá fi aḫbār al-ma'mūr barr^an wa-baḥr^an*. Ḥaqqaqa-hu wa-'allaqa 'alay-hi 'Abd al-Karīm al-Fīlālī. Laǧna^t Iḥyā' at-Turāṯ al-Qawmī, Našr Wizāra^t al-Anbā', Maṭbaṭa^t Faḍḍāla^t, Al-Muḥammadiyya^t 1967.



Map A

جانبٌ من خريطة ابى القاسم الزياني كما وضعها بالترجمانة ونحن ننشرها على علاتها وان كان فيما يبدو لم يقصد الوضع الحقيقي للكرة الارضية بل التقريب فقط وقد اشرنا الى الشمال الذي عكسه المؤرخ باشارة تبين الاتجاه

Map B



Map C

R O C Z N I K O R I E N T A L I S T Y C Z N Y, T. LXV, Z. 2, 2012, (s. 62–73)

MARCIN GRODZKI

An Alternative Insight into the First Centuries of Islam on the Iberian Peninsula – Problems of Historiographic Sources Concerning the Early Islamic History of Al-Andalus

Abstract

The stream of historical revisionism within the Orientalist scholarship has offered in recent years a number of intriguing theories attempting to undermine some of the conventional concepts of the Arab-Muslim early history and religious tradition. Regardless of their actual scholarly value, they do shed light on various methodological problems concerning the critical research on early the Islamic historiography, raise sensitive and stimulating questions, and encourage to think possibly of revising certain axioms of knowledge about that epoch. This paper endeavours to present briefly an alternative image of the arrival of Islam on the Iberian Peninsula, as emerging from research by the revisionist school of West-European scholars called *Inārah*. Their controversial theory involving, among others, historical and dogmatic aspects of the development of Islam in Andalusia, disputes the generally accepted version of historical events beginning with the 8th century C.E. which is largely based on the traditional sources of Arabic historiography.

Keywords: Historical revisionism, Arab-Muslim conquest of Spain, early Islam, Islamic historiography

This article outlines briefly an alternative image of early Islamic history on the Iberian Peninsula, as emerging from research by the revisionist school of West-European Semitists called *Inârah* (active mostly in Germany and France for nearly 10 years). The controversial theory involving, among others, historical and theological aspects of the development of Islam in Andalusia, disputes the generally accepted version of historical

events beginning with the 8th century C.E. which is largely based on the traditional sources of Arabic historiography.

The precursors of the *Inârah* Institute gained publicity in year 2000 after the publication of the known pioneer philological work of Christoph Luxenberg entitled. *Die syro-aramäische Lesart des Koran – Ein Beitrag zur Entschlüsselung der Koransprache* (the book was released in English in 2004 as *The Syro-Aramaic Reading of the Koran – A Contribution to the Decoding of the Language of the Koran* by Verlag Hans Schiler). It soon became the reference point for most of scientific research undertaken by scholars of the Oriental studies affiliated with the *Inârah* movement. Luxenberg, its member, calls for the revision of our current knowledge on the oldest Islamic history by means of subjecting its primary sources to the requirements of scientific criticism. The main methodological assumptions of Christoph Luxenberg rely on the analysis of the Qur'anic text against the cultural and historical background of its probable origins – the Middle East of the 7th and 8th century, saturated with the Syro-Aramaic tradition. The *Inârah* school embraced scholars (mostly German, French and American) specializing in different fields, such as Semitistics (including Arabic and Syriac studies), Iranian and Turkish studies, archeology, history of the pre-Islamic ages and early centuries of Islam, Christian and Muslim theology, history of art (relics of Arab material culture, including numismatics), Islamic studies, literature and other branches of human science.

The scientific activities of the *Inârah* movement are strongly revisionist and are criticized by most of the Orientalist milieus as lacking scientific objectivity and charged with prejudice against the Muslim tradition. On the other hand, the critical scientific theses put forward by members of the *Inârah* group gained support of some prominent intellectuals of the Western Oriental scholarship, including the Egyptian liberal Muslim theologian-in-exile Nasr Hamid Abu Zayd and the world-renowned German paleographer of the Arabic language Gerd-Rüdiger Puin. The publicity surrounding *Inârah* has contributed to the popularity of their scientific theories which are widely discussed within the Western Orientalist milieus, undoubtedly pushing forward the development of this field of human sciences. Every year, dozens of published scientific papers refer directly or indirectly to the effects of *Inârah*'s work.

The main assumption made by the revisionist school is that our contemporary knowledge on the origins of Islam has almost solely been acquired from the sources of the Islamic tradition, written accounts of which date back to the 8th–9th century AD or later, i.e. 150–200 years after the events in question. Historical credibility of these sources has never been sufficiently confirmed by scientific research, least of all archaeology.

According to *Inârah*'s theory, the formation of Islam as a separate religion was a long-term process covering about two centuries[1]. The forerunner of the Muslim community became in the 7th century a specific community of Syro-Arab Christians who

[1] The hypothesis of a wide expanse of time accompanying various processes leading to the (development or) evolution of the dogmatic message of Islam (i.e. the Qur'anic script, exegesis, but also jurisprudence etc.) is an often returning motif within the critical scholarship on Islam. See also, inter alia: John Wansbrough, *Quranic Studies. Sources and Methods of Scriptural Interpretation*, Oxford University Press 1977, p. 47, 90, 92, 140 etc.

were gradually detaching themselves dogmatically from the Byzantine church since the time of the First Council of Nicaea in 325 C.E. (which recognized the doctrine of the Holy Trinity). In the 7th century, their faith was already marked by a distinct form of anti-trinitarianism, in some way akin to the beliefs of the Arians. Hence, the Syrian literature of the 7th and 8th centuries (including theological treatises and historical chronicles) considers this denominational group to be an Arab-Christian heresy. Its followers began to assume power over the region of Great Syria after the Emperor Heraclius (610–641 C.E.) had renounced his administrative authority over the eastern provinces of Byzantium in the twenties of the 7th century. Since then, the Syriac Arabs regarded themselves politically as the rightful heirs of the Byzantine dominions in the Middle East. Religiously, they believed in the new anointment of the Arabs – sons of Ismail as the inheritors of Abraham's spiritual legacy and the heirs of the divine law given to Moses[2]. By the end of the 7th century, the Arab Umayyad Empire under the leadership of 'Abd al-Malik Ibn Marwān usurped the spiritual and material patrimony over the former provinces of the Byzantine Empire in the Arab East, as well as the lands in North Africa and Spain[3].

In the revisionist theory, this theological movement was gradually drifting away from the teachings of Constantinople and Rome and transforming itself slowly into Islam as an independent non-Christian religion, a process which only materialized at the turn of the 8th and 9th century.

Also, the very terminology of the Islamic religion is – according to the *Inârah* school – historically late and derives from the Syriac Christian tradition. The word "*islām*" was initially to mean theologically the compliance of faith dogmas with the message of *Al-Kitāb* – the Holy Book. The term "*muslim*" depicted believers of this specifically conceived form of pre-Nicaean theology, and the Arabic passive participle "*muḥammad*" (Arabic: praised, glorified) was to be the theological Arab epithet referring to the person of the Messiah Son of God and describing one of His virtues, and was not to refer to the name of the Muslim prophet Muhammad[4].

In this sense, *Muḥammad* is not a historical figure, but one of theological concepts of the said group of Arab-Syriac Christians[5]. This concept becomes for the new Arab

---

Wansbrough supports J. Schacht's point that the canonization of the Qur'an could not have preceeded the process of working out of the Islamic jurisprudence first. John Wansbrough, op. cit., p. 44.

[2] Within this theory, the Qur'an, and precisely its oldest surahs, was originally thought as the eschatological epopee of the spiritual struggle of these people.

[3] According to revisionist views, during the reign of 'Abd al-Malik the Arab state subsumed Tripolitania and the former Roman province of Africa. This fact is historically confirmed by numismatic finds from these areas – coins marked with the religious symbol 'Abd al-Malik's sovereignty (called *yegar sahaduta* – the Old Testamental "stone of witness"), corresponding to similar coins of the same ruler minted in the Arab East. The newly subjugated territories were governed by 'Abd al-Malik's brother – 'Abd al-'Azīz Ibn Marwān. Then the sons of 'Abd al-Malik continued further conquest of Africa in the western direction, and Spain.

[4] Volker Popp, *Biblische Strukturen in der islamischen Geschichtsdarstellung*, in: Markus Groß, Karl-Heinz Ohlig (ed.), *Schlaglichter. Die beiden ersten islamischen Jahrhunderte*, Verlag Hans Schiler Berlin, pp. 35–92.

[5] Volker Popp, *Von Ugarit nach Sâmarrâ*, in: Karl-Heinz Ohlig (ed.), *Der frühe Islam. Eine historisch-kritische Rekonstruktion anhand zeitgenössischer Quellen*, Berlin 2007, pp. 13–222.

church (breaking free religiously from the hegemony of the Patriarch of Constantinople and administratively from the rule of the Byzantine Emperor) the main motto and guiding maxim of "new Arab Christianity". It was only after the Abbasid dynasty had been established that a historic dimension was added to the concept of "*muḥammad*", within the frame of a reverse projection into Islam's history, done by Abbasids to make their dominion legitimate[6]. It was also that time when the Arabic biography of Muḥammad was created.

According to the revisionist school, this religious philosophy, and not Islam as defined today, arrived in 711 at the gates of the Visigothic Spain (and earlier to Egypt and the entire North Africa.) This belief was characterized by doctrinal resemblance to various Christian-like religious factions of the Iberian Peninsula at that time, from the still strong Arianism to gnosticism. The new anti-trinitarian theology, which was brought by the newcomers from the East, could therefore find fertile Arian ground on the Iberian Peninsula which in turn might have greatly facilitated its conquest.

Researchers from the *Inârah* group believe that the Berber-Arab army encountered remnants of the Arian community still before their military arrival in Spain, that is in North Africa. An anti-Catholic and anti-Franconian coalition was formed there and found its natural ally on the other side of the Strait of Gibraltar in parts of the population inhabiting southern Spain. This may mean that the legendary victory of the Arabs over the Visigothic king Roderick in 711 might have been the result of the said alliance between the Visigothic Arian aristocracy on one side and – on the other one – the Arian Berbers together with a few Syrian Arabs professing the belief in one God whose anti-trinitarian faith put them close to Spanish Arians[7]. This hypothesis implies that the conquest of Spain might not have been an ordinary military campaign with the "Muslim finger of God" in the background, but it rather had an opportunistic ground – the Berber-Arab army could have been "invited" to Spain to help in the removal of the Visigothic king loyal to Rome[8].

In revisionists' opinions, such a theory correlates with historical descriptions of the religious situation in Spain of the 8th and 9th centuries. Preserved synodical documents and writings of church officials do not refer in any way (at least till the middle of the

---

[6] In this context see also the theory of: Yehuda D.Nevo, Judith Koren, *Crossroads to Islam: The Origins of the Arab Religion and the Arab State*, Amherst New York 2003, pp. 297–336.

[7] Looking at the further course of historical events from this perspective, the victory of Charles Martel over the Arabs at Poitiers in 732 cannot be regarded as "driving back Muslims from the walls of Christian Europe". The military invasion of the Spanish anti-Catholic coalition was a retaliation for continuous pro-Catholic interferences of the Franks into Spanish affairs.

[8] The more that cases of coup d'etat of a religious nature with Arian participation were not anything new in Spain by that time. The mere fact of the conversion of the Visigothic king of Spain Reccared I (586–601) to Catholicism in 587 was of an opportunistic political nature: his intention was to avoid the fate of the Ostrogothic Arians and a blow from the part of the Catholic Franks of the Narbonese Gaul. A year later, in 588 some significant noble Arian clans lead by Witteric revolted against the king demanding the rehabilitation of the Arian faith. Witteric instigated another revolt in 603 gaining reign over the Visigothic state till 609. In turn, he was murdered by a group of Catholic aristocrats.

9th century) to the supposed appearance of a new non-Christian religion in Spain. The original source-texts (including theological writings devoted to dogmatics, correspondence, polemics, etc.) neither mention the terms "Islam" nor "Muslims". Still in the 7th century, numerous Spanish clergymen were pointing in their letters to some gradually increasing threats to the orthodoxy of the Catholic faith – mainly posed by the Arians and other locally-rooted religious currents. For this reason, by the end of the 7th century Toledo saw seven synods of bishops[9] held in short time intervals during which many of the spreading heresies, including gnostic currents associated with the earlier priscillianism and movements related to nestorianism, were condemned. In the 8th century the conflicts within Christianity took on more momentum, still no one seemed yet to know about the advent of a new teaching – the Islam[10]. The Church hierarchy was mainly occupied with its continuous struggle against internal Christian heresies. The metropolite of Toledo – Elipandus (717–808) took an attempt to unite factions of the church by announcing the doctrine of adoptionism, which, however, led in effect to sealing the already existing divisions[11]. At the same time, increasing numbers of the Christian Spanish population were adhering to an Arab faith brought from the East by the Umayyads. It was characterized by strong anti-trinitarianism, however the literature still did not call it Islam, but a Christian sect. A member of the *Inârah* institute prof.Johannes Thomas writes that in the 9th century the Christians of Córdoba were already in a substantial part followers of those various religious anti-trinitarian factions which still back in the 7th century were the reason for convening a series of synods. The Andalusian theologian and poet Álvaro of Córdoba (c. 800–861) complains in a letter to his friend written around the year 840 that the heresy of which he had been writing earlier, was *tearing apart the church, and leading the whole community to destruction*[12]. Its followers were, inter alia, denying the unity of the Holy Trinity and rejecting the belief in the divinity of Christ. The religious beliefs of the Cordoban Christians in reference to Jesus and the Holy Trinity coincide with the faith dogmas condemned by the First Council of Nicaea, which were in turn preserved by the

---

[9] During these synods bishops defended the teachings of the First Council of Nicaea (325 C.E.), the First Council of Constantinople (381), both councils of Ephesus (431 and 439), and especially the Council of Chalcedon (451). The Toledan synods were convened in the years 675 (11th synod), 681 (12th), 683 (13th), 684 (14th), 688 (15th), 693 (16th) and in 694 (17th). José Vives (ed.), *Concilios visigóticos y hispano-romanos*, Barcelona–Madrid 1963, p. 171.

[10] According to this theory, also the analysis of numismatic findings does not indicate that Spain was a Muslim country (in today's understanding of this word) by the 8th and beginning of the 9th century. More on this: Popp Volker, *Die frűhe Islamgeschichte nach inschriftlichen und numismatischen Zeugnissen*, in: Karl-Heinz Ohlig, Gerd-R. Puin (ed.), *Die dunklen Anfänge. Neue Forschungen zur Entstehung und frühen Geschichte des Islam*, 3.Aufl.2007, Berlin pp. 16–123.

[11] The adoptionism of Elipandus, akin to the views of Paul of Samosata and Photinus of Sirmium, was condemned by the pope and Charlemagne as a form of nestorianism. Northern Spain took energetically the side of the pope, whereas southern Spain, including Hispania Baetica (approximately today's province of Andalusia) limited itself just to refuting adoptionism as a thesis.

[12] José Madoz (ed.), *Epistolario de Alvaro de Córdoba*, Madrid 1947, p. 173, as quoted by: Johannes Thomas, *Frühe spanische Zeugnisse zum Islam*, in: Markus Groß, Karl-Heinz Ohlig (ed.), *Schlaglichter…*, op. cit., pp. 172–173.

tradition of the Syro-Arab church in the East. The fact that they were still referring at that time to the Gospel of Matthew (and not the Qur'an) also presupposes that they might have still been more heirs to the pre-Nicaean Christian dogmatics rather than Muslims[13].

Given the foregoing considerations, the revisionist school opposes the division of the events that took place before 711 and after this date into the Christian era and Muslim era, which is common in Spanish historiography. Many of today's scientific works illustrate the Berber-Arab conquest of Andalusia as a sharp turn in the course of history and an ideological reference point for the entire subsequent history of the Arab Umayyad caliphate in Spain. The history preceding the arrival of the Arabs is being "lumped" together under the catchword of "the Christian kingdom of the Visigoths", and all events after 711 are being stereotypically classified under the heading "Arab-Muslim governance", just as if they were two homogeneous opposing historical epochs. Contesting this view, Johannes Thomas also argues that Islam today is not the same religion as professed in the 8th century by Arabs, Ibadi Berbers conquering the Iberian peninsula or inhabitants of Andalusia by that time[14]. According to the German Romanist, the myth of a "fine division of two historical epochs" is sustained by the uncritical gaining of knowledge of that time from hardly reliable Arab historical chronicles, written down not earlier than a few hundred years after the portrayed events[15]. According to researchers

---

[13] Till the time of condemning the so-called Cassian heresy in 839, it seems that for the Cordoban church the problem of the person of Muhammad was not existent (later he was present in clergy writings and depicted as the "harbinger of the Antichrist"). A synod convened at that time dealt with the case of the Cassian sect and with the passivity of the catholic faith of those Christians who did not stand against the Syro-Arab christology. The bishops shared their concerns with the Umayyad caliph 'Abd ar-Raḥmān II, who convened the synod.

[14] The more that the conquest of Spain was mainly executed by the Berber army. The chronicle of Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam from the 9th/10th century describes the North African Berber tribes interchangeably with two closer unspecified terms: *ṣufrī* (Sufris) and *ibāḍī* (Ibadis). As for some tribes (e.g. Barani, Butr) it is being mentioned that that they remained Christian. In most cases however, the chronicle does not mention the religious affiliation of the Berber tribes. Thus it may be concluded that the troops invading Spain in the early 8th century did not consist of Sunni Muslims, but of Sufris and Ibadis (Similarly moreover, when the chronicle of Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam talks about the commander Mūsà Ibn Nuṣayr, it mentions only a few Arab personalities assisting him, however most of the persons surrounding him were Berber leaders and their freedmen (*mawālī*). Thus, there couldn't have been any major religious conflicts between them and the conquered Spanish Christians). In turn, according to Muslim tradition, Ibadi missionaries arrived in Africa from Basra not earlier than in 757 and supposedly managed to Islamize immediately the Berber tribes. However, this seems highly unlikely only because of the reason that Berbers spoke Berber dialects and Latin, and not Arabic. Anyway, it is possible that Ibadis were more concerned with acquiring Christian Berbers for an alliance against the Umayyads than perhaps islamizing them. Johannes Thomas, op. cit., p. 119.

[15] As Johannes Thomas points out, the thesis of *tabula rasa* creates scientific paradoxes in such fields as archeology, history of arts and architecture. For example, archaeologists working in Spain sometimes classify buildings and ornamentation similar architecturally to Umayyad palaces in the Arab East as a direct influence of Islamic culture, although till recently these monuments were regarded unquestionably as examples of Visigothic architecture. Moreover, the Spanish historian Luis Caballero Zoreda argues that Spanish architectural objects deriving by all their features from the late Roman, Byzantine or Visigothic periods are being tendentiously reclassified into the Muslim period. Thus, for example, a floormosaic dating till now on the basis of archaeological evidence to the 4th or 5th century, must be regarded as a monument of the 9th century, although it is explicit with taking the oldest archaeological layer for the youngest one. And further, after classifying the church as a building from

from *Inârah*, the transformation of Christian and gnostic Spain into Muslim Andalusia was a much smoother and long-lasting process than and it is being presented today by modern researchers. The Spanish historian Ignacio Olagüe (1903–1974) indicates that it is only since the 9th century that sectarian unrest began growing, the pressure against orthodox Christians was building up, Islam was formed as a religion separate from Christianity and started to be considered by the followers of Christ as the embodiment of the apocalyptic beast from the Book of Daniel[16]. It is impossible to understand the historical events in Spain of the early 8th century by adopting the view of the "fine clean division of two epochs", without paying attention to the cultural and religious background of the Mediterranean region and of the Orient in the late antiquity.

The revisionist school questions the generally accepted historical outline of the beginnings of Islam on the Iberian Peninsula showing that we owe it largely to the Muslim tradition written down on demand of the late Abbasid dynasty. It is a version of history oriented theologically and politically to sanctioning the religious and political power of the Abbasid rulers. It may be concluded from the research done by the German theologian Volker Popp that it is exactly in this political agenda of the first Abbasid caliphs where the real motives standing behind this homogenous traditional Muslim concept of describing the early history of Islam should be looked for. At the request of the Abbasids, a specific version of history friendly to the Abbasids rulers was created and projected back into the past, with the overall objective of purposeful legitimizing their political and religious authority. It is a certain kind of mythologization of history, in order to derive one's own lineage from the Prophet of Islam from Arabia[17]. At the same time, the Christian traditions of the Syriac Arabs did not correspond to the image of the history promoted by the Abbasid dynasty. Hence their marginalization or complete omission in traditional works of Muslim historiographers.

In the opinion of the renown English medievalist Roger Collins, it must be remembered that Arab sources portraying the conquest of Spain are not contemporary with the described events, but much later, sometimes even several hundred years. Thus, it is hard assigning them historical value, but only the literary one. These sources are also unreliable historiographically because they do not meet the requirements of scientific criticism: they often provide contradictory information, do not respect the chronology of events, include numerous literary topoi as well as later interpolations and contaminations, in a much greater degree than contemporary Latin chronicles. All this makes it necessary to treat early Arabic sources with a large dose of skepticism and credit them with confidence only if the information contained therein is confirmed by other sources of the given period[18].

---

the 9th century, its commemorative plaques bearing the earlier dates are being automatically rated as forgeries. Ibidem, p. 104–106.

[16] Ignacio Olagűe, *La revolución islámica en Occidente,* Guadarrama 1974, p. 198.

[17] In this context see also: Mondher Sfar, *Raison d'espérer*, in: K.H. Ohlig, G.R. Puin (ed.) *Die dunklen Anfänge…*, op. cit., p. 350.

[18] Roger Collins, *The Arab Conquest of Spain, 710–797*, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford 1989, pp. 2 and 26.

The oldest Arabic document of Andalusia dating back to the year 94 A.H. (713 C.E.) is the text of the treaty concluded by the son of the Arab commander Mūsà Ibn Nuṣayr – ‘Abd al-‘Azīz – with the Gothic magnate Theodemir. However this document which is referred to by almost every contemporary source of the Spanish history after 711, makes part of a manuscript dating from the turn of the 12th and 13th century, therefore it cannot be regarded as a historical source[19]. What is more, it contains numerous interpolations of subsequent later copyists which makes it impossible to verify the historical authenticity of the treaty.

In turn, the chronicle considered to be the oldest Arab annal reporting on the ongoings of the North African and Spanish conquest is the Egyptian chronicle attributed to Ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥakam (803–871) entitled *Futūḥ Ifrīqiya wa-al-Andalus*. However, problematic from the standpoint of historical criticism is the fact that the chronicle contains some information about events from the mid-10th century (such as the conquest of Narbonne by the Franks in 941/2) [20]. The author himself had never been to Spain, and wrote his work in Egypt drawing knowledge from travelers whose accounts find no confirmation in history. The Western Oriental scholarship has treated Ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥakam’s chronicle as an unreliable source since the known Dutch Arabist Piet Reinhart Dozy revealed its inaccuracies, the author’s tendency to confabulating and fabricating facts. Dozy likened the information provided by the chronicle to “tales from One Thousand and One Nights”[21].

Late is also the chronicle attributed to the first Andalusian historiographer known by his name – ‘Abd al-Malik Ibn Ḥabīb (790–854) which is preserved only in fragmentary quotations by later authors. However, since the last events portrayed in it involve the years 888–912, and it also contains allusions to the reconquest of Toledo (1085), hence it is being suggested that the work might have been originally written down by the successors of ‘Abd al-Malik Ibn Ḥabīb. Similar doubts arise over the chronicle of the Cordoban historiographer Ar-Rāzī (889–955). The text has been preserved through its later translations (including into Portuguese ca. by the year 1400, and into Castilian in the 15th century) and later compilations.

Hence, the oldest preserved Arabic-language Andalusian contribution to the history of Spain after 711 is generally considered the collection of traditional stories entitled *Aḫbār Maǧmū‘a*[22] dating to – by various estimates – between 10th and 11th/12th century[23].

---

[19] The manuscript saw wider light of the day for the first time in the publication of Miguel Casiri by the 18th century.

[20] Johannes Thomas, *Araboislamische Geschichtsschreibung und ihre Auswirkung auf Geschichtsbilder von al-Andalus (8 Jh.) – Quellen- und Tradentenprobleme, fiktionale Geschichte bei Ibn ‘Abd al-°akam und das Märchen von den arabischen Stammesfehden*, in: Markus Groß, Karl-Heinz Ohlig (ed.), *Die Entstehung einer Weltreligion I,* Verlag Hans Schiler Berlin–Tűbingen 2010, p. 155.

[21] See: Piet Reinhart Dozy, *Recherches sur l’histoire et la littérature des arabes d’Espagne pendant le Moyen Âge*, Brill Leyde 1881, 3 ed. vol. 1, pp. 36–38.

[22] *Ajbar Machmu. Crónica anonima del siglo XI, dada a luz por primera vez. Traducida y anotada por Emilio Lafuente y Alcántara,* Madrid 1867.

[23] *Aḫbār Maǧmū‘a* as a source written from the perspective of the late Muslim tradition does not reflect historiographically the actual socio-religious considerations of Spain at the brink of the 8th century, particularly

Its oldest manuscript (from the 14th century) is stored in the National Library in Paris. All other Arab sources to early medieval history of Andalusia (including the work of Ibn al-Qūṭiyya *Ta'rīḫ iftitāḥ al-Andalus* preserved in manuscripts from the 14th and 15th centuries, and the anonymous chronicle *Fatḥ al-Andalus* from the 12th century) are even more subsequent.

Because of numerous contradictions between various Arab chronicles and the large time-span separating them from the events described, some historians conclude that the reconstruction of the history of Arab Andalusia demands assigning the priority to more reliable Latin chronicles[24]. Another argument against the Arab accounts is the fact that they were written from the perspective of the victors. As pointed out by Roger Collins, "to a large degree the problem is one of contradictions and confusion in the [Arab] sources, resulting not least from the character of much of the Arab historiography of the western conquests. Thus the Arab historians writings in Egypt, North Africa, and Spain from the later ninth century onward often worked backward from contemporary conditions and practices and tried to find an explanation for their existence in terms of what had happened in the past. In practice this could often mean inventing a past what was able to make sense of the present. (…) Added to this must be the natural if regrettable tendency to give particular region, tribe, people, or settlement a longer and more distinguished Islamic past than it might actually have enjoyed. (…) [the] actual conquest by the Arabs would be a far longer and slower process than the sources imply, and in which Islam would be established much less rapidly and with less homogeneity than the piety of thirteenth-century and later Muslim historians writing in North Africa in North Africa would find able to credit"[25].

There exist two Latin chronicles from Spain of the period in question: the chronicle of the year 741 (*Continuatio Byzantia Arabica a. DCCXLI*)[26] and of the year 754 (the so-called *Continuatio hispanica a. DCCLIV*)[27]. Especially the latter one is considered the oldest source of Muslim historiography of Spain and the benchmark of credibility for the facts reported by Arab chronicles and subsequent Latin historiographic descriptions

---

by passing over in silence on the influence of the Judeo-Christian culture. For example, when the text refers to Ṭāriq Ibn Ziyād's army consisting mainly of Berbers and free mercenaries, it uses the vague term "*Muslims*" even though Berbers were still not Islamized nor Arabized by then. However, a dozen pages later when describing the Berber rebellion against Arabs, the chronicle uses the term "*Muslims*" only in reference to Arabs. The author or compiler of *Aḫbār Maǧmū'a* must have probably known that Berbers had revolted against the official Islam of the caliph. He wrote the chronicle from the perspective of the Arab rulers who did not acknowledge usurpers of power nor any different views on their religion.

[24] More on this, among others, by: Claude Dietrich, Untersuchungen *zum Untergang des Westgotenreichs (711–725)*, "Historisches Jahrbuch", Band 108, 1988, pp. 329–358.

[25] Roger Collins, *Hiszpania w czasach Wizygotów. 409–711*, PWN, Warszawa 2007, p. 98.

[26] *Continuatio Byzantia Arabica a. DCCXLI*, in: Theodorus Mommsen, MGH, Auct. Antiq. Tomus XI. Chronicorum minorum sec. IV, V, VI, VII, vol. II, Berlin 1894.

[27] Eduardo Lopez Pereira (red.), *Crónica mozárabe de 754. Edición crítica y traducción por E.L.P.*, Zaragoza 1980. It is believed that the work was actually written around 790, and its author was a Cordoban or Toledan cleric.

or their compilations. The contents of these two chronicles correlates with the historical continuum of the Byzantine influence in Spain. Both works correspond in terms of the text, sources and chronology to the Byzantine chronicle of world events by Theophanes the Confessor (c. 760–c. 817) and with *Chronologia brevis* by the Patriarch of Constantinople Nikephoros I (750–828). All these reports show a great deal of knowledge about events in the Byzantine Empire, the expansion of the Arabs and the situation in Spain, which simultaneously demonstrates that there must have been an intense flow of information between Spain and the Orient. It is worth noting that both chronicles of 741 and 754 write about the conquests of the Saracene Arab prophet Muhammad, but do not mention by name the appearance of a new religion, the *Qur'an*, *'Alī* nor the term of *hiğra* (but e.g. *year of the Arabs*). In turn, the Mozarabic chronicle of 754 describes, among other things, the Kharijites as a sect of Christian heretics[28]. Unfortunately, a serious shortcoming of these Latin chronicles remains the fact that they are also preserved only in later copies. And so, the chronicle of 754 is known from wide fragments of its copy dating to the 9th century.

Unfortunately, the current outline of the 8th-century Spanish historiography is primarily based on the late Arab chronicles, supplemented by information derived from the Latin chronicle of 754 (or its later compilations), but only within the scope not contradicting with the Arab report. Moreover, as pointed out by Johannes Thomas, the measure of reliability of Arab historiographic texts is often the degree of their compliance with one another. As a result, when encountering contradictory facts historians usually tend to believe one or another Arab chronicle without reaching out to independent sources. Besides, those historians who have their eyes fixed on the traditional Muslim historiography are particularly fond of these works which contain a greater variety of detailed descriptions. Thus, while citing the said Latin chronicle of 754 and Arab sources, many modern historians quote willingly e.g. the author of Spain's history Rodrigo Jiménez de Rada (1170–1247) whose work *Historia Arabum* comes only from the 13th century. In other words, all information contained in the Arab sources is being taken for historical facts except for some obvious legends, unfortunately regardless of the time span separating the sources from the events described[29]. And so the renowned modern Spanish historian Pedro Chalmeta portrays in his *Invasión y islamización. La sumisión de Hispania y la formación de al-Andalus*[30] the successful landing of Ṭāriq Ibn Ziyād on the Spanish coast

---

[28] The Kharijites appear in the Latin text as "*Arures*". Johannes Thomas, *Frühe*..., op. cit., p. 151. More on the revisionist hypothesis of Kharijites' Christian origin, also see: Volker Popp, *Biblische Strukturen*…, op. cit., pp. 35–92.

[29] For example, it is often stated as a historical fact (taken from Arab annals) that during the conquest of Spain in the early 8th century, the entire Christian population, if not killed, fled from the cities to the mountains. Such a retreat into the Asturian Pyrenees or to Galicia of all the residents of Cordoba, Granada, Seville and Merida seems historically very improbable.

[30] Published by Mapfre in Madrid in 1994.

citing without reservation a detailed story by Al-Haza'inī although it is known only from a compilation of his work by Al-Maqqarī, so – from the early 17th century[31].

In the opinion of the revisionists from *Inârah*, when taking into account the requirements of historical criticism, the character of Ṭāriq Ibn Ziyād must be rejected as not being confirmed by any independent historical evidence, such as inscriptions, coins, etc. The geographical name of the Gibraltar peninsula cannot be taken as a proof for the existence of the Berber commander. It much more brings to mind the common tendency of Arab literature to explain proper names of localities by proper names of important personalities. Numerous examples for this were put forward by the German scholar of Islamic studies Albrecht Noth (1937–1999) arguing that localities were receiving names after fictional characters who supposedly visited them[32]. What is more, Ṭāriq is in Arabic language an anthroponomical name meaning *someone following a path*. Another example of explaining names of localities by personal names is the story of the expedition of Ṭarīf to the Spanish coast in 710, from which shall be derived the name of the Spanish port of Tarifa. With high probability however, this town has already had this name before that period[33]. It is possible that also many other proper names of Spanish localities, that are commonly explained as deriving from Arabic, may actually come from Latin, Greek or Punic names[34].

According to Fred Donner and Albrecht Noth, doubts about the early Arab annals arise not only because of the proper names of people or localities[35]. Disputable is primarily the very informational value of these works. The authors' manner is either to ignore the chronology of events in whole, or to attach little importance to it. Datings according to the hijra calendar, as well as many other textual elements, are later interpolations. Finally, the reports themselves are filled with a multitude of literary topoi. An example of such a topos is the central planning for the conquest of non-Muslim countries by the caliphate's administration[36], as well as the conquest of Cordoba with the help of a shepherd who was to show the invading army a gap in the city walls. A similar

---

[31] Similarly, Chalmeta describes as historical facts, inter alia, the following: the nowhere confirmed historiographically first expedition of Ṭarīf Ibn Malik to Tarifa, running by Ṭarīf an independent trade activity, naming the city by his name, the lack of resistance of the Visigoths and only one decisive battle at the river Rio Barbate or Rio Guadalate, as well as stories of shepherds showing invaders the way to Cordoba by a breach in the city walls. Even the finding of the richly decorated king Solomon's table doesn't seem for the historian Pedro Chalmeta completely unreliable. The only information he regards as unreliable is the story of the closed chamber in the royal castle and the prophetic prediction about the upcoming invasion of the Arabs. Ibidem, pp. 118–157.

[32] Albrecht Noth, *Quellenkritische Studien zu Themen, Formen und Tendenzen frühislamischer Geschichtsüberlieferung*. Bonn 1973, p. 169.

[33] More on this topic, see also: Joaquín Vallvé, *Nuevas ideas sobre la conquista árabe de Espaňa. Toponimía y onomástic*a, "Al-Qantara". Revista de estudios árabes, vol. 10, Madrid 1989, pp. 51–150.

[34] For example, in the theory of Johannes Thomas, the name of Gibraltar may be derived from juxtaposing the Aramaic (Punic?) *.gibr*. (great, high) with the its Latin synonym *.altus*.. Such types of joins are not unusual (for example, the Persian *.kamarband* (belt) is the juxtaposition of two synonyms meaning *belt*: the Aramaic *kamar* and the Middle Persian *band*). Johannes Thomas, *Araboislamische*…, op. cit., p. 160.

[35] Fred Donner, *The Early Islamic Conquest*, Pricenton 1981; Albrecht Noth, *Futuh History and Futuh Historiography*: the Muslim Conquest of Damascus, "Al-Qantara", 10 (1989), pp. 453–462.

[36] Albrecht Noth, *Quellenkritische*…, op. cit., pp. 163–164.

topos may be encountered in the literary descriptions of seizing the cities of Damascus, Caesarea (Palestine), Alexandria, the stronghold of Babilon-Fustat in Egypt or Tustar in the Persian Khuzestan.

As demonstrated by prof. Thomas from the University of Paderborn, there exist no Arabic inscriptions from Spain dating to the 8th century, and only six of them come from the 9th century – the inscription on the foundation act of a mosque in Seville by ‘Abd ar-Raḥmān II (792–852), two inscriptions on the foundation of the fortress in Merida by the same ruler, the inscription on the restoration of a mosque in Cordoba also by ‘Abd ar-Raḥmān II, the inscription on the tombstone of a Cordoban female magnate released by Al-Ḥakam, and the inscription on the anonymous grave in Torre del Campo in the province of Jaen[37]. At the same time, religious formulas appear thereby only in the inscriptions at the fort in Merida and the Mezquita in Cordoba, of which only one dating to the end of the 9th century contains the expression *Muḥammad-un Rasūl-u Allāh*, which is not anything unusual for this period of Islamic history. As Solange Ory writes, “in the *šahāda* formulas the reference to the Prophet is not systematic. This reference is also absent in the text engraved on the right side of the entrance gate to the Umayyad mosque in Busra. As well as it is not present in most of funeral texts”[38]. Thus, if Andalusian inscriptions lack the *Muḥammad* motto, so they correspond to the traditions of the east-Umayyad inscriptions from the period of ‘Abd al-Malik’s reign. It follows from that also that the confession of faith in the prophet was not yet by then an integral part of the Arab faith.

Regardless of the correctness (or incorrectness) of the theses put forward by the members of the *Inârah* Institute, and in spite of their clearly revisionist overtones, they definitely possess one fundamental value. Namely, they revive the critical discussion on various aspects of the historiography of early Arab Spain, including its essential methodological assumptions to which the science has not yet presented fully satisfactory explanations.

As Roger Collins writes, we should after all remember that till now, “the western expansion of Islam has been relatively little studied and understood, and that current interpretations depend heavily upon late and ideologically slanted sources that present an image of the processes of the conquest of North Africa that may have been justified by conditions and perspectives of the thirteenth century and later, but which have little to do with the realities of the second half of the seventh century and early eight[39].

---

[37] More on this see: Evariste Lévi-Provençal, *Inscriptions arabes d’Espagne avec 44 planches en phototypié,* Leiden 1931, as quoted by Johannes Thomas, *Frühe*..., op. cit., p. 178.

[38] Solange Ory, *Aspects religieux des texts épigraphiques du début de l’Islam*, “Revue du Monde Musulman et de la Méditerranée”, 58, 1990/4, p. 32; as quoted by: Johannes Thomas, *Frühe*..., op. cit., p. 178.

[39] Roger Collins, *Visigothic Spain, 409–711*, Wiley-Blackwell 2006, p. 117.

R O C Z N I K O R I E N T A L I S T Y C Z N Y, T. LXV, Z. 2, 2012, (s. 74–84)

NATALIA LASKOWSKA

Apostasy as a Tool to Suppress Dissent – Indonesian Perspective

Abstract

Accusation of apostasy in the Muslim majority countries has the potential of becoming a dangerous tool against the dissenting voices. When it is used by those with religious authority and appears in a form of a *fatwā* it is likely to be interpreted as a concession for persecution. In the legal processes following the incidents of religiously motivated violence it seems rare for the perpetrators to be punished. Instead the victims of religious violence are accused of inciting hatred. This article discusses two respective cases of apostasy *fatāwā* in Indonesia: the death *fatwā* on the leaders of the Liberal Islam Network, and a *fatwā* which rendered apostate the members of the Indonesian Aḥmadiyya religious movement.

Keywords: apostasy *fatwā*, Islam, Indonesia, Liberal Islam Network, Aḥmadiyya, heresy

Accusation of apostasy can be used by anyone – religious leaders, preachers, politicians, or ordinary citizens to target their opponents. The accusation often comes in a form of a *fatwā*. *Fatwā* is a non-binding resolution, an opinion of a religious scholar or a group of scholars, *'ulamā'*, which does not progress into a law. Yet, not surprisingly, to the followers of some *'ulamā'*, the human-made state law does not count when confronted with the laws of God. This text is devoted to Indonesia and two examples of such apostasy *fatāwā* are discussed respectively: the death *fatwā* on the Liberal Islam Network (Jaringan Islam Liberal) and a *fatwā* on Aḥmadiyya religious movement, both of which have directly inspired violence against the two groups mentioned.

The rise of the violent radical-conservative Islamic advocacy in Indonesia is a new phenomenon which emerged soon after the collapse of general Suharto regime in the late 1990s. Amidst the economic crisis and uncertain political conditions, the radical groups

took on a political momentum[1]. M. Syafi'e Anwar describes these groups as harbouring a strong disrespect for pluralism and considering this idea to be an offence against Islam as the only truth[2]. Different ideas or different interpretations are rendered "untruth" and are ascribed to "deviated people", "infidels" or "apostates". This is perhaps not striking as such mindset is present among members of all radical groups, regardless the religious ideology they subscribe to. What strikes however is that they do not take their notions from the vacuum but base them on the ideas which are aired by some of the otherwise respected Islamic scholars.

The *'ulamā'* are trusted by the communities for their knowledge and interpretation of religion. But sometimes it happens that their knowledge is insufficient to fulfil the roles which society provides them with. This becomes particularly visible when some of them come up with bold statements on who 'truly' believes in God and whose beliefs deny or deviate from the 'truth'. If such statements are given in a form of a *fatwā*, despite the lack of legal provisions to implement it, their influence is likely to trigger ordinary people "to take justice in their own hands". When the *'ulamā'* declare somebody apostate, heretic, deviationist, non-believer or blasphemer, emotions of the crowd are very high and can be easily manipulated. This often leads to intimidation, violence and even to destruction of life. Those who take part in mobs against persons condemned by the *'ulamā'* justify their actions as following the *fatwā*. The *'ulamā'* on the other hand claim no responsibility as the *fatāwā* they issue are legally non-binding.

Death *fatwā* and Liberal Islam Network

Death threats against intellectuals are not common in Indonesia, it was therefore shocking when in November 2002 one of the founders of the Liberal Islam Network (JIL, Jaringan Islam Liberal), Ulil Abshar Abdalla, was condemned to death by a group of conservative religious activists.

The incident was anticipated by a book of Hartono Ahmad Jaiz, *Bahaya Islam Liberal* (The Danger of Liberal Islam) which was published almost a year earlier. The book is somewhat chaotic and author's message is not too clear, but it carries a huge amount of hatred against several Indonesian thinkers, Ulil Abshar Abdalla included. It may be assumed that Hartono was then not the only person whose negative attitude towards the Liberal Islam Network was growing exponentially. The motto[3] of the book is a *ḥadīth*,

---

[1] M. Syafi'e Anwar, *Political Islam in Post-Soeharto Indonesia: The Contest Between «Radical-Conservative Islam» and «Progressive-Liberal Islam»*, in: Eric Tagliacozzo (ed.), *Southeast Asia and the Middle East: Islam, Movement, and the Longue Durée*, National University of Singapore Press. Singapore, 2009, p. 349.

[2] Ibidem, p. 365.

[3] "Pada akhir zaman akan muncul sekelompok orang yang berusia muda dan jelek budi pekertinya. Mereka berkata-kata dengan menggunakan firman Allah, padahal mereka telah keluar dari Islam seperti melesatnya anak panah dari busurnya. Iman mereka tidak melewati tenggorokannya. Di mana pun kalian menjumpai mereka, maka bunuhlah mereka. Karena sesungguhnya orang yang membunuh mereka akan mendapatkan pahala di Hari Kiamat." (Ahmad

narrated by ‘Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib, from the compilation of Imām Al-Buḫārī (d. 870). The *ḥadīth* orders to kill a group of young people, who would come when the end of the world is close and who would already be unbelievers, but would be using the words of the Qur’ān:

“In the last days of this world there will appear some young foolish people who will use (in their claim) the best speech of all people (the Qur’ān) and they will abandon Islam as an arrow going through the game. Their belief will not go beyond their throats (they will have practically no belief), so wherever you meet them, kill them, for he who kills them shall get a reward on the Day of Resurrection”[4].

Although Hartono does not say it explicitly, the allusion to the members of the Liberal Islam Network (JIL, Jaringan Islam Liberal) is rather clear[5]. Most of them were young, learned, well-versed in the Qur’ān, and by those who disagreed with them often labelled as non-believers.

JIL is a loose organisation established by a group of Muslim intellectuals associated with the Paramadina Foundation, IAIN Jakarta (Institut Agama Islam Negeri, State Institute of Islamic Religion) and the Utan Kayu Community (Komunitas Utan Kayu or Teater Utan Kayu). Quoting one of its founders, Luthfi Assyaukanie, it was created “to accommodate liberal Islamic trends that have been flourishing in the country for the last two decades”[6]. The movement was inspired by the one generation older Indonesian thinkers such as Nurcholish Madjid, Abdurrahman Wahid, Harun Nasution, Ahmad Syafi’i Maarif, Moeslim Abdurrahman and M. Dawam Rahardjo.

From the series of discussions, workshops, radio programmes and lectures facilitated by the Utan Kayu Community, books, magazine and newspaper publications which received wider media coverage thanks to the founder of Utan Kayu, Goenawan Mohamad, the movement expanded at home and abroad attracting intellectuals, journalists, researchers and activists from various universities, think-tanks and NGOs[7].

The challenge from the radical and conservative Islamic groups started to reach JIL particularly in the end of 2002 after the publication of an article by Ulil Abshar Abdalla in the *Kompas* daily. The article was titled “Menyegarkan Kembali Pemikiran Islam” (‘Reviving the Muslim Thought’). To the significant appreciation of some, and to the rage of other, Ulil stated several matters quite daringly. One of them, which later caused a more violent reaction from the conservative groups, was his view that what exists is human law, not God’s law. This ultimately meant that *šarī‘a* was a product of human history[8]:

Jaiz Hartono, *Bahaya Islam Liberal: Sekular dan Menyemakan Islam dengan Agama Lain*, Pustaka Al-Kautsar, Jakarta 2002, p. 7).

[4] *Ṣaḥīḥ al-Bukhārī: The Translation of the Meanings*. Translated by Muhammad Muhsin Khan, Dar-us-Salam Publications. Riyad, 1997, vol. 4, p. 808.

[5] Names mentioned in the book consist mostly of the JIL members or persons sympathising with them.

[6] Luthfi Assyaukanie, *Islam and the secular state in Indonesia*, ISEAS Publications, Singapore 2009, p. 201.

[7] More in Virginia Matheson Hooker, Amin Saikal (ed.), *Islamic perspectives on the new millennium*, Institute of Southeast Asian Studies, Singapore 2004, pp. 231–252.

[8] Luthfi Assyaukanie, *Islam and the secular state*…, p. 202.

"Religion is an advantage for the humankind. And since humankind is a continuously growing organism, both quantitatively and qualitatively, religion must grow up as well, accordingly with the needs of humans. What exists is the human law, not the law of God, for it is human that becomes the stakeholder of all deliberations concerning religion"[9].

For some circles it was not acceptable... Yet it in the first place it was clearly misunderstood. An example of such misunderstanding is the book of Hartono Ahmad Jaiz. In fact, it was published in January 2002, almost a year before Ulil Abshar Abdalla's article was printed. However, in 2001 JIL was already active, there is no doubt that Hartono, a former journalist, had access to the ideas of the JIL members, especially as they were freely distributed.

In the last paragraphs of his book, Hartono states that the liberal Islam offers views that are not in line with science, facts of life and history; that it does not use the arguments provided in the Qur'ān, *sunna* (the *aḥādīth*), and the consensus of religious scholars (*iǧmā'*); and that it is "far from the truth"[10]. He farther creates a non-direct link bringing him back to the *ḥadīth*-motto of the book which might be read as an implicit encouragement for violence. According to Hartono the members of JIL reject *šarī'a*, "the law of the Prophet". In order to answer what should be done with such individuals, Hartono comes up with a "lesson" in which he reminds an incident with 'Umar Ibn al-Ḫaṭṭāb, the companion of the Prophet Muḥammad and later the second Muslim caliph. 'Umar killed a man who came to him and requested his judgement, after the judgement given by Muḥammad did not satisfy him. A verse from the Qur'ān[11] was provided in order to justify the killing. Hartono quoted it and came to the conclusion that people who do not want to be judged accordingly with the law of the Prophet are non-believers, and it would be lawful to kill them[12].

Hartono's interpretation of the Qur'ān and other sources is undoubtedly a dangerous overstatement. Yet even more dangerous were the reactions which burst immediately after Ulil's article was published in "Kompas" on 18 November 2002. On 30 November 2002 a group of clerics affiliated with the Forum Ulama Umat Indonesia (FUUI, the Forum of Indonesian Religious Scholars) gathered at Al-Fajar mosque in Bandung, and issued a *fatwā* which contained a demand that the authorities dissolve JIL which "systematically and massively insults the God, the Prophet, the Muslim community and the *'ulamā'*". The article written by Ulil was given as an example of blasphemy. The FUUI farther stated that "according to the Islamic law, persons who insult and falsify the truth of religion can be punished with death". The chairman of FUUI, Athian Ali Muhammad, announced that

---

[9] "Agama adalah suatu kebaikan buat umat manusia; dan karena manusia adalah organisme yang terus berkembang, baik secara kuantitatif dan kualitatif, maka agama juga harus bisa mengembangkan diri sesuai kebutuhan manusia itu sendiri. Yang ada adalah hukum manusia, bukan hukum Tuhan, karena manusialah *stakeholder* yang berkepentingan dalam semua perbincangan soal agama ini." Ulil Abshar Abdalla, *Menyegarkan Kembali Pemikiran Islam*, "Kompas", 18 Nov 2002.

[10] Hartono Ahmad Jaiz, *Bahaya Islam Liberal*..., p. 86.

[11] Qur'ān, 4:65.

[12] Hartono Ahmad Jaiz, *Bahaya Islam Liberal*..., pp. 86–92.

the *fatwā* was not only for Ulil, but aimed to "dissolve the motive behind Liberal Islam Network which he leads"[13]. Almost immediately the FUUI received huge criticism for their *fatwā* – a very odd and disturbing act on the Indonesian intellectual scene which is otherwise open for discussion and free from threatening the lives of dissidents.

Asrori S. Karni, a senior journalist from the *Gatra* weekly, who wrote a critical and often quoted record of the matter, accounted that eventually the FUUI announced they did not issue a death *fatwā*, but only demanded a legal process. Indeed, the term *fatwa mati* ('death *fatwā*') was not mentioned, however Athian Ali Muhammad in his statement explained that FUUI attitude towards JIL was the same as towards pastor Suradi[14]. In February 2001 FUUI issued a *fatwā* against him which was explicitly a 'death *fatwā*'[15]. Nevertheless, in order to prove that the case was different, even though it was previously declared to be the same, Athian Ali Muhammad reported Ulil Abshar Abdalla to the police. Although the police did not follow with the case, the incident did not end there. Until now death threats and various acts of violence are being committed against the leaders of JIL. In March 2011 a bomb hidden in a book titled *They Must Be Killed Because of Their Sins Against Islam and Muslims*[16] was addressed to Ulil. The JIL staff being suspicious of the package have alarmed the police. The bomb explosion has left one policeman heavily wounded.

Aḥmadiyya

In the recent years the Indonesian branch of Aḥmadiyya, a Muslim minority group, has been a target of religion-based violence, which it is often justified by the assailants with reference to several decrees issued by the state institutions that administrate the religious affairs. The most influential among them is Majelis Ulama Indonesia (Indonesian Council of Religious Scholars) which openly declares Aḥmadiyya heretical and its followers to be apostates from Islam.

Aḥmadiyya is a religious movement that emerged in the small town of Qadīān in Punjab, India, in 1889. It was founded by Mīrzā Ghulām Aḥmad (1835–1908). There are two branches of the movement, the Jamā'ati Aḥmadiyya (Aḥmadiyya Muslim Community) also known as Aḥmadiyya Qadīān and Aḥmadiyya Anjuman Ishā'ti Islām (Aḥmadiyya Movement for the Propagation of Islam), known as Aḥmadiyya Lahore. When Mīrzā Ghulām Aḥmad passed away the community continued to exist under the leadership of Mawlawī Nūr ad-Dīn. When he died some of the movement's executive members seceded and formed a religious society in Lahore. Aḥmadiyya Lahore has been particularly active in translating to numerous European and Asian languages the Qur'ān, the commentaries

[13] Hartono Ahmad Jaiz, Agus Hasan Bashori, *Bahaya JIL dan FLA*, Pustaka Al-Kautsar, Jakarta 2004, pp. 10–11.

[14] Pastor Suradi is an Indonesian missionary accused of blasphemy by the FUUI.

[15] Asrori S. Karni, *Senandung Liberasi Berirama Ancaman Mati*, "Gatra", 17 Nov 2003.

[16] Mereka Harus Dibunuh Karena Dosa-Dosa Mereka Terhadap Islam dan Kaum Muslim.

of it (*tafsīr*), the traditions of Muḥammad, and various other works on Islam. The famous leader of the movement was Muḥammad ‘Alī (1874–1951), a prolific author and famous Pakistani intellectual[17].

The majority of the group remained in Qadīān, and nowadays the membership of Aḥmadiyya Qadyān greatly outnumbers the Lahore movement. It should be noted that most often the references being made to Aḥmadiyya in general pertain to Aḥmadiyya Qadyān. The issue which attracts most of the attention towards the movement is the understanding of the finiteness of prophethood. This also very often serves as an excuse for persecution of Aḥmadiyya members by the followers of other Muslim groups.

The different understanding of the finiteness of prophethood is explained by Abdul Moqsith Ghazali, a renowned Muslim intellectual and lecturer at Paramadina University in Jakarta. Prophet Muḥammad was the ‘seal of the Prophets’ (*ḫātam an-nabiyyīn*) who received the final revelation (the Qur’ān) for all mankind and for all time. Aḥmadiyya affirms this. However, in their interpretation Prophet Muḥammad is the spiritual ‘seal’ of all prophets, in the sense that he had reached the peak of spirituality which had not and will not be achieved by anyone else. Yet Muḥammad is not seen as the physical ‘seal’. This means that there may come new prophets after him, but their spiritual qualities will always be weaker than that of Muḥammad. One of these lower-rank prophets was the founder of Aḥmadiyya himself, Mīrzā Ghulām Aḥmad. Such interpretation clearly differs from the *tafsīr*, the Qur’ānic exegesis, of the Sunni scholars for whom Prophet Muḥammad is the final prophet, the ‘seal’ to all kinds of prophethood. Nobody after him would ever receive a revelation. Therefore, it is not quite surprising that many of the Sunni *‘ulamā’* would declare Aḥmadiyya as deviant or heretical, and its followers as apostates[18]. The issue of prophethood is also one of the dividing points in the Aḥmadiyya movement itself. The Lahore community accepts Mīrzā Ghulām Aḥmad as *mujaddid* (reformer, renewer, renovator of Islam) not as prophet. According to the Islamic tradition in every century God would send a man to explain the matters of religion. Many of the prominent Muslim scholars throughout the ages would be referred to with this title.

In Indonesia both branches of the Aḥmadiyya movement are present. Jemaat Ahmadiyah Indonesia, the Indonesian branch of Aḥmadiyya Qadīān was established in December 1925. It was registered in March 1953 by the Ministry of Justice[19] (JA.5/23/13, 13 March 1953)[20]. Gerakan Ahmadiyah Indonesia (Indonesian Aḥmadiyya Movement, GAI), the Indonesian branch of Aḥmadiyya Lahore, was established in December 1928. In April 1930 it was registered as a legal body by the colonial government of the Dutch

---

[17] Wilfred Cantwell Smith, *Aḥmadiyya*, in: *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, Brill, Leiden 1986, vol. I.

[18] Abdul Moqsith Ghazali, “Apa dan Mengapa Ahmadiyah?”, paper for the Liberal Islam Network (Jaringan Islam Liberal) monthly discussion, Jakarta, 24 Feb 2011. Unpublished.

[19] *Kementerian Kehakiman*, presently Ministry of Justice and Human Rights, *Kementerian Hukum dan Hak Asasi Manusia*.

[20] Iskandar Zulkarnain, *Gerekan Ahmadiyah di Indonesia*, LkiS, Yogyakarta 2005, p. 293.

East Indies. After Indonesia became independent, GAI was registered by the Ministry of Religious Affairs in December 1963 (18/II, 27 December 1963)[21].

It is difficult to estimate the number of Aḥmadiyya followers worldwide. The organisation's statistics are not helpful here, sometimes it claims 80 million membership, sometimes even 200 million which does not seem realistic. In Indonesia, according to the Ministry of Religious Affairs the number of Aḥmadiyya followers would be between 50,000 to 80,000. According to Jemaat Ahmadiyah itself it would be half a million. The bases of Jemaat Aḥmadiyya are Sukabumi, Kuningan and Garut districts in West Java, and the North Sumatran city of Medan. The Aḥmadiyya Lahore (Gerakan Ahmadiyah Indonesia) is based in Yogyakarta with a small contingent in Jakarta[22]. The acts of violence towards the members of Aḥmadiyya are most often reported in West Java.

When in January 2007 the Indonesian National Human Rights Commission (Komisi Nasional Hak Asasi Manusia, KOMNAS HAM) released its report on the attacks against Aḥmadiyya, it appeared that the Muslim hostility was in high extent evoked by the legal opinions, *fatāwā*, issued by some Indonesian *'ulamā'*. Luthfi Assyaukanie notes that even though *fatwā* is a religious opinion produced by *'ulamā'* and it is commonly claimed that "*fatwā* is not binding", thus, having no legal enforcement, it is a mistake to assume that *fatwā* has no social and political implications. The example he gives is that of Ayatollah Khomeini's *fatwā* in early 1989 demanding Salman Rushdie's execution for his book *Satanic Verses*. The publication of *fatwā* lead to international violence with attacks on the bookstores, publishers and persons who were associated with translating the book. Luthfi Assyaukanie observes that while no Muslim is obliged to follow it "after all, *fatwā* is not an ordinary statement from a layperson but a ruling by learned and respected scholars with religious authority"[23].

In Indonesia the main institution to issue *fatāwā* is Majelis Ulama Indonesia (Indonesian Council of Religious Scholars, MUI). It was established in 1975 with the endorsement of former president, general Suharto, as an advisory board to the government. MUI comprises Islamic scholars (*'ulamā'*) from various Muslim organisations, with Nahdlatul Ulama and Muhammadiyah members being in majority.

The first *fatwā* which MUI issued against Aḥmadiyya was a result of the organisation's second national conference on 26 May–1 June 1980 in Jakarta. Aḥmadiyya Qadīān was then rendered as a group not belonging to Islam, deviate and leading others astray (*di luar Islam, sesat dan menyesatkan*)[24].

Another anti-Aḥmadiyya document was produced during the MUI national working meeting on 4–7 March 1984. There MUI issued a recommendation to the government

---

[21] Nanang R.I. Iskandar, *Fatwa MUI & Gerakan Ahmadiyah Indonesia*, Darul Kutubil Islamiyah, Jakarta 2005, p. 62.

[22] Bernhard Platzdasch, *Religious Freedom in Indonesia, The Case of the Ahmadiyah*, *ISEAS Working Paper: Politics & Security Series*, 2 (2011) 1-33, p. 4.

[23] Luthfi Assyaukanie, *Fatwa and Violence in Indonesia*, 5 Feb 2007, http://www.assyaukanie.com/ (accessed on 27 Nov 2011).

[24] Majelis Ulama Indonesia, *Himpunan Fatwa MUI. Sejak 1975*, Penerbit Erlangga, Jakarta 2011, pp. 40–42.

concerning the Aḥmadiyya community (this time it was Aḥmadiyya in general, no reference was made to Qadīān or Lahore). According to the document, the organisation was causing social unrest (their doctrines contrasting the Islamic doctrines); disintegration (especially in devotional matters); and a threat to the social stability and the national security. To solve this problem MUI recommended that all *'ulamā'* and preachers throughout Indonesia should be highlighting and explaining the heretical nature of the doctrines of this non-Islamic group. It was suggested that the members of Aḥmadiyya should return to the Islamic teachings, and that all members of the Muslim community should be alert to avoid being influenced by the heretical doctrines[25].

The 1980 *fatwā* remained without legal sanction and the Indonesian government did not make an attempt to enforce it. Earlier in 1980, before the *fatwā* was issued, the authorities came with a charter allowing the Aḥmadiyya members to build their mosques and to teach their doctrines to the group members[26]. While general Suharto was in power the matters of protecting or enforcing the Islamic orthodoxy were proficiently obscured in the service to the government. Any possible violent reactions in the society that could be potentially triggered by the *fatwā*, in the 1980s would be easily suppressed by the security apparatus.

Luthfi Assyaukanie mentions a thought-provoking tendency in the change of relations between the MUI and the state since the fall of Suharto regime: there has always been a reciprocal interest between religion and politics, between the *'ulamā'* and the rulers. The *'ulamā'* would request the caliphs to enact and enforce their *fatāwā*, while the caliphs would ask the *'ulamā'* to issue specific *fatāwā* to justify their policies. Such collaboration took place under the rule of general Suharto, yet with the downfall of his regime the position of MUI changed. According to Assyaukanie, something counter to the Suharto era is now taking place. The MUI is officially a state-controlled, governmental advisory institution, yet in the recent years it has apparently been acting as if its role was not advising but controlling the state. With the government (Assyaukanie directly refers to the cabinet of the president Susilo Bambang Yudhoyono) reluctant to review the role of MUI, it is more independent to appoint its leadership. Since the MUI comprises several Muslim organisations, the leaders are chosen by these organisations. If the radical *'ulamā'* are well established within the organisations, they may be chosen to lead the MUI, bypassing the checks and balances, as the governmental voice is not interfering at all[27].

The *fatwā* which since the last few years has been triggering violence against the followers of Aḥmadiyya was inspired by the ultra-conservative *'ulamā'* among the MUI members.

On 26–29 July 2005, during its seventh national conference, the MUI maintained its position on Aḥmadiyya (not specified if Qadīān or Lahore) and demanded that the

---

[25] Khoiruddin Nasution, *Fatwa Majelis Ulama Indonesia (MUI): On Ahmadiyah*, "Jurnal Millah (Jurnal Studi Agama)", 7/2 (2008).

[26] Gordon P. Means, *Political Islam in Southeast Asia*, Strategic Information and Research Development Centre. Petaling Jaya 2009, p. 101.

[27] Luthfi Assyaukanie, *Fatwa and Violence*….

government banned it. The 1980 *fatwā* was reaffirmed together with the explanation that a Muslim who had joined Aḥmadiyya would automatically become apostate. The persons who had joined the Aḥmadiyya were called to return immediately to the true Islam (in line with the Qur'ān and the traditions of the Prophet). MUI requested the government to ban the dissemination of Aḥmadiyya doctrines, to dissolve the organisation and to close all its offices in Indonesia[28].

Two months after the *fatwā* was issued the Aḥmadiyya community was violently attacked by thugs in Bogor and Cianjur. Both the MUI and the Minister of Religious Affairs, M. Maftuh Basyuni denied the allegations that violence was in any way spurred by the *fatwā*. However, most of the assaulters acknowledged that their action was driven by the MUI declaration that Aḥmadiyya is a deviant group[29].

The majority of the persons who commit violence following the MUI *fatwā* remain exempt from punishment. Such was the situation after the 2005 attacks on the members of Aḥmadiyya:

"[…] It is rare for someone who has committed an act of violence following a fatwa to be sanctioned through due process. What does happen is the contrary: members of groups that have been attacked were caught and sent to the police for interrogation. The charge is that they have 'annoyed' people with new beliefs. Instead of becoming a good agent, the government has taken sides and supported fatwas that clearly stimulate hatred and intolerance"[30].

This article written by Luthfi Assyaukanie in 2007 anticipated a series of grievous abuses against Aḥmadiyya a few years later. In 2010 there were at least 13 reported cases of violence where members of the organisation were abused, their property damaged or looted, their schools, mosques and places of prayer burnt and destroyed. Yet the events that outraged the Indonesian and the international public opinion began in early 2011. On 6 February in Cikeusik, Banten province in West Java, a mob attacked Aḥmadiyya meeting and bludgeoned to death 3 of its members, severely injuring other six. Soon a video showing the sickening attack and desecration of the victims' bodies was posted on the Internet. Dozens of police officers present at the scene were standing and watching the crowd of two thousand people slaughtering the Aḥmadis. No attempt to intervene was made at all. The district police announced that the Aḥmadiyya sect members who came from Jakarta triggered the fight. The local police chief said that two cars bringing in around 20 Aḥmadiyya members from Jakarta had refused to leave the village and provoked the locals[31].

Particularly appalling was the reaction of state and judiciary authorities. Persons proven guilty of murdering 3 members of Aḥmadiyya were sentenced to 5 months in prison. The light sentencing of the assailants spurred discussions on the quality of the Indonesian justice, yet it was the further court case which left the international public

[28] Khoiruddin Nasution, *Fatwa Majelis Ulama Indonesia…*

[29] Luthfi Assyaukanie, *Islam and the secular state…*, p. 174.

[30] Luthfi Assyaukanie, *Fatwa and Violence…*

[31] "The Jakarta Post", 6 Feb 2011.

opinion utterly shocked. The victim whose household was attacked by the mob, and who tried to defend his family and property, was sentenced to six months in prison for not obeying the police orders to leave his own house and for attacking the aggressors who broke into it[32].

In the aftermath of the Cikeusik tragedy several local governments passed new regulations which restricted or banned the activities of… Aḥmadiyya. The Governor of East Java issued the ban on 28 February, while the Governor of West Java on 3 March. A parliamentary commission met to discuss the matter. Eventually, the chairman of the commission stated that "in the light of the SKB there is no problem. This is a matter for the Minister of Home Affairs to revoke it [the ban] in case there is a violation [of SKB]"[33].

The SKB stands for *surat keputusan bersama*, 'joint decree' which was issued on 9 June 2008 by the Minister of Religious Affairs (M. Maftuh Basyuni), Minister of Home Affairs (Mardiyanto) and Attorney General (Hendarman Supandji). The decree limited Aḥmadiyya, by banning its activities, yet did not ban the organisation itself. It is vague, however, what is understood by "activities". The second point of the decree states that as long as Aḥmadiyya members (Jemaat Ahmadiyah Indonesia) claim they are Muslims, they are to stop the activities which deviate from the Islamic doctrine, that is, spreading the views that there was a prophet after Muḥammad[34]. Numerous local human rights NGOs raised concerns that SKB violated the Constitution and that it was not publicly binding. The document was widely perceived as a product of political bargaining by which the government addressed the demands to dissolve Aḥmadiyya. The SKB left much disappointment among the intellectual elites and the members of Aḥmadiyya, yet it also disappointed their hardest opponents. Some controversial figures from the Indonesian public, such as Abu Bakar Ba'asyir, the head of Majelis Mujahidin Indonesia (Mujahidin Council of Indonesia) demanded that the government disperse the Aḥmadiyya or declare it non-Muslim. He said that the matter with Aḥmadiyya is not of religious freedom but the freedom to destroy Islam. Rizieq Syihab, the leader of the notorious Front Pembela Islam (Front of Islam Defenders) appealed to the Muslims to urge the government to disband Aḥmadiyya[35].

Even though perceived by the hard-liners as not sufficient, the decree, as much as the *fatāwā* of Majelis Ulama Indonesia (Indonesian Council of Religious Scholars) became a form of justification for them to launch violent attacks against Aḥmadiyya followers.

---

[32] "Tempo", 15 Aug 2011.

[33] "Tempo", 7 Mar 2011.

[34] "Memberi peringatan dan memerintahkan kepada penganut, anggota, dan/atau anggota pengurus Jemaat Ahmadiyah Indonesia (JAI), sepanjang mengaku beragama Islam, untuk menghentikan penyebaran penafsiran dan kegiatan yang menyimpang dari pokok-pokok ajaran Agama Islam yaitu penyebaran faham yang mengakui adanya nabi dengan segala ajarannya setelah Nabi Muhammad SAW" (Surat Keputusan Bersama Menteri Agama, Jaksa Agung dan Menteri Dalam Negeri, 9 Jun 2008).

[35] The Wahid Institute, *Bahaya Laten SKB Ahmadiyah*, in: *Monthly Report on Religious Issues*, 11 (2008), pp. 1–4).

On 14 February 2008, in Banjar, West Java, Sobri Lubis, secretary general of Front Pembela Islam, urged for killing the Aḥmadiyya members[36]. During the public gathering he shouted that their blood can be shed, and that the fight against them is a matter of self-defence. The prospective killers were ensured that he personally, the FPI, the *'ulamā'*, and other Muslims will take joint responsibility for the killings:

"We call the Muslim community to fight with the Aḥmadiyya. Kill Aḥmadiyya, wherever they are, brothers. God is great! Kill, kill, kill! No problem to kill in self-defence [when they] destroy my faith. […] It is lawful to shed Aḥmadiyya blood. Later they will say we violate the human rights, to hell with human rights, bullshit human rights! […] Fight with Aḥmadiyya, kill Aḥmadiyya, knock out Aḥmadiyya from Indonesia. God is great! No worries later, we will take the responsibility. I personally, also the FPI, other Muslim groups, and the religious scholars will take the responsibility. If there is somebody who kills Aḥmadiyya, say we told you to. Say Sobri Lubis told you to, Habib Rizieq Syihab told you to, no problem. We are ready to take the responsibility in the hereafter for killing the Aḥmadiyya anywhere they are. God is great!"[37]

The occurrence of the words describing Aḥmadiyya as heretical or explicitly apostate in the *fatwā* of the MUI cannot account for abuse and murder. Neither does the decree issued by the three ministers. However, they do incite hatred and are used to justify violence. It is therefore most difficult to understand why these documents are being upheld while it has been proven that there is a relationship between declaring somebody murtadd or heretic, and the extrajudicial decisions to take that person's life.

In the first case discussed it was the intellectuals who became the target of violence. Whenever there emerges a goal to trigger violence against those who look differently at the religious tradition, it must raise a plain human opposition, regardless one agrees or not. It is ironic that the state does not intervene. And it is tragically ironic that those who undertake a discussion through the books are attacked with bombs hidden inside them.

---

[36] Bernhard Platzdasch, op. cit., p. 27.

[37] "Kami ajak umat Islam, ayo, mari untuk kita perangi Ahmadiyah, bunuh Ahmadiyah, di manapun mereka berada, saudara. Allahu akbar! Bunuh, bunuh, bunuh! Nggak apa-apa bunuh, dari mana ngebelanya, ini ngebela paksa. Ini merusak aqidah gue! […] Ahmadiyah, halal darah dia untuk ditumpahkan. Nanti dibilang melanggar HAM, persetan kitab HAM, tai kucing kitab HAM. […] jadi kalau Ahmadiyah tidak mau kembali ke Islam, kita perangi atau tidak? Perangi Ahmadiyah, bunuh Ahmadiyah, tersingkir Ahmadiyah dari Indonesia. Allahu Akbar! Nanti nggak apa-apa, kita bertanggung jawab, saudara. Saya pribadi, maupun FPI, maupun ummat Islam yang lain, para alim, ulama, bertanggung jawab. Kalau ada yang bunuh Ahmadiyah, bilang disuruh sama kami, saudara. Bilang disuruh oleh ustad Sobri Lubis, disuruh oleh Habib Rizieq Syihab, nggak masalah. Kami siap tanggung jawab untuk dunia akhiratnya, untuk bunuh Ahmadiyah di manapun mereka berada. Allahu akbar!".

R O C Z N I K O R I E N T A L I S T Y C Z N Y, T. LXV, Z. 2, 2012, (s. 85–118)

GÁBOR TAKACS

Agaw Lexicon and Its Cushitic and Afro-Asiatic Background[1]

Abstract

The long awaited *Comparative Dictionary of the Agaw Languages* published most recently by David Appleyard (2006) presents a precious etymological treatment not only for specialists of Agaw and Cushitic, but also from the standpoint of our current research on comparative Afro-Asiatic lexicon. The present paper is to examine Appleyard's material and suggestions from these aspects for possible addenda and corrigenda.

Keywords: Agaw language, Cushitic languages, Africa, Asia

Introduction

The Agaw (or Central Cushitic) languages and peoples, on which the earliest reference dates back to the first centuries AD[2], are scattered today in four main blocs: (1) Bilin in the area of the town Kärän in Eritrea, (2) in Ethiopia: Ḫaməṭ ~ Ḫəməṭ people (sg. Ḫamra ~ Ḫəmra) in the area of northern Wag, (3) Kemant of Kärkär and č̣əlga (north of Lake Tana), the Falasha or Betä Isra'el, (4) Awi (sg. Awiya) of Agäwmədər in Gojjam and the Kunfäl of the lowlands to the west of Lake Tana. Hamtanga and Awngi in Ethiopia and Bilin in Eritrea have regional language status.

---

[1] The ideas of this paper were originally presented at the 5th International Conference on Cushitic and Omotic Languages (Paris, 16–18 April 2008), but the text is not going to be published in its proceedings (which are still just forthcoming in early 2012).

[2] The name of the people is attested in the Greek Adulis inscription (Monumentum Adulitanum, 2nd half of 3rd cent. AD, lost, copied by Cosmas Indicopleustes in the early 6th cent.) as ʾΑθαγαους < *ʔad-ʔagäw, which is also mentioned in the Geez inscription of ʿEzana (4th cent. AD) as Atagäw.

Appleyard distinguishes basically four principal languages (with dials. or vars.):

(1) Bilin (dialects: Tä'aḵʷər and Tärḳeḵʷər or Senhit), with 90–120 thousand speakers in Senhit province of Eritrea focusing on the towns Kärän and Halhal, both Christians and Muslims.

(2) Hamtanga, identical with Reinisch's Hamir (Hamta of Conti Rossini 1904 is to be regarded its dialect), spoken by the Ḫaməṭ ~ Ḫəməṭ people in the northern part of the Wag region (in the former Wällo province) with a highly uncertain number of speakers[3].

(2-3) Kailinya (Kayləññа or the language of the Kayla formerly applied to the Betä Isra'el, recorded by Jacques Faïtlovitch somewhen in 1904–5 and 1908–9) with a position between the Hamtanga and Kemant clusters.

(3) Kemant (dialects: Qwara vs. Falasha of Flad 1866[4]), now with about 1,650 speakers (all bilingual Amharic speakers), although the 1998 Ethiopian census counted 172,327 people identifying themselves as ethnic Kemant (no longer speaking it).

(4) Awngi (dials.: Damot, Agawmidir), i.e., the language of the Awi(ya), in Agäwmədər and eastern Mätäkkäl districts of the once Gojjam province, with about 100 thousand speakers (Wedekind in 1995) = 279,326 (1998 census). A closely related language is Kunfäl with no more than 2 thousand speakers in the lowlands west of Lake Tana.

These major Agaw languages are as a rule accounted for by Appleyard when discussing the individual Agaw etymologies. The critical analysis offered below will take Appleyard's 2006 PAgaw reconstructions as a starting point of the discussion (without repeating the individual forms of the Agaw daughter languages) – unless either (1) the Agaw root is only known in isolated forms and no P(N)Agaw reconstruction can be attained or (2) the proto-form proposed by Appleyard is problematic.

Comments on the Agaw roots

• **Agaw *säg** "(upper) back" [Apl. 2006, 27], akin to LECu.: Oromo sag-ō "back of the head" and Dasenech sug-u "back" < PCu. *sVg- "back" [GT], cannot be related to Bed. sinkwa ~ sankwa ~ sunka ~ sinka "shoulder" as mentioned by Appleyard, since it represents (via *-mk- > -nk-) a fully distinct AA root, namely *č-k-m ~ *č-m-k "shoulder" [GT], cf. EDE III 594-5 s.v. Eg. mst.

• **Agaw *yäw** "back (of body), lower back" [Apl. 2006, 26-27] has possible AA cognates in NBrb.: Beni Snus ti-wa and Zemmur t-uyå ~ t-woyé "dos" [Blz. 1994 MS Bed., 2] ||| WCh.: Ron *wuy [met. < *yuw?] "Rücken" [GT]: Sha wuy, Kulere wûy (Ron: Jng. 1970, 387) || CCh.: Margi yì "back" [JI 1994 II 6]. Whether the isogloss of Eg. jw "der

[3] 5 thousand to at least 80 thousand, but possibly more than 100 thousand (Berhanu Hailu et al. in 1995, cited by Appleyard) = 93,889 monolinguals with a total of 143,369 mother tongue speakers (the 1998 Ethiopian census).

[4] Spoken just by a few elderly in Israel, formerly northwest of Lake Tana + Dembiya in the 19th cent., northern shore of Lake Tana.

Bucklige" (MK, Wb I 43, 11) = "hump-back" (FD 11) = "Buckliger" (GHWb 31) ||| Brb. *tu-Hi/a "bosse" [Ksm. 1999, 105, #224] = *ta-wuhi "camel's hump, back" [Apl.] can also belong here remains open. Appleyard (2006, 84) quotes this etymology of mine s.v. Agaw *yäw "hips". For a different etymology of the NBrb. parallels cf. Gouffé 1974, 367.

• **Bilin mäkʷa** "backside, anus" [Apl.] = måkʷā́, pl. måkṷk "Steiß, Podex" [Rn. 1887, 267] = məkkʷa, pl. məkkʷəkʷ "buttocks" [Lmb. 1988, 93, §115; LT 1997, 510] = məkkwa "buttock" [HL 1988, 50] is – beside LECu.: Afar makuḥ [affix -ḥ of body parts] "spine", Boni múkkə "buttocks", Yaaku muk "lower part of the body" mentioned by Appleyard (2006, 27) – cognate to Ar. makw-at- "cul, derrière" [BK II 1140] ||| Bed. mīkʷa (m) "femur, humerus, tibia (anat.)" [Rpr. 1928, 216]. From AA *muk- "1. neck, 2. back" [Blz.][5] = *m-kʷ "back parts" [GT]? Lit. for the AA etymology: Rn. 1895, 167 (Eg.-Bed.); Behnk 1928, 139, #32 (Eg.-Bed.); Zhl. 1932-33, 168 (Eg.-Bed.); Blažek 1987, 159 (Eg.-Bed.); 1994 MS Bed., 26; 2000, 185-6, §21; 2000 MS, 5, §21 (Bed.-Agaw-ECu.-Eg.).

• **Hamir ʗəqa** "bad" [Apl.]: Appleyard (2006, 27) was disposed to see in it a devoicing and palatalization from a hypothetic Agaw *dək[k]- and to identify it with Awngi dəkkí "bad", but Hamir ʗ- (vs. -q-) < Agaw *d- (vs. *-k-, resp.) would be very strange. Instead, cp. perhaps SCu. *ĉ$_1$akʷ- [*ĉ$_1$- reg. < AA *ĉ-/*ʗ-] "bad" [Ehr.]: Iraqw & Alagwa ĉakʷ "bad, sorry, ugly, nasty, evil", hence Iraqw ĉakʷ-e "badness", ĉakʷ-es-a "crime", ĉaku-s-mo "evil-doer", Burunge ĉakʷ-i "1. bad, etc., 2. rotten" | Qwadza ĉakʷ-a "bad", Asa dak-a "1. bad, etc., 2. rotten" (SCu.: Ehret 1980, 214-215, #8) < AA *ʗ-k "bad, abnormal" [GT].

• **NAgaw *fäɣ-** "to bake (bread)" [Apl.] was combined by Appleyard (2006, 28) with LECu.: Afar faḥ- "to boil, ferment". A further cognate appears in Eg. wfḥ "verbrennen" (LP, Wb I 306, 6), which, besides, V. Orel (1995, 103, #45; HSED #819) compared with the Ch. word for "fire" (dubious, cf. EDE II 424-5). Cf. also LECu.: Somali fōḥ-a "gum for burning" [Bell 1969, 167]?

• **Agaw *qaf** "bark of tree" [Apl. 2006, 28]: akin to SCu.: Iraqw qafi, qâafi, pl. qâafa "bark of a tree", qâf-ta "shell, rind of fruit" [Wtl. 1953] < PCu. *ḳaf- "bark" [GT] (Cu.: Dlg. 1973, 233). SCu.: Iraqw -f- points to PCu. *-f- (not *-p-) in this root. Cp. perhaps also NEg. hf "schälen, enthülsen (von Früchten)" (Med. XIX., late NK, Wb II 489, 13) with an irregular Eg. h- ~ Cu. *ḳ- (for which cf. the equally irregular, albeit fairly well attested, correspondence of Eg. ḥ- ~ AA *ḳ- in EDE I 302-4).

• **NAgaw *wan-/*wän-** "to be" [Apl.] can hardly have anything to do with the reflexes of Cu. *w-y-n "to be big" [GT] as suggested by Ehret (1987, 135; 1995, 467), whom D. Appleyard (2006, 29) quoted with right hesitation ("*With regard to the Agaw root being cognate, the semantics seem problematical*"). The Agaw root has – beside Eg. wnn (for the Agaw-Eg. equation cf. also Blz. 1992, 141) – no further AA cognates according to my

[5] Note that Blažek (1987, 159; 2000, 185-6, §21; 2000 MS, 5, §21) affiliated the underlying with remote (Nostratic) parallels like Drv. *mak(k)- "neck" [DED #4622], Ur. *muka "back" [Sammallahti], Alt.: Korean mok "neck, throat", and Pamir Iranian: Shugni & Wakhi māk, Sarikoli mok & Ishkashim mak "back of the neck, nape" [Morgenstierne].

etymological catalogue. Appleyard's alternative comparison with Awngi wena "pregnant animal" is semantically equally weak.[6]

• **Awngi əšʸ-** "to spend the day, be" [Apl. 2006, 29]: identical with LECu.: Saho & Afar as- "den Tag zubringen mit etwas" [Rn. 1890, 48] = "passer la journée" [Chn.], which Cohen (1947, #276) compared with the reflexes of AA *s-[ʔ] "day" [GT], cf. Eg. s.w "Monatstag" (MK, Wb IV 58, 2) > Cpt. (SALBF) ⲥⲟϫ- "Tag, Monatstag" (KHW 174) vs. s.w "Zeit" (MK, Wb IV 47-58) ||| (???) Brb. *a-ss "day" [Djk.] (GT: unless < *a-sf) ||| LECu.: Oromo sia "time" [Mkr. 1987, 415], Boni saʔ- "time" [Sasse 1979, 52 with further ECu. comparanda] ||| NOm.: Janjero aši "now" [Grb.] ||| WCh.: Sura šíi "Tag (24 Stunden)" [Jng. 1963, 83] (isolated in AS, cf. GT 2004, 345) || CCh.: PKotoko *cV "day" [Prh.]: Ngala & Logone see "day" [Grb.], Buduma či ~ če "Tag" [Lks. 1939, 94]. See also Chn. 1947, #276 (Eg.-Brb.-LECu.); Grb. 1963, 55, #22(Cu.-Brb.-Janjero); Djk. 1965, 42 (Brb.-CCh.); Prh. 1972, 58, #32.1 (Kotoko-Brb.-PCu.).

• **Bilin šäkʷäm** "beard" [Apl.] = šekúm ~ var. ç̌eḥúm "Kinn und -bart" [Rn.] = šäkʷäm "chin" [KH/Apl.]: affiliated – along with Hamta ç̌eḥem [Rn.] = ç̌əḥəm [Apl.] – by Reinisch (1887, 170) and Appleyard (2006, 29) with ES: Geez ṣəḥm "beard", Tigre ṣəḥəm ~ ç̌əḥəm "beard, jaw, chin", Tna. ç̌əḥmi "beard". Reinisch regarded Bilin šekúm as a *Nebenform*. Although the reflexes of the AA glottalized affricates *ç- and *ç̌- in Chadic have been so far little investigated, it seems that a prenasalized variety yields AS *ǯ- (cf. Stl. 1996, 41-42, 47-49), and thus the Ethiopian root might be alternatively affiliated with WCh.: AS *ǯaγam ~ *ǯa$_3$γa$_3$m > *ǯəγam (?) "1. chin, 2. beard (?)" [GT 2004, 432] || ECh.: Mokilko zúkùmó ~ zúkìmó "1. Kinn, 2. Bart (menton, barbe)" vs. sùkùmó "mâchoire" [Jng. 1990, 202, 178], whose former comparison with Sem. *ḏi/aḳan- "beard" [SED] (HSED #2650; Stl. 1996, 49; SED I 59-60, #63) is dubious because of the anomalous C$_3$.

• **Bilin šəḫar** "beauty", šəḫar-d "to beautify", šəḫar-t "to be beautiful", šəḫar-əḫʷ "beautiful" [Apl. 2006, 30] = šaγar ~ (häufiger) šeγar "schön sein", šeγa̋r "Schönheit" [Rn. 1887, 318]: no cognates were suggested by either authors. Cp. Sqt. škér "être beau"[7] [Lsl. 1938, 416] = fəréhəm di škérœh "the nice girl" [kind p.c. by M.-C. Simeone-Senelle, Paris, April 2008]. With regard to the very frequent OK interchange of Eg. ḫ- ~ š-, one is tempted to identify this root with Eg. ḫkr (OK var. škr) "geschmückt sein" (PT, Wb III 401).

• **Agaw *ʔarär-** "bed, couch" [Apl. 1994 MS, 2] = *ʔər[ə]g- [Apl. 1991 MS, 2]: cognate with Eg. 3ṯ.t [reg. < *rk-t] "bed" (OK, Wb I 23, 11) = 3ṯ.(w)t "Bett, Bahre (auch aus Elfenbein)" (ÄWb I 22) ||| WCh.: WBade rákè-n "bed", Bade-Gashua lákài [Schuh: l- < *r-]

---

[6] For this latter root cf. rather Eg. wn.w "1. (Med.) vom Kind im Mutterleib, 2. (GR) Kind als Bez. des jungen Sonnengottes und des Königs" (Wb I 315, 10-12) ||| WCh.: Sha (pl.) wòon ~ wúnòn "Knabe, Kind" [Jng. 1970, 284] | NBauchi *wun- "girl, daughter" [Skn. 1977, 23] = *wuna "дочь, девочка" [Stl. 1987, 260] | SBauchi: Buli unni [Gowers] = wənʌʔ "child" [IL], Wangday wən "child" [IL] | Bade wùn-ən "Sohn" [Lks. 1968, 224], Ngizim wùn "son" [Schuh] || CCh.: Zime-Dari wenyón "child" [Str.] (Ch.: JI 1994 II 74-75). For an alternative Ar. etymology of Eg. wn.w see Belova 1987, 280; 1993, 52.

[7] Identified by Leslau with Ar. škl V: tašakkala "être beau (d'une belle forme)" (leaving the irregular C$_3$s unexplained).

"bed" (Bade: Schuh 1975, 112). The Agaw-Bade-Eg. etymology was first suggested in EDE I 52, 234. These AA cognates are leading to AA *r-k "bed" [GT], as verb "to lean on" (or sim.) [GT], cf. HECu. *irk-aḍ- (med.) "to lean upon", *irk-is- (caus.) "to support" [Hds. 1989, 414]. Note that Agaw *-g- is irregular, which does not agree with Eg. *-k, HECu. *-k-, and Bade -k-. Note that Osing (2001, 574) erroneously explained OK "bed" from 3t̲ [< *lkj] "to nurse" (PT, CT, FD 6; DCT 10) = 3tj (IIIae inf.) "1. aufziehen (Kind), hegen, 2. (fig.) sich kümmern um (Stadt)" (OK 2x, ÄWb I 21), which, besides, represents a root with *l- (not *r-)[8]. Note that Satzinger (1999, 381) most recently suggested for OK 3t̲.t an unconvincing external (AA) etymology[9].

• **Agaw *ŋac** "bone" [Apl.]: Appleyard convincingly rejects its usual derivation from AA *ḳas- "bone" [GT] as well as its comparison with HECu.-Om. *miḳ-/*meḳ- "bone" [Lmb.], which are phonologically untenable. Instead, he prefers an equally dubious equation with a certain ECu. *moǰ- "bone" [Arvanites] based on Somali maǯin "limb" and Yaaku moǰ-o "bone". But this comparison is false: (1) the Somali word derives from ECu. *magin- "foot" [Sasse 1979, 54], while (2) Yaaku moǰ- < ECu. *mVḳ- (although Sasse 1979, 54 has ECu. *ḳ > Yaaku q ~ ǯ). Perhaps Agaw *ŋac has to be compared with WCh.: SBauchi *nʸVs- ~ *yVŋs- "bone" [GT] > Mbaaru yìŋšì [Smz.], Guruntum yengši [Gowers] = yàŋ/ṇšì [Smz.] = yiŋši [Jaggar], Geji isi [Gowers] = íθí [IL] = ʔi:siì [Smz.], Tule nyèsə [Smz.], Wangday yɛ̄s [IL] = yes [Smz.], Chari ŋîs [Smz.] (SBauchi: Smz. 1978, 21, #7; JI 1994 II 36).

• **Agaw *ŋar-** "brain" [GT]: Kemant ŋār-a ~ nār-ā "cerveau" [CR 1912, 238-9] = nara "brain" [Apl.], Qwara nāl-ā "Gehirn" [Flad apud Rn. 1885, 105], Hamta nil-á̰ "cervello" [CR 1905, 224] | Awngi (and Damot) ŋar-ī "tête" [CR 1912, 238] = ŋarí "head" [Apl. 2006] vs. Awngi nalí "brain" [Htz. 1978, 136; Apl. 1994 MS, 14], perhaps Kunfel ŋkʰuri "head" [Apl.]: Appleyard (2006, 36) reconstructs PAgaw *ŋat-a "head" (with irregular Kemant and Awngi reflexes) as a match of Bed. mat "crown of the head" and ECu. *maṯ- "head", whereby he regarded the Hamta and Awngi reflexes with -l- as either loans from or influences by ES: Geez nālā "brain, skull" [Lsl. 1987, 398], Tigre nāla "cervello" [CR 1905, 224] = Amh. & Tigre nālā "cerveau" [CR 1912, 238] = Tigre & Tna. & Amh. nala "brain, skull" [Lsl.]. On the other hand, Appleyard even surmised a reverse way of borrowing from Agaw into ES, whose -l- words "*may have influenced in turn some of the Agaw originals*", which is little convincing, since then how to explain the -l- in ES? Although I am unable to give a definite answer either, I find a further groups of parallels of high interest that are also to be accounted for. First, the Agaw root (hardly

---

[8] Cf. Ar. lakiʔa "2. se livrer entièrement à qqch.", lky: laka "1. se livrer avec assiduité à qqch., ou être adonné à qqch. (av. b- de la chose), 2. s'attacher à qqn. et le suivre partout (av. b- de la pers.)" [BK II 1020, 1022] = lakiya "an j-m hängen, zu j-m halten" [WKAS II 1267]. Cf. perhaps also Ar. lakka "jmdn. (mit Fleisch, Muskeln) beschlagen, ausstatten, reichlich versehen" [WKAS II 1240] with special regard to the special sense of OK 3tj "hegen, *säugen" (PT 371: synonym of snq "to suckle", ÄWb I 21) = "to nourish" (Ember 1930, #22.a.8).

[9] He equated Eg. 3t̲.t with AA *dVk (sic!) "Stufe, Sitz" [SISAJa II #129], which is for me unacceptable for phonological reasons.

with *-t-, but rather with *-r-) might be identified with LECu.: Oromo ňār-ō "marrow" [Gragg 1982, 301], which, besides, Ehret (1991, 264, #229) erroneously affiliated with Oromo ňār-ō "eyebrow" < ECu. *ŋār- (sic) "forehead", which represents a distinct AA root, namely *n-y-r ~ *n-ḥ-r "eyebrow" [GT] (attested in Eg., SBrb., Oromo, and Mokilko, published by Takács 2005, 21, #1.3, fn. 9). Secondly, the ES data with *-l- have parallels in NBrb. *a-n(V)li "brain" [GT][10] ||| ECu.: Tsamay nol-o "brain" [Sava 2005 MS, 249]. Cf. also Ongota nóolu "brain" [Flm. 1992, 191].

• **NAgaw *kär-/*käl-** "to break" [Apl. 2006, 37]: Appleyard's equation with ECu. *ḳa/e/ur- "to cut" is both phonologically (NAgaw *k- ≠ ECu. *ḳ-) and semantically unconvincing. More appropriate seems to compare the Agaw root with Eg. ḫrḫr "zerstören" (late NK, Wb III 330, 7) with the correspondence of Eg. ḫ- ~ "African" AA *k- pointing to an original voiceless postvelar (*q).

• **Agaw *ʔəng^{w}-/*ʔang^{w}-** "breast" [Apl. 2006, 37]: beside the Saho-Afar parallel mentioned by Appleyard, one can combine this root with further AA parallels like CCh.: PKotoko *eng^{w}- "Weiberbrüste" [GT]: Sao emgpie (sic) [-mgp- < *ngw-?] "seins" [GD], Makeri énkwe "female breast" [Barth], Gulfei emgwe "seins" [GD], Kuseri embwi [-mbw- < *-ngw-] "seins" [GD] (Kotoko: Sölken 1967, 260).

• **NAgaw *məγ^{w}-/*mäγ^{w}-t-** "to carry" [Apl. 2006, 41] = *məq^{w}-/*mäq^{w}-t- "to carry on the back" [Apl. 1989 & 2005] = *mVγ^{w}-T- "to carry (on the shoulders)" [Apl. 1991] (Agaw: Apl. 1989 MS, 16; 1991 MS, 3; 2005 MS, 21) is not isolated in AA, cf. AA *m-Q (vars. *m-q̣ ~ *m-ɢ?) "to carry" [GT] > LECu.: perhaps Rendille meḥ, pl. meḥáḥ [irreg. -ḥ] "load" [Heine 1976, 218] | Dullay: Tsamay mēg'- "to fetch water" & Dobase maŋg'g'- "to ladle up water" [Hyw. 1989, 6, 23] ||| WCh.: Ngamo mòkk-tî "to bring" [Alio 1988 MS] = mok- "to carry, take" [Ibr. 2003 MS, 7] || CCh.: Mulwi √m^{w}-g: mùgí "enlever (une femme), saisir à bras-le-corps" [Trn. 1978, 304] || ECh.: Kera móké "etwas Schweres hochheben" [Ebert 1976, 82] | Bidiya mòg "aider qn. à porter un lourd fardeau" [AJ 1989, 99].

• **NAgaw *näw** "calf (animal)" [Apl. 2006, 40-41]: presumably akin to ECu.: Elmolo nű̆-te (f) "kid, lamb" [Heine 1980, 208] || SCu.: Alagwa nū "male child, son" [KM], Burunge naw "baby boy" [Ehret 1980, 153, #6] = naw "male infant" [KM] (WRift: KM 2004, 216 with different etymology) ||| Eg. nw.w "Kind: 1. Säugling, 2. Jüngling" (NK, Wb II 215, 20-23) = "Junge" (JW 1996, 522) < AA *n-w "child" [GT]. Cp. also a root var. with *-y attested in ES: Endegeny nayä [unless -y- < *-ry-] "the young of a horse or donkey or mule" [Lsl. 1979 III, 466] ||| Eg. nj "être en enfance, rajeunir" (CT, AL 78.1976) = "*in der Kindheit sein, verjüngen" (GHWb 391) = "jung sein" (HAM 839) ||| ECh.: Mokilko ʔînnyí (pl.) "Junge, Kind" [Lks. 1977, 221] < AA *n-y "young" [GT].

---

[10] Attested in Shilh a-nella ~ a-lleni "cerveau" [Jordan 1934, 28, 37] | Tamazight a-nuli, pl. a-nuli-t-n ~ a-lli-wn "cerveau, cervelle" [Tf. 1991, 490], Ait Ndhir a-nli "cerveau, cervelle" [LR], Izdeg a-nuli, pl. i-nuli-t-en ~ i-nula "cervelle" [Mrc. 1937, 46], Zayan & Sgugu ạ-nŭ̱li "cervelle" [Lbg. 1924, 577] = Zayan a-nλi "cerveau, cervelle" [LR] | Iznasen a-lli [assim. < *a-nli] "cerveau, cervelle" [LR], Temsaman a-ǯi [< *a-lli < *a-nli] "cerveau, cervelle" [LR] (NBrb.: LR 2002, 332).

• **NAgaw *gʷaɣ-/*gaɣ-** “cave” [Apl. 2006, 42]: to be identified with ECu.: Dullay perhaps *ḫoḫ- “hole” [GT]: Dobase ḫoḫr-o & Gollango hóhn-o “Loch” (Dullay: AMS 1980, 192) ‖ SCu.: WRift *ḫoḫ- > *ḫoḫōŋʷ “hollow form”, pl. *ḫoḫēri “hollow forms” [KM 2004, 323] ||| Sem. *ḫawḫ- “hollow” [TG]: Hbr. ḥăwāḥīm ~ ḥoḥīm (pl.) [< *ḥawḥ-] “hole, crevice” [KB 296] = “das Felsspalten” [GB 217] = “hollows, recesses” [Lsl.] ‖ Ar. ḫawḫ-at- “aperture in a wall, small doorway between houses” [Lsl.] ‖ Geez ḫoḫət “door(way)” [Lsl. 1987, 260] = ḫōḫt “hole in the wall” [KB] ||| WCh.: Angas-Sura *ḳuk ~ *ḳok “(i.a.) be empty” [GT 2004, 207]: cf. esp. Angas kok “empty” [Ormsby 1914, 209]. The correspondence of Agaw *g- ~ Dullay & WRift *ḫ- has to be investigated. The non-reduplicated root appears in Sem. *ḫwy “empty” [GT] ||| WCh.: Montol ku (so, without -k) “empty” [Ftp. 1911, 216].

• **NAgaw *qac/*qäc** “cheek (side of the face)” [Apl. 2006, 42]: akin to SBrb.: Ahaggar ă-gʸ/ǵaẓ (-ġ- apud Fcd.) “joue” [Fcd. 1951-2, 491] ||| PCu. *gAc(c)- “лицо, лоб” [Dlg.] > Bed. gə́di “das Gesicht, Antlitz, Auge” vs. gʷad ~ gʷáda ~ gʷaʒ ~ gaʒ “Auge, Gesicht” [Rn. 1895, 89-90] = (also) gʷaḍ, pl. gʷaḍa “face, eye” [Dlg.] ‖ ECu. *gaḍ- “jaw” [Apl., KM] ‖ SCu.: WRift *gicē “forehead” [KM 2004, 117] ||| ECh. *gaḍ- “cheek” [GT]: Kabalai kwaʒí [Cpr.] | Somray gàʒé [Jng.] | WDangla gàḍùmò [Fédry] [GT: affix *-um of anatomic terms?] | Birgit gàḍáyó [Jng.] (all forms mean “cheek”, ECh.: JI 1994 II, 69) < AA *g-ç/ç̣ “cheek” [GT] (lit. for the AA root: Chn. 1947, #197; Dlg. 1973, 297; HSED #866 vs. #914).

• **NAgaw *ləm-/*läm-** “to close, shut, cover” [Apl. 2006, 46, 49]: cognate with Eg. nmˁ “bekleiden: 1. ein Bett mit Leinen beziehen, 2. Mauern mit feinem Stein bekleiden” (late NK, Wb II 266, 11-13) = “1. to cover a bed with sheets, 2. line with stone” (Badawy 1956-7, 71) = “to cover, set out, lay down walls” (DLE II 19) < (?) nmˁ “to hide o’self” (DCT 227) ||| WCh.: Guruntum líŋ “to close, shut, cover (a pot)” [Haruna 1992 MS, 21] ‖ ECh.: Tumak lùŋ “clôturer” [Cpr. 1975, 81] | WDangla lámè “fermer les yeux à-demi” [Fédry 1971, 352]. Cf. also (W)Ch. *nVm- “to close” [Stl. 2005, 141, #541].[11]

• **Agaw *čäb-/*čib-** “to count” [Apl. 2006, 48]: cp. perhaps CCh.: Gisiga-Dogba tlof “zählen, lesen” [Lks. 1970, 137], Mofu -sləf- “compter, lire” [Brt. 1988, 234] = -ɬàf- “to count” [JI]. Note that the resemblence to CCh.: Margi číbá “to count, tell, confess” [Hfm./RK 1973, 108] is misleading, since Hoffmann (l.c.) explained it from the root čṷ́ “to speak”. Highly noteworthy are WCh. *bVs- “to count” [GT]: Bole-Tangale *mbasu [met. < *msabu?] “to count” [Schuh 1984, 215] | Boghom bıs “to count” [Smz.] ‖ CCh. *pVŝ- (secondary lateral) “to count” [GT]: Logone pʂə̀ [Lks.] = pàɬə́ [Bouny] | Musgu pʼɬʼ [Trn.] (Ch.: JI 1994 II 90-91), which I (EDE I 189) was disposed to combine with Eg. ḥsb “(be)rechnen” (PT, Wb III 166-7) = “to count, reckon” (FD 178) ||| Sem. *ḫšb “to count” [Lsl. 1987, 244-245].

---

[11] Attested a.o. in WCh.: Bole-Tangale *numV “to close” [GT] > Tangale nṵmẹ “to lock, close against s.o., block up, bar” [Jng. 1991, 125], Pero núm(m)ò “to shut”, númmò “to close” [Frj. 1985, 44], Dera númè “to shut, close” [Kidda 1991 MS, 13].

• **Agaw *kat-** “to cross” [Apl.]: Appleyard’s (2006, 49) traditional segmentation of *-t- in it as a pass.-refl. extension (added to a stem **ka-) and its equation with ECu. *kaʿ- “to get up, rise” seems very unlikely (cf. rather SCu. *kaʿ- and Eg. ḫʿj “to rise”). In this case, *-t- was perhaps part of the root, cf. Eg. ḫt (Präposition) “1. durch ein Land hin; 2. durch die Glieder” (OK, Wb III 343).

• **Agaw *wāɣ/ʿ-** “to cry, shout” [GT]: Appleyard (2006, 50) compared this stem only with ECu. *waʿ- “to shout, call, invite” [Sasse 1979, 42], but cp. also Ar. waʿwaʿa “hurler (se dit d’un chien ou d’un loup)”, waʿwāʿ- “1. bruit, vacarme que fait une troup d’hommes, 2. hurlement (du loup, du chien, du chacal), 3. bavard, loquace”, cf. wʿy: waʿā “se rappeler qqch.” [BK II 1570] ‖ ES: Geez wawwəʿa “to clamor, raise a shout, shout loudly, cry aloud, howl, roar, wail” [Lsl. 1987, 623] ‖‖ Eg. wʿ3 [if < *wʿʔ] “to curse” (MK, FD 57) ‖‖ PCu. *wə̆ʿ- “to yell” [Ehret] > SCu. *wāʿ- “to curse, revile” [Ehret 1980, 313] ‖‖ Ch. *wa “to call” [Nwm. 1977, 23]. For the AA etymology see also Mlt. 1984, 157 (Cu.-Sem.-Eg.); Ehret 1987, #585 (Bed.-ECu.-SCu.).

• **Agaw *ʔəc-** “to curse” [Apl.]: Appleyard’s (2006, 51) suggestion to combine it with ECu. *ḥiḍ- “to tie, bind” is very weak in terms of both phonology and semantics. Instead, it has to be equated – especially in the light of the semantic disperison seen in the preceding etymological item – with Eg. ʿš “rufen” (MK, Wb I 227, 4) = “to summon” (FD 48) ‖‖ WCh.: Bole ʔeeš- “rufen” [Lks. 1971, 133] | Boghom yi:s “rufen” [Smz.] (WCh.: JI 1993, 140; 1994 II, 58) < AA *ʿ-Ŝ “to shout” [GT]. The Eg.-WCh. parallel was first suggested in OS 1992, 193; Orel 1995, 100, #8. Note that Agaw *əzz- “to call” [Ehr. 1987, 117, #491] may ultimately also be a derivative of the same AA root (via *Wortspaltung* resulting in Agaw reflexes with *-c- vs. *-z-?).

• **Agaw *käb-/*kab-** “to cut” [Apl.]: Appleyard (2006, 51) correctly equated it with SCu. *ḫab- “to split firewood” [Ehret 1980, 304], which points to PCu. *ḫ- and an AA voiceless postvelar. This is corroborated also by Eg. ḫb “1. (late NK) hinrichten (als Strafe), 2. (GR) (die Feinde, die Bösen) vernichten, töten, 3. (GR) (Schenkel) abschneiden” (Wb III 252), ḫbj.t “Gemetzel (im Kampf)” (XVIII., Wb III 252, 15) vs. ḫbb “Gemetzel” (GR, Wb III 253, 17).

• **Agaw *təngʷər/*dənkʷVr** “deaf” [Apl.]: as rightly pointed out by Appleyard (2006, 53), this is related (presumably as the source of borrowing of it) to ES *√dnḵʷr (which has, acc. to Apl., “*no secure Semitic etymology*”), in which, eventually, the 4th root consonant may have been an extension, cf. Geez danqawa and Harari dōnqa “to be deaf, stupid”, which rules out any etymological connection to Agaw *dəɣʷar- “donkey” suggested by Appleyard. This is confirmed also by Eg. *dlg: (MK) dng ~ d3g ~ dg, (late NK) dnrg “eine schlechte Eigenschaft des Ohrs” (Wb V 470) = “to be deaf” (DLE IV 136) = “*taub” (GHWb 982).

• **Agaw *kət-** “to die” [Apl.]: aside from the NOm.: Kefoid cognates quoted by Dolgopol’skij (1973, 245) and Appleyard (2006, 54), cp. also SBrb.: Ahaggar ketiy-et “1. s’en aller (le suj. étant une personne ou un animal qui partent pour franchir une longue distance), 2. fig.: s’en aller (de la vie), mourir” [Fcd. 1951-2, 935] = kətiy-ət “to die” [Mlt.] (Brb.-NOm.: Mlt. 1991, 247; 1991, 255, #17.3) ‖‖ CCh.:

(?) Hitkala kəḍ- “zu Ende gehen” [Lks. 1964, 107]. Any connection to AA *k-t “old” [GT][12]?

• **NAgaw *gʷäz-** “to till the earth, plough” and **SAgaw *gəz-** “to dig” [Apl.]: aside from the HECu. and Om. cognates (with voiced *g- and voiceless *-s-) listed or mentioned by Appleyard (2006, 54), we have a firm external parallels with -z < AA *-ʒ, namely Sem.: presumably Ar. *ḫz “to sting, pierce” [Zbr.]: Ar. ḫazza ~ naḫaza ~ waḫaza (lit. for Ar. *ḫz: Zbr. 1971, 71, #113; Eilers 1978, 128; Blv. 1993, 34, #22) ||| Eg. ḫz ~ ḫ3z (GW for ḫz) “Kanal, Brunnen” (XVIII., Wb III 332, 4) = “creek, runnel” (FD 185) = “Sumpfloch, Rinnsal, Bach”, ḫz n mw “Brunnen (am Grab)” (GHWb 619) ||| NBrb.: Qabyle ə-ɣz “creuser” || SBrb. *√ɣ-z “creuser” [GT]: Ahaggar ə-ɣəh, Taneslemt ə-ɣəš, Tawlemmet ə-ɣəš ~ ə-ɣəz ~ ə-ḫəz, Ayr ə-ɣəz, Ghat ə-ɣ(ɣ)əz (Brb.: Prs. 1969, 84, #565) < AA *ɡ-ʒ “to dig” [GT]. These correspondences also confirm that Agaw (and Cu.) *g- may derive (also) from AA *ɡ-.

• **NAgaw *bän-** “to divide” [Apl.]: the relationship to ECu. *ban- “to open” suggested by Appleyard (2006, 55) may be perhaps eventually correct, but more natural and semantically much closer cognates appear in Sem. *byn “to (be) separate”, *bayn- “Zwischenraum” [Dlg.], hence *bayna “between” [DRS-Dlg.] (Sem.: GB 94; WUS #537; Dlg. 1986, 80, #23; Lsl. 1987, 155-116) ||| WCh.: Gwandara bàbbántà [-bb- < *-nb-] “to be different”, bámbán-či “difference” [Mts. 1972, 22] | Angas pwan [p- reg. < *b-] “to discriminate” [ALC 1978, 54] || ECh.: WDangla búùnè “décoller” [Fédry 1971, 99] < AA *b-n (hence *b-y-n ~ *b-w-n) “to separate, make distinction” [GT].

• **NAgaw *bäl-a** “(wooden) door” [Apl.]: Appleyard (2006, 56) correctly surmises that “*it is perhaps debatable whether PNA *bäl-a ... is itself from EthSem. bärr*”. All the more, since the NAgaw stem has parallels with *-l, cf. LECu.: Oromo balbul-a, balbal-a, balball-a, bälbäl-a “gate, door” [Sasse] = balbal-a “door” [Gragg 1982, 34], Konso palpal-a [p- < *b-] “door” [LS], Gidole palpal [p- < *b-] “door” [Sasse] (LECu.: Sasse 1982, 33) ||| WCh.: Buli bìła “doorway” [Stl.?] || ECh.: Lele bulo “window, entrance” [Skn. 1996, 32] | (?) Bidiya bèrèl (adv.) “ouvert” [AJ 1989, 58].

• **NAgaw *mär-a** “door” [Apl. 2006, 56] (Agaw: Rn. 1884, 394; 1887, 273; Apl. 1996, 14): akin to Ar. murh-at- “2. creux en terre où l’eau demeure stagnante” [BK II 1097] ||| Eg. m3h.t “Tür: 1. Außentür des Tempels zwischen den Türmen des Pylons, 2. Tür der Tempelräume, 3. Kapellentür” (GR, Wb II 30, 11-13) = “lieu à ciel ouvert, vestibule” (Ceugney 1880, 2, §4) = (masc. var. m3h) “Tür” (Edfu, Kurth 1994, 12, #48) ||| WBrb.: perhaps Zenaga i-mir “bouchage” [Bst. 1925, 8: √ɣ-m-r] ||| CCh.: Mada míré “intervalle, espace vide entre objets” [Brt.-Brunet 2000, 192]. From AA *m-r-h “opening, hole” [GT]?

• **Agaw *Vnbär-** “to dream” [GT] > NAgaw: Kemant abər “dream (noun)” [Apl. 1991 MS, 4] = abär “dream” [Apl. 2006], Qwara abäri “dream” [Apl. 2006] | SAgaw: Awiya emberī́ “dream”, embar-t- “to dream” [Apl. 2006] (Agaw: Apl. 2006, 57). This root may

---

[12] Cf. Eg. ktkt “alt werden” (GR hapax, Wb V 146) ||| ECu.: Elmolo iníkutate “alt” [Heine 1973, 279] ||| CCh.: Lame kòtókó “old” [Krf. 1981, #296]. WCh.: Tangale kude does not belong here as suggested by Mukarovsky (1987, 278), its basic sense being “big, large, huge, plenty” [Jng. 1991, 103].

be akin to Eg. *b3n[13] [reg. < *brn, perhaps met. < *nbr], attested as j.b3n "schlafen" (PT, Wb I 62, 19) = "être endormi" (CT VI 103b-c, AL 78.1237) = "entschlummern, eingeschlafen sein" (GHWb 41) ||| WCh.: SBauchi *yV^{m}bVr ~ *yV^{m}bVl "to sleep" [GT]: Geji yémbili [Gowers] = yambıl, yambəl [Smz.], Polchi ndià yìmbrə [Smz.], Zodi naambar [Smz.], Jimi yemburdo [Gowers], Soor (Zangwal) nda imbə̀r [Smz.], Sho (Ju) nda imbr- [Smz.], Booluu nda yèmbal [Smz.] (SBch.: Smz. 1978, 37, #71; JI 1994 II, 298). From AA *(n)-b-r ~ *b-r-n (?) "to sleep" [GT]? One wonders if the ultimate AA root was just biconsonantal (*b-r), cf. CCh.: Masa bùùrà "se coucher" [Ctc. 1978, 71] = bùr "1. (tr.) coucher, poser, 2. (intr.) se coucher, dormir" [Ctc. 1983, 40], Lame bàr "se coucher" [Scn. 1982, 279].

• **Agaw *ʒaq-/*ʒaq-** "to drink" [Apl.]: its relationship to ECu. *ḍug- "to drink" proposed by Appleard (2006, 57) seems very unlikely. Instead, it might be perhaps combined with Ar. (Maghrebi) ḏ^{ʕ}aq "manger, dévorer" [Beaussier/DRS 338] ||| SCu. *ǯ$_{1}$aḳ/ḫ- [GT] (theoretically possible and regular), Qwadza ča^{ʔ}-am- "to drink" [Ehr. 1980 MS, 11]. Perhaps from AA *ǯ-(^{ʕ})-[ḳ] "to drink (?)" [GT]? Any connection to SBrb.: perhaps Ayr i-zγaγ "être trempé (par la pluie, dans l'eau de lavage, dans un bain de teinture etc.)", Ayr & ETawlemmet a-zγəγ "être inondé (terrain plat)" [PAM 1998, 370]?

• **Agaw *^{ʔ}ənq^{w}-** "ear" [Apl.]: Appleyard's (2006, 59) reluctance to accept its old equation wih Eg. ^{ʕ}nḫ.wj "die zwei Ohren (als Körperteil des Menschen)" (MK, Wb I 204-5)[14] – as "*probably not related*" – is baseless. Further possible cognates, by the way, appear in CCh.: Bura ngga "hören", ngga-ta "hören, fühlen, empfinden" [Hfm. in RK 1973, 93], Chibak ŋgá-tì "hören" [Hfm. 1955, 135], Margi-Wamdiu ŋga-ri "to hear" [Krf.], WMargi ŋgə-dì "to hear", ŋgà-dì "1. to hear, 2. feel" [Krf.] | Higi ŋga-rdì "entendre" [Krf.] (CCh.: Krf. quoted by Jng.-Brt. 1990, 77) || ECh.: Mokilko ^{ʔ}ânnìgá "(se) taire" [Jng. 1990, 58] < AA *^{ʕ}-n-Q "to listen, hear" [GT].

• **Agaw *q^{w}-** "to eat" [Apl.] (Agaw: Apl. 1984, 53). Appleyard (2006, 59) is probably wrong in assuming that it is cognate with ECu. *-ḳm-/*-ḳām- "to chew" [Sasse 1982, 121-2] and that the loss of *-m may be due to that Agaw *q^{w}- "*derives from the same asyllabic stem variant*" as seen in ECu. *-ḳm-. Instead, cp. ECu.: Yaaku -qau- "to bite" [Heine 1975, 121] || SCu. *ḳeḫ- "to bite" [Ehr.]: WRift *ḳeḫ- [GT] | Qwadza ḳa- | Dahalo ḳaḥ- (SCu.: Ehr. 1980, 252, #27) ||| WCh.: NBauchi *ḳiy- "to bite" [Skn.]: Warji ḳíy- [Skn.] = ḳi! [Jng.] = kíya^{u} [IL], Mburku ḳiy- [Skn.], Pa'a ḳi [Jng., IL] = ḳii [MSkn. 1979], Siri ḳii [Skn.] = ḳíwá [IL] = kíí (so, k-!) [Skn./JI], Miya kíy- [Skn.], Kariya kə̀kí [Skn.] (NBch.: Skn. 1977, 13; JI 1994 II 24). From AA *ḳ-ḥ "to bite" [GT]. The NBauchi-Bilin etymology was first suggested by Mukarovsky (1987, 95).

• **NAgaw *k^{w}ən-** "(to become) evening, spend the night" vs. "evening" [Apl.]: Bilin k^{w}ən- (v.), k^{w}ənəŋ (n.) [Apl.] = kun- "to spend the evening" [KH], Hamta k^{w}ən- (v.), k^{w}ənwa/k^{w}ənəŋ (n.) [Apl.], Kemant k^{w}əna (n.) [Apl.], Qwara kŭŋā ~ kŭniŋā (Apl.:

---

[13] Meeks (AL 78.0256) considers jb3n a pseudo-participle of *b3n with prothetic j-. Similarly, Hannig supposes a *Grundform* *b3n.

[14] For this Agaw-Eg. etymology see Zhl. 1932-33, 166.

[kʷənəŋa]) (n.) vs. kwəm- (v.) “to spend the evening” [Rn.] | Awngi kəm- (v.) [Apl.] vs. kemanā́ “evening” [CR]. Appleyard (2006, 62) is presumably right in distinguishing this common Agaw stem from Kemant kʷəlŋa [Apl.], Hamta kelú “evening” [Apl.], Qwara kʷərŋa [Apl.] (extended with -ŋa suffix) < *kʷəl-/*kʷər- [GT], for which cf. Agaw *qir-/*qar- “night” [Apl. 1991, 21] || SCu.: Iraqw ḫʷera “night, esp. the earlier part of it” [Ehret 1980, 270 with false etymology] ||| Eg. ḫ3.wj [reg. < *ḫr- sg.] “Abend” (PT, Wb III 225). As for NAgaw *kʷən-, Appleyard pondered reconstructing the PAgaw root with *-m- (as in Qwara and Awngi) and comparing it with Eg. km “black”. But *kʷəm- might be just as well be due to an assimilation < *kʷən-, for which cp. rather Eg. knm.t “die Finsternis” (BD, NK, Wb V 132, 10; GHWb 885) vs. knḥ.w “Finsternis, Verfinsterung” (BD, GR, Wb V 133; GHWb 885) < biconsonantal *kn- “dark” (?).

• **NAgaw *ʔus-äti** (fem. ending *-äti) “female” [Apl.]: Appleyard (2006, 65) rightly rejects deriving the forms from *ʔn̥s- and comparing it with *näs-aḫʷ as suggested by Reinisch (since the -ä- ~ -Ø-/-ə- ablaut is not part of Agaw adjectival morphology). Similarly dubious is Dolgopol’kij’s (1973, 288) comparison of the Agaw stem with Sem. *nVš- (pl. stem) vs. *ʔVnṯ- (sg.) < *ʔVnš- “man” + fem. *-t- (with *-št- resulting in *-ṯ-). Instead, cp. (?) Eg. 3s.t “Isis” (OK, Wb I 8, 11; FD 5), vocalized *ʔűs.ˇt > Cpt. (S) ⲏⲥⲉ (Stz. 1980, 83, fn. 5, for *-ű- > -ⲏ- cf. Osing, MDAIK 30, 1974, 104) ||| NOm.: Male ús-o “женщина, имеющая ребенка" [Jensen apud Dlg.] (Agaw: Dlg. 1973, 288) ||| CCh.: Glavda ús(à) (Cena dial. úsá) “Frau" [Wolff 1974-5, 205], Glanda (Ghboko) & Bokwa usa (sg.) “Frau” [Büchner 1964, 41] < AA *ʔus- “woman” [HSED]. For Agaw-NOm.-CCh. see Mlt. 1984, 159; OS 1992, 209; HSED #141. For Masai parallel of Agaw see Hohenberger 1975, 98.

• **NAgaw *šeka/*šeḫa** “field, open country” (hence Tigre šeka) [Apl. 2006, 66] > Bilin šäka [Apl.], Hamir šäwa [Apl.] = šḗwā [Rn.], Qwara šäwa [Apl.], Kemant sēhā (so, misprint for *sēḫā) “prairie” [CR 1912, 241] (no AA cognates in Apl. l.c.) were unconvincingly compared by Reinisch (1887, 319) with Geez ṣayḥ. But Agaw *š- ≠ Sem. *ṣ-, while Agaw *-k/ḫ- ≠ Sem. *-ḥ-. Instead, the Agaw root has safe cognates in Sem. *sḫḫ: Akk. saḫḫu “meadow, productive meadow land” [Alb.] = “Aue” [AHW 1009] = “meadow, waterlogged land” [CAD s 56] || Ar. saḫāḫ- “terre franche, bonne terre, terrain doux et bon pour la végétation”, saḫḫāʔ- “endroit où il y a de la terre franche” [BK I 1064] = saḫāḫ- “sweet, good ground”, saḫwāʔ- (sic) “plain with sweet soil” [Alb.] (Sem.: Alb. 1916, 231) ||| Eg. sḫ.t “Feld, Gefilde” (PT, Wb IV 229-231) = “field, country (beside town)” (FD 239) = “Feld, Kulturland, Flur (einer Stadt)” (ÄWb I 1193) ||| CCh.: Logone sḫē “Acker, Feld” [Lks. 1936, 119] = („Kotoko”) sġe “champ” [Mch. 1950, 19], Buduma čúi [-i < *-ḫ reg.] “Acker, Feld” [Lks. 1939, 96] (Kotoko: Prh. 1972, 62, #35.1). From AA *c-ḫ “field” [GT]. For the Eg.-AA etymology see: Alb. 1923, 67; 1927, #77; Vrg. 1945, 139, #13.13; Chn. 1947, #294; Mlt. 1983, 103, fn. 25; Djk. et al. 1986 MS, 33; OS 1989, 135; 1990, 89, #27; 1992, 190; Mlt.-Stl. 1990, 53; HSED #385.

• **NAgaw *ʔənsaɣ-** “to fill” [Apl.]: its kinship with ECu. *-mg- “to fill” [Sasse 1979, 25] imagined by Appleyard (2006, 67) (speculating that both tr. *ʔənsaɣ- and intr. *ʔəntaɣ- were extended by *-s-/*-t-, resp., via metathesis) is very far-fetched. Any connection to

WRift *hac “to be full” [KM 2004, 134] = PRift *haç- “to be full” (cf. Asa haš- id., Qwadza hacumo “much”) [Ehret 1980, 81, #2], whose a doubly irreg. cognate appears in Ar. ḥaša^{ʔ}a “remplir, bourrer, farcir de qqch.”, ḥaši^{ʔ}a “être rempli” (de qqch.)” [BK I 435]? Note that Rift *h- ≠ Sem. *ḥ-, neither Rift *c corresponds to Sem. *ŝ.

• **Agaw *dəŋ^{w}-** “to finish” [Apl.]: aside from ECu. *ḍa/i/um- “to come to an end” suggested by Appleyard (2006, 67), cp. also Sem. *ṭmm[15] and Sem. *^{ʔ}ṭm “to stop up”[16] [GT] ||| Eg. tmm “verschließen” (PT, Wb V 308, 5-9) = “to close” (FD 298)[17]. The Eg.-Sem. parallel has been first pointed out by Vergote (1945, 144, #21.b.11) and Cohen (1947, #33).

• **Agaw *läḫ-** “fire” [Apl.]: this can not be compared with ECu. *la^{ʕ}- “hot, day” and Eg. r^{ʕ} “sun” as Appleyard (2006, 68) maintains. Instead, cp. Eg. 3ḫ.t [reg. < *lḫ.t] “Flamme, Feuer” (BD-GR, Wb I 17, 6).

• **Bilin bəgbag** “flame” [Apl. 2006, 68]: akin to Eg. bḫḫ “glühen, brennen” (NK, Wb I 472, 1) = “consumer” (already CT IV 65j, AL 78.1354) = “glühen, brennen” (GHWb 259) ||| NBrb.: Mzab bbəkbək “2. être agité de fièvre” [Dlh. 1984, 6] ||| SCu.: Dahalo ḅakk-ēð- “to kindle” [Ehret 1980, 142; EEN 1989, 32] = ḅakk- “to lit fire” [Tosco 1991, 130] ||| NOm.: Chara bāk-a “fireplace (3 stones)” [Bnd. 1974, 13] || SOm. *bāk-/*bakk- “hearth, fireplace” [GT]: Ari bak-a [Flm.], Galila bāk-a [Flm.], Hamer bak-a [Flm.], Karo bak-ulu [Flm.], Dime bāk-u [Flm.] (SOm.: Flm. 1988, 166; Bnd. 1994, 150), cf. also Hamer baka “to cook” [Bnd. 1994, 147] ||| Ch. *b-k- “to burn, roast, grill” [JS 1981, 144C & 214A] = *b-k “to burn” [JI 1994 I, 139 & GT] = *b-kə “to roast, burn” [Nwm. 1977, 31].

• **NAgaw *fVlVt-a** “flea” [Apl.] has certainly nothing to do with Sem. *parγūṯ- “flea” [Apl.] and probably with CCh. *pilu “mosquito” [Stl. in HSED #423] either as Appleyard (2006, 69) supposes. Instead, its derivation from PAA *p-l-(y) “flea” [GT] has to be considered, cf. Sem.: Ar. fly (falā) II “to remove lice, hunt for fleas” [Alb.] = sich lausen” [Holma] = “flohen, lausen” [Clc.] = “épouiller” [Chn.] | MSA *flw ~ *fly “to delouse” [GT]: Hrs. felō “to delouse” [Jns. 1977, 33], Jbl. félé “to delouse” [Jns. 1981, 58], Mhr. fələ̄ “to delouse (so.’s hair), look for and remove bugs on an animal” [Jns. 1987, 95] ||| WCh.: Sura m̥̀bə́líp [-b- and -p obscure] “Floh” [Jng. 1963, 74]. Here might belong also AA *^{ʔ}-p-l “a parasite insect (or sim.)” [GT], cf. Akk. uplu ~ ublu “Tiername (≈ mutqu ’Wanze’): Laus (?)” [Holma 1914, 154] = uplu “Kopflaus”, denom. (a/jB) D

---

[15] Cf. Akk. ṭummumu D “(Ohren) verschließen, taub machen” [AHW 1394] || MHbr. & JAram. ṭmm „verstopfen” [Levy 1924 II 166] = “to fill up, stop”, itpe. “to be covered up”, palp. “to close (around)” [Jastrow 1950 I 540], Syr. ṭmm “to shut, close, stupefy” [Zbr.] || Ar. ṭmm “to fill up, choke up etc.” [Lane 1877] = “1. former une grande masse (p.ex., l’eau), 2. envelopper, couvrir qqch. de sa masse, 3. remplir jusqu’aux bords (un vase ou un puits)” [BK II 105] = “to stop up” [Zbr.] (Sem.: Zbr. 1971, #267).

[16] Reflected by: Hbr. “ṭm qal "1. to stop up (one’s ears), 2. (archit. term of window) closed, barred, framed (?)” [KB 37], Syr. ^{ʔ}eṭam “to be deaf” [KB] || Ar. ^{ʔ}aṭama II “1. couvrir”, IV “fermer (une porte)” [BK I 39] = “to stop up, close” [Zbr.] = “serrer, fermer”: I ^{ʔ}aṭima “être resserré (to be constricted)”, ^{ʔ}aṭama “rétrécir (l’orifice d’un puits)” [Blachère 147] (Sem.: Zbr. 1971, #267).

[17] The derivation from Eg. tm „vollständig sein” (Wb) proposed by Leslau (1949, 314, #33; 1962, 45, #3) and Osing (2001, 579), is just a pseudo-etymology rightly refuted already by Ward (1962, 400-2, #4).

uppulu "lausen" [AHW 1423, 1425] ||| CCh.: Mada offól "tique (du chien, des vaches)" [Brt.-Brunet 2000, 104].

• **NAgaw *lək^{w}** "foot, leg" [Apl. 2006, 71]: cognate with Eg. *3t̲ [reg. < *lk] "foot (or sim.)" can be reconstructed from the foot hieroglyph occurring in the MEg. title (glossed in Wörterbuch as w^{ʿ}r.t.w) "Vorsteher, Aufseher" (MK, Wb I 288, 9-14), which is to be read correctly as 3t̲.w (cf. Posener, Revue d'Égyptologie 15, 1963, 127-128; Berlev, Palestinskij Sbornik 17, 1969, 6-20; GHWb 17; Satzinger, kind p.c. on 9 Febr. 1996).

• **NAgaw *məḫi-** (with an irreg. *-ḫ-) "to forget" [Apl. 1989] = *miɬi-T- (pass./refl. ext.) [Apl. 1991] = *məḫ-iR- < *-Vt- [Apl. 2006]: the Yaaku and Eg. parallels (quoted by Appleyard 2006, 72 after EDE I 122) can be extended by WCh.: Guruntum m^{y}a-wi ~ m^{y}au-mi "to forget" [Jaggar 1989, 184] = myáuwà "to forget" [Haruna 1992 MS, 25] = myoowì "to forget" [Csp. 1994, 18] || CCh.: Bura mwi "ignoramus" [BED 1953, 146] | Banana mawa "to forget" [Kraft 1981 III, 181].

• **NAgaw *waḫär-** "game" vs. ***waɣär-t-** "to play" [Apl. 2006, 73, 110-1] > Hamta war-d- "to play", war-d-a "game" [Apl.], Hamir wār ~ ewār "Spiel", wār-t ~ ewār-t "spielen" [Rn. 1884, 425], Kemant wāɣer-t- "to play" [CR/Apl.] = war-t- ~ waɣär-t- "to play", waɣär "game, conversation", war-əŋ "game" [Apl.], Qwara wagerī "Spiel", wager-t "spielen" [Rn. 1884 l.c.] = waɣar "spielen" [Rn. 1886, 828] = wār-t- ~ waɣar-t- "to play, converse" [CR/Apl.]: no connection with Cu. *[ʔ]VbVll- "to play" as suggested by Dolgopol'skij (1973, 197). In fact, Agaw *-ɣ/ḫ- may be an intervocalic reflex of *-ʔ- (like AS *-ɣ- < i.a. AA *-ʔ-, cf. Dlg. 1982), cf. AA *w-ʔ-r "1. to play, 2. dance" [GT] > Eg. w3r [-3- reg. < *-ʔ-] "tanzen" (GR, Wb I 252, 11) ||| NBrb.: Menaser, Zwawa, Bugi urar "jouer" [Bst. 1885, 171] ||| CCh.: Bata-Demsa hĕ nă ūrō "ich tanze" [Str. 1922-23, 145], Bachama wúrò "to dance" [JI] || ECh.: Dangla wâ:rè "danser" [Frédry 1981, 446], Migama wàarò "to dance" [JA 1992, 133; Mkr. 1987, 13], Bidiya waar "danser", wáareŋ (f) "danse" [AJ 1989, 123] (Ch.: JI 1994 II 101). See also OS 1992, 179 (Eg.-Agaw); HSED #2490 (Eg.-ECh.).

• **Bilin wäʿab ~ mäʿab** "1. to play, 2. game" [Apl.]: no cognates were given by Appleyard (2006, 73, 110). Eventually, however strange it may *prima vista* seem, one might compare perhaps Sem. *lʿb > Syr. lʿb etpael "seine Lust an etwas haben" [GB] | Ar. laʿaba I "scherzen, spielen" [GB] = "2. jouer, badiner, folâtrer, 3. jouer à un jeu de hasard, 4. jouer" [BK II 999] (Sem.: GB 388) and Eg. ḫʿb "(ein Spiel) spielen" (OK, Wb III 42, 6), of which already Greenberg (1950, 180) wrote: "*I don't think we can keep (it) apart from Sem.* *lʿb". The mystery of how and why the first radicals (w-, l-, ḫ-) changed in the reflexes of AA *C_1-ʿ-b "to play" [GT] remains, of course, to be resolved.

• **NAgaw *ʔənfa/är-a** "boy" [Apl. 2006, 36]: related to Akk. nipru ~ niplu "Sproß, Nachkomme" [AHW 740] = nipru (OB) "offspring" vs. niplu (SB) "offshoot" [CAD n2, 247] || (???) Ar. nāfil-at- "4. petit-fils", nawfal- "jeune homme très-beau" [BK II 1316] ||| Eg. nfr.w (pl.) "Jünglinge (bes. die Rekruten)" (MK, Wb II 1-3) = "youth" (de Buck quoted by Donohue 1978, 147-8, fn. 8: cf. Faulkner, JEA 39, 1953, 35-36; Schulman 1966, 20-21) = "Rekruten (nicht Elitetruppen)" (Helck, LÄ IV 133, fn. 22) = "recruits" (Ward 1982, 99, #829) = "adolescents" (Vcl. 1991, 122) < OK nfr (sg.) "Jüngling,

Kadett" (II.?/III., Fischer, JNES 18, 1959, 258-9; OMRO 41, 1960, 7-13; Pusch 1974, 21; FÄW 238-9) = "adolescent" (DELC 150) = "recruit, cadet, conscript" (Jones 2000, 483, #1807), cf. also nfr "verjüngt sein" (CT IV 292b, Graefe 1971, 168, fn. 1 & 244). See also Hommel 1899, 349; 1904, 110, fn. 1 (Eg.-Akk.); DELC 150 (Eg.-Akk.); Castellino 1984, 16 (Eg.-Akk.-Agaw); Bmh. 1986, 248 (Eg.-Akk.).

• **NAgaw *naɣ- < PAgaw **nāk- ~ **nākk-** "to give (here, to the speaker)" [Apl. 2006, 74]: presumably connected with NOm. *ing- < **ink- (?) "to give" [GT] ||| Eg. ḫnk "(be) schenken" (PT, Wb III 117) ||| WCh.: (?) AS *naŋ ~ *nuŋ < *n^{w}aŋ (?) [partial redupl. < *na-nk?] "to hand over to" [GT 2004, 264]: Gerka nung "to send" [Ftp. 1911, 220], Angas naŋ "to give, hand over" [Flk. 1915, 252] = (Pang, Garam, hill) nāng "to give" [Gcl. 1994, 35, 62] || CCh.: Bana ŋgá "donner une partie de qqch. qu'il faut casser", Higi-Baza ngù "donner" (CCh.: Brt.-Jng. 1990, 151). For Agaw-NOm. see Mkr. 1987, 233, #31. For the loss of the first syllable *HV- in Agaw (i.e., PAgaw **nāk- < **ḫVnak-), cp. ECu. *he/og- "to be erect, stand" ~ Agaw *g^{w}- "to get up, stand up" (Apl. 2006, 74).

• **Agaw *fät-** "to go" [Apl.] can have nothing to do with Eg. ptpt "to tread, trample" as Appleyard (2006, 75) suggests. By the way, in the Agaw stem, the suffix *-t- has probably to be singled out, cp. Eg. pj "sich begeben" (LP, Wb I 502, 3) ||| Ch. *p-y "to go (or sim.)" [GT]: WCh.: PRon *fay "to walk (Jng. 1968), go (Jng. 1970)" [GT]: Sha fay, Kulere fa (Ron: Jng. 1968, 8, #65; 1970, 284, 351) | Dera pú- "s'en aller" [Brt.-Jng.] (WCh.: Stl. 1987, 248) || CCh.: (?) Lamang (Hitkala) piy- "treten" [Lks. 1964, 108] | Masa pāì "se promener" [Ctc. 1978, 73] = pày [Ctc. 1983, 125] < AA *p-y "to go" (or sim.) [GT]?

• **Agaw *f-** "to go out, up" [Apl.]: cf. CCh.: Lame pá "sortir" [Scn. 1982, 267] || ECh.: (?) Tumak pàáàw "dépasser" [Cpr. 1975, 90]. To be distinguished from the preceding root.

• **Agaw *ʒələw-** "to go round" [Apl. 2006, 75] is to be compared with Ar. (Palest.) t-ḏāyal "tourner autour" [DRS 331] ||| WCh.: PGoemay *ǯ^{y}el [GT]: Goemay ǯièl "to surround, encircle" [Srl. 1937, 83] = ǯel "to surround, go round several times" [Hlw. 2000 MS, 14].

• **Agaw *fəntVr-a** "goat" [Apl. 2006, 75]: the etymology of the Agaw root is obscure. Appleyard (p.c., 11 March 2001) knows of no reliable Cu. cognates. Cp. perhaps Eg. ptr (GW) "mule (?)" (NE, AL 78.1058) = "(domesticated animal)" (DLE I 186, cf. Helck 1962, 559, #83) = "ein domestiziertes Tier (*Maultier)" (GHWb 298)?

• **NAgaw *bVɣ^{w}-a** "gourd" [Apl.]: aside from HECu. *bukk-ē "gourd" [Hds. 1989, 72] correctly compared by Appleyard (2006, 76), further cognates appear (with an epenthetic nasal) in Eg. bnḏ.t ~ bḏ.t [reg. < *b(n)g.t] "concombre, cucurbitacée" (OK, AL 77.1271, 79.0909, cf. Yoyotte in BIFAO 61, 125-6; 77, 116; MDAIK 16, 420-3) → Cpt.: (S) ⲃⲟⲛⲧⲉ, (SA) ⲃⲁⲛⲧⲉ, (B) ⲃⲟⲛ†, (F) ⲃⲁⲛ† "gourd, cucumber" (CD 41a, cf. AEO II 220* & CED 25) = "Kürbis, Gurke" (KHW 25) = "1. melon, concombre, 2. jardin où on cultive les melons, les concombres" (DELC 30) ||| Brb.: Guanche (all islands) bugango ~ bubango "citrouille, calabacita" [Wlf. 1965, 509, #223] = "small gourd" [Mlt. 1991, 165] ||| WCh. *bang- "calabash, gourd" [GT] = *bang^{w}/gA "тыква" [Stl.]: Hausa bàŋgóó, pl. báŋgúnà "3. (Skt.) any large neckless gourd" [Abr. 1962, 73] | PAngas-Sura *ba$_{2}$ng "gourd, calabash" [GT 2004, 10] | Galambu bàngó "large, round gourd (used by

fishermen)" [Schuh 1978, 81], Bole ḅùngá [ḅ- not clear] "any ball-like object", ḅùngá kúlà "gourd as a plant" [Ibr.-Gimba 1994, 129] | Saya byaŋ "gourd" [Csp. 1994, 52] (WCh.: Stl. 1987, 153, #79) || CCh.: Bura pumbang "kind of gourd" [BED 1953, 15] | (???) Logone báŋgūs (compound?) "Carica Papaya, Melonenbaum" [Lks. 1936, 85]. Lit.: Mlt. 1984, 23, fn. 7 (Guanche-WCh.); Takács 1999, 90 (Eg.-WCh.); 1999, 200, #2.1 (Eg.-WCh.-Guanche).

• **NAgaw *nan** "hand, arm" [Apl. 2006, 79]: naturally, it has nothing in common either with WCh. *niwan- or Eg. ʿn "fingernail" as suggested in HSED #401. Instead, it is cognate with WCh.: Gwandara náni "hand" [Mts. 1972, 86], cf. Hausa hánnúú [Lsl.: prefix ha- of body parts] "hand" [Abr. 1962, 371]. See also Lsl. 1962, 67 (Agaw-Hausa); Mlt. in Sts. et al. 1995 MS, 15 (Agaw-Gwandara). Any connection to SOm. *ǎn- "hand, arm" [GT]: Ari (ʔ)ǎn-í, Hamer ǎn-(i), Dime ān- (SOm.: Bnd. 1994, 151, #37) via partial redupl.?

• **NAgaw *bäntäl/r-** "hare, rabbit" > i.a. Bilin mäntälära [Apl. 2006, 79]: the 4th radical (*-är/l-) was presumably not part of the original root, cf. Ch. *b[i]nd-ab (presumably from an older **bint-) "hare" [GT]: WCh.: Guruntum beeḍâu [probably < *bendaḅ] [Jaggar] || CCh. *bi/and-ab [*-nd- < **-nt-?] → *mi/and-ab "hare" [GT]: Dghwede vìndá [Frick], Matakam wándâv [Schubert], Mofu hwɔ̀ndáv [Brt.], Gisiga-Dogba mandaf [Lks.] | Musgoy mo̱ndəvo̱ŋ [Mch.], Daba mandàvɪn ("rabbit") [Lnh.] | Gidar mǎndạva [Mch.] (CCh.: JI 1994 II 181), where the nasal may be secondary, cf. Ch. *bit- "hare" [GT] > WCh.: Diri ávìčá [Skn.] | Ngizim víidà ("rabbit") [Schuh] || CCh.: Bura pti [Krf.], Margi pitu [Krf.] | Gude pita [Krf.], Glavda víída [Rapp] | Masa vét-ná (m) [Jng.], Zime-Batna fítī [Scn.] || ECh.: Kera àvèté [Ebert] (Ch.: JI 1994 II 180-1).

• **NAgaw *məq[aq]-** "herdsman, shepherd" [Apl. 2006, 83] might be compared to Ar. maqā I "garder qqch., veiller sur qqch.", maqw- ~ maqw-at- ~ muqāw-at- ~ maqy-at- "garde, soins qu'on prend pour conserver qqch." [BK II 1136-7] = "to watch, guard" [Lsl.] ||| ECh.: Migama mággú (m), mággá (f), pl. mággée "berger" [JA 1992, 105]. AA *m-ḳ "to guard" [GT]?

• **NAgaw *bər-** "to be hot, warm" [Apl. 2006, 85] derives from AA *b-r "warm" [Sasse 1981, 160, #4] = *b-(ʿ)-r "1. to be hot, 2. burn" [GT] > i.a. Sem. *bʿr [infix *-ʿ-?]: esp. Emar buhri [*bʿr/*bγr] "hot" [Zadok 1991, 116, #8] ||| ECh.: Kera bóoré [-oo- < *-oH-] "sich aufwärmen, Feuer fangen" [Ebert 1976, 33].

• **Bilin laû** "erben, Erbe sein" [Rn. 1887, 260] = law "to inherit" [Ehret 1987, 75, #315] = läw "to inherit" [Apl. 2006, 87]: Appleyard gives no cognates. Apparently cognate with Eg. jwʿ [reg. from *lwʿ] "to inherit" (OK, FD 12; Wb I 50, 8-10), whose further AA cognates can equally not be found as yet.

• **Bilin bəsk^{w}i ~ bəsək^{w}** "kidney" [Apl. 2006, 89]: Appleyard gives no cognates. However, it is perhaps to compared with Eg. bsk "1. Eingeweide allgemein (oft neben Herz), 2. auch für das Herz selbst" (MK, Wb I 477, 10-11) = bsk.w (pl.) "entrails" (PT 292, FD 85) = "1. viscères, 2. aussi: cervelle (?)" (CT V 180g, AL 78.1370) = "Eingewide, dual. Eingeweide, Innereien" (GHWb 262). The AA parallels suggest a biconsonantal origin (*bs-k), where *-k (suffix of body parts?) originally did not belong to the root,

cp. NOm.: Zayse bīš-a “uterus” [Hyw. 1988, 285] ||| CCh. *bus- [GT]: Bura busu “the stomach proper” [BED 1953, 29], Bura-Pela busu “belly” [Meek] | Bata-Garwa bubsciné [-sts-] “belly” [Str.], Gude bùsá “unidentified internal organ next to intestines” [Hsk. 1983, 163] (Ch.: JI 1994 II, 20-21).

• **Agaw *ʔarq-** “to know” [Apl. 1989 MS, 6; 1991, 23] = *ʔärq- [Apl. 2006, 89-90] || LECu. *ʔarg- “to see” [Sasse 1982, 26] (NB: LECu. *-g- strange) originate from the AA basic sense “to see” (cf. IE *weid-). Add also Bed. erh- “sehen, schauen, erblicken” [Rn. 1895, 29] = erh, irh, reh, rih “to see” [Rpr. 1928, 153], Ammar’ar reh- ~ rh- “to see (видеть)” [Dlg.], Bisharin rēh- ~ rh- “to see” [Almkvist] (Bed.: Dlg. 1973, 170) ||| Eg. rḫ “to know” (OK, FD 151; Wb II 442-5) as suggested by many authors: Hommel 1894, 357; Rn. 1895, 29; Zhl. 1932-33, 169; Vcl. 1934, 46, 77; 1938, 134; Chn. 1947, #415; Dlg. 1973, 170-1; OS 1992, 176.

• **Agaw *b-** “to lack, not to have” [Apl. 2006, 90]: cp. also SBrb.: Ahaggar a-ba “ne pas y avoir de, ne plus y avoir de” [Fcd. 1951-2, 13], ETawllemmet-Ayr i-ba “1. ne pas y avoir de, 2. y avoir disparition/perte de, 3. y avoir mort de”, hence i-ba, pl. i-ba-t-ăn “1. perte, 2. mort, 3. manque” [PAM 1998, 2], Taneslemt i-bba ~ i-ba “not to have, to lose” [HCVA] (SBrb.: DRB I 6) ||| NOm.: POmeto *ba[ʔ]- “not to have, not to be” [GT]: NWOmeto: Wolayta ba-wa “non esserci” [Crl. 1929, 28] = bay- “to get lost” [Hbr.-Lmb.], Basketo bā “non esserci, non avere” [Crl.] = bā- “not to be there” [Hbr.-Lmb.], Gamo be-t- “to disappear” [Hyw. 1994 MS, 2] = bā-wa [Lmb.: copula -wa] “there is not” [Hbr.-Lmb.], Dawro (Kullo) bay- “to be lost” [LS] | SEOmeto: Zala bawa “non esserci” [Crl. 1929, 43], Zayse baʔa “non esserci” [Crl.] = bay- “to get lost, migrate” [Hbr.-Lmb.], Koyra (Baditu) bay-s caus. “finire” [Crl.] etc. | Chara baʔ- “not to be there” [Hbr.-Lmb.] (NOm.-Cu.: Crl. 1938 III, 114, 201; Dlg. 1966, 49; 1973, 39; Hbr.-Lmb. 1988, 80; Bnd. 1988, 152; 1990, 683; LS 1997, 326) ||| WCh.: Hausa baa “there is / are / was / were not” [Abr. 1962, 47] = baà- “not to exist” (with verbal suffixes), e.g. baà-ni dà mai “I exist not with oil” = “I do not have oil” [Hodge 1987, 156] | Dera bòi “to spoil (intr.), get lost” [Nwm. 1974, 121] | Bade bee “nicht vorhanden” [Lks. 1974-5, 100] || CCh.: Lamang (Hitkala) bíú “nicht vorhanden” [Lks. 1964, 106] | (?) Musgu pai ~ poi [p- irreg.] “nicht (vorhanden)” [Lks. 1941, 72] || ECh.: Kera bìʔí “verderben, zerstören (porrir, détruire)” [Ebert 1976, 33].

• **NAgaw *yəb-** “leopard” [Apl. 2006, 92] = *yibā [GT]: presumably palatalized from *lib- and thus akin to LECu.: Saho-Afar lubā́k “Löwe” [Rn. 1886, 874], Saho-Assaorta lubā́k “leone” [CR 1913, 67] | Sam *libāḥ “lion” [Heine 1978, 67] ||| Eg. 3bj [< *lbj] “Panther” (XVIII., Wb I 7-14) = “panther” (FD 2) ||| Sem. *labʔ- “lion” [Djk. 1970, 473, fn. 96]. See also Rn. 1886, 874 (ECu.-Sem.); Chn. 1947, #7 and Djk. 1965, 50 (Eg.-Agaw); Dlg. 1983, 124 and Orel 1993, 43 (Sam-Sem.); Hodge 1992, 218 (Eg.-Sem.-Sam); HSED #1636 (Sem.-ECu.).

• **NAgaw *mäl-t-** “to guard, look after” [GT] = *mēl- [CR 1912, 228]: cf. hence, e.g., Qwara mäl- “spähen, beobachten, herumschauen” [Rn. 1885, 98] (NAgaw: Apl. 1994, 248): the comparison with LECu.: Saho-Afar -uble “to see” suggested by Conti Rossini (l.c.) was correctly rejected already by Appleyard (2006, 95). Instead, cp. Ar. ʔml V:

taʔammala “1. regarder avec attention, contempler qqch., 2. réfléchir à qqch., 3. penser, être en méditation” [BK I 56] = “examiner” [DRS 22] ||| Eg. m33 “sehen” (OK, Wb II 7-10) = “to look, see” (FD 100) ||| HECu.: Sidamo malammala “to enquire, examine” [Gsp. 1983, 221], Hadiya mal- “1. to examine, investigate, 2. doubt” [Hds. 1989, 52, 59], Gedeo (Darasa) mall- “to examine, investigate” [Hds.] ||| NOm.: Kaffa mall-et- “osservare” [Crl. 1951, 471]. Here may eventually belong the special Cu. (Agaw-Oromo) isogloss *m-l-ʕ (ext. *-ʕ) “to look” [GT][18].

• **NAgaw *ʔənkan-** “to love, like” [Apl.]: Appleyard correctly singles out in it an old refl.-pass. prefix *ʔən- and compares LECu.: Afar kiḥin- “to love, be loving, happy” and Beja -khan “to love”. The same AA root (i.e., *k-ḥ-n with met.) may be present in Eg. ḥkn “1. (einen Gott) preisen, (das Herz, die Glieder) erfreuen mit (m), 2. jubeln, sich freuen über” (PT, Wb III 178) > ḥkn.w “Lobpreis” (MK, Wb III 179).[19]

• **NAgaw *ʔəncəwa-** “mouse, rat” [Apl.]: the cognates like Saho-Afar ʕandaw-a and Oromo hantūt-a (listed by Appleyard 2006, 102) – add SOm.: Ari (ʔ)untín “rat, mouse” [Bnd. 1994, 156] – indicate an interchange of initial *ʕ- ~ *ḥ-, which makes a connection with Eg. ḥnt3 ~ ḥntj “ein Tier mit Stacheln (dessen Haar offizinell verwendet wird)” (Med., Wb III 121, 15 & 122, 7) = “porcupine (?)” (FD 173) = “*Igel, *Stachelschwein” (GHWb 543) probable. For Eg.-Cu. see also Orel 1993, 41; 1995, 100, #5. Not clear whether WCh.: Bole-Tangale *gʷand- “giant rat” [Schuh 1984, 209] can also be related (whether we can project a process *gʷand- < **ḥʷant- < **ḥantaw- has to be subject to further research).

• **NAgaw *mäk-** “mouth” [Ehret 1987, #438; Apl. 1989 MS, 16] = *mäkäy-[a] “mouth” [Apl. 2006, 102]: this stem has been clearly extended with *-k- (found in some other AA anatomical terms). The Agaw stem represents an old AA root and is akin to Akk. maʔu ~ maʔtu “tongue or a part of the tongue” [CAD m1, 414, 435] ||| Brb. *imi “1. bouche, 2. entrée, ouverture” [Bst. 1890, 37; 1890, 312; Bst. 1929, 33-34] = *imi, pl. *im-awn “bouche” [Durand 1993, 243] = *a-mwi (sic) “mouth” [Blz.] = *mV- (sic) [HSED]

---

[18] NAgaw: Bilin milíʕ y “hinschauen, sich umsehen” [Rn. 1887, 269] ‖ LECu.: Oromo mil- “guardare” [Crl. 1951, 471] = milʔ-aḍḍa “to look back, glance”, milʔū “glance, look” [Gragg 1982, 287, 432] = milʕ-aḍa (so, -ʕ-!) “anblicken”, milʕú́ “Blick” [Rn. 1887, 269] = mill-eḍḍa “to look at one point” [Strm. 2001, 56] = mill-aḍḍa “1. (Borana) to look at, observe sg. sharply, pay attention to, 2. (Waata) have a quick look at” [Strm. 1987, 368] = (Borana) mill-aḍḍa “to look at, observe sg. sharply, glance, watch, pay attention to” [Strm. 1995, 209]. The intr. sense of the underlying AA root is to be seen in LECu.: Oromo mulʔ-aḍḍa “to appear, become clear, apparent”, mulʔ-isa “to reveal, make known, show” [Gragg 1982, 294; Hds. 1989, 21: no HECu. cognates], Oromo-Borana mul-aḍḍa “to appear” [Strm. 1987, 368; 1995, 211].

[19] For the semantic dispersion “to like ~ to praise”, cf., e.g., Sem.: Ar. ṯny II “to praise” [Lsl.] = ṯny: ṯanā “louer qqn., prononcer ou écrire son éloge” [BK I 238] ||| Eg. snsj “preisen, verehren” (XVIII., Wb IV 171, 5-10), snsn “id.” (NK, Wb IV 171, 15-16) ||| LECu.: Somali sāni “lover” [HRV 1979, 79] ||| NOm. *šun- “to love, like” [GT] (NOm. data: Dlg. 1973, 115; Bnd. 1988, 150; Flm. 1987, 150, #7) ‖ SOm.: (?) Galila šol-ım [Flm.: < *šon- with a passive-reflexive -ım] “to love” [Flm. 1976, 319] ||| WCh. *čan- “to like, wish” [Stl. 1986, 87; 1987, 192]: Sura čan pwɔ̀ɔ “sich rühmen, prahlen” [Jng. 1963, 61] ǀ (?) NBauchi *čamʷ- [assim. < *čanʷ-?] “to like, desire, love” [GT]: Jimbin sam-, Miya čam-, Kariya čam-, Mburku čamw-, Tsagu čōm (NBauchi: Skn. 1977, 29). For Eg.-Ar. see Leslau (1962, 46, #9). Or cp. Sem. *√dl “to praise” [Zbr. 1971, 58, #33] ||| Eg. dw3 [< *dwl] “preisen” (OK, Wb IV 426-428) ||| WCh.: Bole-Tangale *ndāl- “to love, like” [Stl. 1987, 248, #19]. Or cf. the history of IE *prei-.

= *im(m)i [Stl. 2002, 273, #23] = *ē-mĭhĭh ~ *ē-măhĭh (?) [PAM] = *ʔimi/*yVmi, *ʔimaw-ən (Anlaut *-i- stable) [Mlt. 2005, 370, §56] = *i-miH [GT] ‖ SCu.: (?) Ma'a muǫ́ ~ muho, pl. miǫ "Mund" [Mnh. 1906, 315] = muʔo "mouth" [Ehret 1980, 387] ||| PCh. *m-(k) "mouth" [JS 1981, 187B] = *m-y "mouth" [JI 1994 I 122] = *maw/y/ʔ- [Stl. 2002, 273, #23].

• **ECu. *ḥanḍur-/*ḥunḍur-** "navel" [Sasse 1979, 24] cannot be related to any of the synonymous Agaw terms (Bilin ʔətəb rather ~ Bed. tefa "navel", Kemant gwəmbəra < ES, cf. Geez ḥənbərt) as Appleyard (2006, 104) speculates. A comparison with Eg. ḥnt3 [reg. < *ḥnṯr] "ein Teil der Brust am Brustbein" (Med., Wb III 122, 8) = "Brustbein, sternum" (GHWb 543) is perhaps also to be ruled out. The ECu. evidence (Saho & Afar ḥundub are only derivable from *ḤVnḍ-ub-) and NOm.: Kefoid (Gonga) *yund-o "navel" [GT]: Kafa and Mocha yund-o, Wombera yund-/ǯund-a (NOm.: Flm. 1987, 159; ECu.-NOm.: Blz. 1989 MS Om., 23, #79) indicate that the C_4 was an extension.

• **NAgaw *nan** "now" [Apl. 2006, 106]: akin to Eg. nn "hier, da" (PT, Wb II 274, 3-4) ||| WCh.: Hausa naŋ "1. this, these (near at hand), 2. here" [Abr. 1962, 698] | Daffo-Butura nàn ~ nànní "hier" [Jng. 1970, 219] = (á)naní "here" [Seibert 2000 MS, d004], Dera néne "hier" [Jng. 1966 MS, 12] = nénè "here" [Kidda 1991 MS, 7], Tangale nę́ŋę "here" [Jng. 1991, 123].

• **NAgaw *gän-** "to be old, grow old" [Apl. 2006, 106]: cognate with ECu. *gān- "1. to become old, grow, 2. big" [Sasse 1982, 73, 78] ‖ SCu.: Dhl. gə̀n-o "big, large" [Ehret 1980, 236] = gə́n-o "big" [Tosco] ||| NOm. *gēn-/*genn- "1. old, 2. revered" [GT] (Cu.-Om.: Dlg. 1972, 202; 1973, 211) ||| ES *gnn "to be abundant" [Lsl.]: Tigre gänna & Tna. gänänä "to exceed the measure", Amh. gännänä "to be abundant", gene "the big one", Gurage-Wolane genä (quṭäl) "large (leaf of the äsät in which dough is placed)" (Sem.: Lsl. 1979 III 281, 284) ||| Eg. gn "angesehen, mächtig sein" (PT, Wb V 173, 3) = "*mächtig, *angesehen, *geschichtswürdig, *historabel sein" (ÄWb I 1368) ||| WCh.: Angas-Sura *kun, pl. *kʷan "1. great, 2. long" [GT 2004, 182]: Angas ko-kun "to grow" [Ormsby 1914, 209] = kun "greatness, honour" [Flk. 1915, 222] = kun "1. groß, alt, reif werden; 2. groß machen, ehren" [Jng. 1962 MS, 20] = kun (sg.), kwān (pl.) "to be or grow older or taller" [Gcl. 1994, 48, 74], Kofyar kùn "long in length" [Ntg. 1967, 20], Chip kun-kun "long" [Krf.], Montol kun "long, tall" [Ftp. 1911, 218, 220]. See also Bmh. 1986, 252 (Eg.-Sem.-ECu.).

• **NAgaw *bəz-** "to open, undo" [Apl. 1989; 2006, 108] = *biz- "to open" [Apl. 1991] = "öffnen, aufdecken" [Rn.] = *bəz- "to open" [Ehret 1987, #207]: cognate with ES: Tigre bzz: ʔabzäzä "ouvrir grand les yeux" [DRS 54] ||| NBrb.: Qabyle bžeḥ "être ouvert à tout vents, ni abrité, ni caché" [DRB I 44] ||| Eg. bz "1. einführen, 2. Zutritt haben zu jem., 3. eintreten in einen Ort, eindringen" (OK, Wb I 473, 1-18) ||| WCh.: Hausa bázà "to spread out to dry, spread (rumors, etc.)" [Abr. 1962, 94] | Jimbin mbu̱z-, Siri bû̱u "to untie" (NBch.: Skn. 1977, 47) < AA *b-Z (*-ʒ/ǯ) "to open" [GT]. The same root is preserved in PAA *biʒ- "opening" [GT] > NBrb.: (???) Iznasen bezza "bouche (sens trivial)" [Rns. 1932, 292; DRB I 148] = bəzza [SISAJa I, #67] (unless a *Kinderwort*) ||| NAgaw: Hamta biz-á́ "porta" [CR 1905, 209], Hamtanga bíz-a "door" [Apl. 1987,

500] = biz-a “door” [Apl. 1991 MS, 4] = bəz-a “mouth” [Leyew 1994, 4] = biz-ā “door” [Apl. 1996, 14] ||| PCh. *bizV “opening” [GT]: WCh.: Guruntum bìiza, Tala pìsaa [< *biz-] “door, gate” (SBch.: Csp. 1994, 19) || ECh.: Mokilko bízé “1. Öffnung, 2. Mund, 3. Rand” [Lks. 1975, 224; 1977, 222 & 224] = bízé “bouche, bec, lèvre” [Jng. 1990, 66].

• **NAgaw *bä[r]-** [GT] > Bilin bära “outside” [Apl.]: Appleyard (2006, 108) takes it – along with Kemant mäya “outside” – from *bäd- ~ Bilin bäda “wilderness, uninhabited land” (< ES). But these are entirely distinct AA roots. For Bilin bära cf. AA *b-r “outside” [GT] > Sem.: (?) Ug. b-br “outside (?)” [Alb. 1943, 41, fn. 20; Gaster 1944, 21], OAram. br “hors de, excepté” [DRS], Palmyran and Nabataean bry “extérieur” [DRS], EAram. brʔ “hinaus” [GB], NSyr. bārā, bāri, bārāi “hors de, excepté” [DRS] || Ar. barrā, barraⁿ, dial. barraˁ “Außen” [Hess 1923, 223, fn. 1] | MSA: Hrs. barra “outside” [Jns.], Jbl. burr “far away desert” [Jns.], Mhr. abárr “outside” [Jns.], ba-barr “dehors” [Lsl.], Sqt. bar “côté” [Lsl.] (MSA: Lsl. 1938, 98; Jns. 1981, 27; 1987, 51) || ES: Tigre bär “dehors” [DRS] (Sem.: DRS 87) ||| (?) Eg. br.w, var. bnr.w ~ bnr [act. *bl] “das Außen” (XVIII., Wb I 461, 1-11) = “outside” (FD 83) ||| ECu. *bVr- “outside” [GT]: HECu. *bīr- [GT]: Kambatta bír-ā “fuori” [Crl.], Hadiyya bír-a “the outside (наружное пространство)” [PB apud Dlg.] vs. bīr-a “outwards (наружу)”, bīr-ínne “from outside (снаружи)” [Dlg.] = bīr-a “outside, exterior” [Hds. 1989, 272] | Yaaku bor “outside” [Grb. & Hobley] (ECu.: Dlg. 1973, 202) ||| SOm.: (?) Ari bur “after, beyond” [Tully] = “outside” [Hyw.] = “relational particle” [Bnd. 1991, 101] ||| WCh.: (?) Hausa bàaréé “stranger” [Abr. 1962, 81] || CCh.: Bura abila [l reg. < *r] “1. (adv.) out(side), 2. (prep.) outside” [BED 1953, 1] | Fali-Bwagira -bura “outside” [Skn.] | PMatakam (Mafa-Mada) *bra → *vra “outside” [GT]: Uldeme bərà “dehors” [Clm. 1990, 206] = brạ “dehors” [Mch.], Gisiga vra, vre, vri “draußen, heraus” [Lks. 1970, 137, cf. also Jng. 1992-3, 120], Mada ávra “dehors”, á varvá “dehors, à l’intérieur” [Brt.-Brunet 2000, 259] = vərvạ “dehors” [Mch.], Zelgwa brạ “dehors” [Mch.], Balda vərà “vers l’extérieur” [Trn. 1987, 56] (MM: Mch. 1953, 182) | Masa (Banana) burwa “outside” [Skn.].

• **Kemant ḫʷäla** “penis” [Apl.]: no parallels given by Appleyard (2006, 110). Kemant ḫʷäl- regularly originates from PAgaw *qʷäl-, which is – due to Agaw *qʷ- < AA *ḳʷ- – an irregular correspondence of Eg. ṯ3 [reg. < *kʷl] (phallus det.) “Mann” (OK, Wb V 344-5) ||| WCh.: Pero kpállè [kp- reg. < *kʷ-] “penis” [Frj. 1985, 37] || CCh. *kʷalV “penis” [GT]: Bura kwâl, Chibak kwalä, Ngwahyi kwəl, Margi kwal | Higi-Nkafa kwala, Higi-Fali kwəla, Fali-Jilbu kwəlàkū | Nzangi kwərə, Mwulyen kwáàló | Kotoko-Makeri kòlí (CCh.: Krf. quoted by Mkr. 1987, 284) < AA *kʷal- (var. *ḳʷal-?) “penis” [GT].

• **Agaw *ʔənkʷər-** “to put, place” [Apl. 2006, 112] has nothing to do with the semantically unlikely ECu. *gŭr- “to collect” (via prefixed *mV-gur- > Agaw *ʔənkʷər-) as Appleyard (l.c.) insists. Instead, one is tempted to assume that *ʔən- was not part of the original root (**kʷər-), but an additional element (an old refl. prefix?), cp. Sem. *krr “to lay” [GT]: Akk. karāru “setzen, stellen, legen” [AHW 447] || Tigre kärära “to lie” [Lsl. 1964, 117] (Akk.-Tigre: Lsl. l.c.) ||| SOm.: Hamer (Galila) kari “place” [Bnd. 1994, 156] ||| Ch. *karə “to carry” [Nwm. 1977, 24, #24] = *k-r- “to load” [NM 1966, 237].

• **Agaw *sär-/*sar-** “red” [Apl.]: no cognates listed by Appleyard (2006, 114). May be akin to WCh.: Daffo-Butura šaaṛ “rot weden, sein”, šaṛán “rot” [Jng. 1970, 221]. This isogloss may have preserved the original biconsonantal root attested in Sem. *ŝrḳ “to be red” [GB 794; Lsl. 1987, 534] and perhaps eventually Eg. dšr “rot (sein)” (PT, Wb V 488-490) with a prefix d- (cf. Thausing 1941)? For Eg.-Sem. see Alb. 1918, 234-5; Ember 1930, §19.a.9 (with a different and unacceptable explanation of Sem. *-ḳ ~ Eg. d-, though).
• **NAgaw *k^{w}ər-a** “river” [Apl.]: cannot be related to ECu. *gol- “valley, slope” [Sasse 1982, 83] as Appleyard (2006, 116) suggests. Instead, cp. rather LECu.: Oromo kur-ē (hence Amh. kure, Harari kūri) “river, stream” [IS/Witczak] ||| Eg. ṯ3.w [reg. < *k^{w}r.w] (als Plural, parallel zu mw “Wasser”) (PT, Wb V 342, 13) ||| ECh.: Chire (dial. of Gabri) koray “river” [IS] | Somray króói “Fluß” (related to kúroi “Schiff”?) [Lks. 1937, 79, 83] | Sokoro kóroo “Teich” [Lks. 1937, 35] | Jegu kúráayé “der See” [Jng. 1961, 114] (Ch.: Mkr. 1987, 299 with further cognates). The position of WCh.: AS *kur (in compound with *ʔam “water”) “deep water” [GT 2004, 183][20] is dubious (for Agaw-Angas-ECh. see also IS 1971, #177 adopted by Witczak 1992, 41).
• **NAgaw *q^{w}al-/*qal-** “to see” [Apl. 1991, 19; 2006, 118]: Dolgopol’skij (1973, 81) compared it with LECu.: Somali qollāli- “to look around (смотреть вокруг, оглядываться)”. Cp. further Eg. q3q3 [reg. < *qlql] “blicken (zum Himmel)” (late NK, Wb V 14, 4; GHWb 850) = “to look (up), ‚tower’” (DLE IV 4) ||| Brb. *V-ḳḳVl “regarder” [GT] (Brb.: Bst. 1887, 401-2) ||| WCh.: Hausa ḳwálḳwàléé “to investigate” [Abr. 1962, 580], cf. also Hausa ḳáláílàíčéé [*-tē] “to examine minutely” [Abr. 1962, 459] = “to examine thoroughly, be expert in” [Hodge 1968, 22]. See also OS 1992, 176 (Agaw-Som.-Eg.-ECh.).
• **NAgaw *fäz-** “to sow” [Apl. 1987, 505; 1989 MS, 9; 1991 MS, 11]: no cognates were given by Appleyard (2006, 119). Presumably connected (with irregular *-z- < AA *-č-?) to AA *p-(y)-č “1. to scatter (e.g. seed), 2. sow” [GT]: Eg. pjs (GW, corn det.) “*Saat (die einzutreten ist oder vom Feld Eingebrachtes, Korn)” (late NK, GHWb 274) ||| NBrb. *a-yfs, pl. *i-yfs-an “seed” [GT]: NBrb.: Shilh i-fs-an “Saat, Samen” [Mkr.] | Tamazight (Beraber) i-fs-ān “semence” [Lst.], Ndir i-fs-an “sowing seeds” [Pnc. 1973, 105] | Mzab ə-fsa “répandre, verser” [Dlh. 1984, 54] | Nefusa a-ifs “semence” [Lst. 1931, 294] || SBrb. *ta-yfəs-t [GT]: Ahaggar tê-fes-t [*ta-yfas-t], pl. tê-fs-în “semence (de végétal)” [Fcd. 1951-2, 362], Ghat či-fes-t “semence” [Nhl. 1909, 205] (Brb.: Mkr. 1969, 48, #40.1) || HECu.: Alaba fīšu “seed” [Bnd. 1971, 244, #70] || SCu.: Alagwa pas-it- “to scatter (intr.)”, pisari “seed”, Burunge pisagariya “seed” (WRift: Ehret 1980, 161, #1) ||| WCh.: Hausa fáčá-fáčá (f) “scattering” [Abr. 1962, 240].

---

[20] Attested in Angas kŭr “a deep pool, out of depth, which lasts all the year round” [Flk. 1915, 223] = kur ʔàm (Ks) “deep pool” [Jng. 1962 MS, 20] = kur am “lake, sea” [ALC 1978, 28] = kur-àm [kuřàm] “lake” [Krf.], Sura kur “lake” [Krf.], Msr. kur “deep” [Jng. 1999 MS, 8] = kur ~ kuur “deep”, am kur “deeply water” [Dkl. 1997 MS, 129].

Abbreviations of languages and related terms

(A): Ahmimic dialect of Coptic, AA: Afro-Asiatic (Semito-Hamitic), Akk.: Akkadian, Alg.: Alagwa, Amh.: Amhara, Ar.: Arabic, Aram.: Aramaic, AS: Angas-Sura, (B) Bohairic dialect of Coptic, BAram.: Biblical Aramaic, Bch.: Bauchi, Bed.: Bed'awye (Beja), Brb.: Berber, Brg.: Burunge, BT: Bole-Tangale, C: Central, Ch.: Chadic, Cpt.: Coptic, CT: Coffin Texts, Cu.: Cushitic, Dem.: Demotic, Dhl.: Dahalo, E: East, Ebl.: Eblaite, Eg.: Egyptian, ES: Ethio-Semitic, ESA: Epigraphic South Arabian, Eth.: Ethiopian, Eth.-Sem.: Ethio-Semitic, (F): Fayyumic dialect of Coptic, Gdm.: Ghadames, GR: Ptolemaic and Roman period, Grg.: Gurage, Grw.: Gorowa, H: Highland (in Cushitic), Hbr.: Hebrew, Hgr.: Ahaggar, Hrs.: Harsusi IE: Indo-European, Irq.: Iraqw, JAram.: Jewish or Judeo-Aramaic, Jbl.: Jibbali, L: Late or Low(land), Lit.: literary texts, lit.: literature, LP: Late Period, M: Middle, Mag.: magical texts, Math.: mathematical papyri, mB: Middle Babylonian, Med.: medical texts, MK: Middle Kingdom, MSA: Modern South Arabian, N: New, N: North, NE (or NEg.): New Egyptian, Nil.: Nilotic, NK: New Kingdom, NS: Nilo-Saharan, O: Old, OK: Old Kingdom, Om.: Omotic, OSA: Old South Arabian, OT: Old Testament, P: Proto-, PB: Post-Biblical, PT: Pyramid Texts, Qwd.: Qwadza, S: South, (S): Sahidic, Sab.: Sabaean, Sem.: Semitic, Sqt.: Soqotri, Syr.: Syriac, TA(ram).: Aramaic of Talmud, Ug.: Ugaritic, W: West, Wlm.: Tawllemmet.

Abbreviations of author names

Abr.: Abraham, AJ: Alio & Jungraithmayr, Alb.: Albright, AMS: Amborn & Minker & Sasse, Apl.: Appleyard, Bgn.: Beguinot, BK: Bieberstein Kazimirsky, Blv.: Belova, Blz.: Blažek, Bmh.: Bomhard, Bnd.: Bender, Brt.: Barreteau, Bst.: Basset, Chn.: Cohen, Clc.: Calice, Clm.: Colombel, Cpr.: Caprile, CR: Conti Rossini, Crl.: Cerulli, Csp.: Cosper, Ctc.: Caitucoli, Djk.: D'jakonov, Dlg.: Dolgopolsky, Dlh.: Delheure, EEN: Ehret & Elderkin & Nurse, Ehr.: Ehret, Fcd.: Foucauld, Fdr.: Fédry, Flk.: Foulkes, Flm.: Fleming, Frj.: Frajzyngier, Ftp.: Fitzpatrick, GB: Gesenius & Buhl, Gcl.: Gochal, Grb.: Greenberg, Gsp.: Gasparini, GT: Takács, Hds.: Hudson, Hfm.: Hoffmann, Hhn.: Hohenberger, HL: Haberland & Lamberti, Hlw.: Hellwig, HRV: Heine & Rottland & Voßen, Hsk.: Hoskison, Htz.: Hetzron, Hyw.: Hayward, Ibr.: Ibriszimow, IL: Institute of Linguistics, IS: Illič-Svityč, JA: Jungraithmayr & Adams, Jgr.: Jaggar, JI: Jungraithmayr & Ibriszimow, Jng.: Jungraithmayr, Jns.: Johnstone, JS: Jungraithmayr & Shimizu, JW: Jansen-Winkeln, KB: Koehler & Baumgartner, KM: Kießling & Mous, Krf.: Kraft, Ksm.: Kossmann, Lks.: Lukas, Lmb.: Lamberti, LR: Louali-Raynal, Lsl.: Leslau, Lst.: Laoust, Mch.: Mouchet, LT: Lamberti & Tonelli, Mkr.: Mukarovsky, Mlt.: Militarev, Mnh.: Meinhof, Mrc.: Mercier, Mts.: Matsushita, Nhl.: Nehlil, NM: Newman & Ma, Ntg.: Netting, Nwm.: Newman, OS: Orel & Stolbova, PAM: Prasse & Alojaly & Mohamed, Pnc.: Penchoen, Prh.: Porhomovsky, Prs.: Prasse, RK: Reutt & Kogan, Rn.: Reinisch, Rpr.: Roper, Sbr.: Siebert, Scn.: Sachnine, Skn.: Skinner, Slk.: Sölken, Smz.: Shimizu, Srl.: Sirlinger, Ss.: Sasse, Stl.: Stolbova, Str.: Strümpell, Strm.: Stroomer, Sts.: Starostin, Stz.: Satzinger, Tf.: Taifi, Trn.: Tourneux, Vcl.: Vycichl, Vrg.: Vergote, Wdk.: Wedekind, Wlf.: Wölfel, Wtl.: Whiteley, Zbr.: Zaborski, Zhl.: Zyhlarz.

Quoted literature

Abraham, R.C.: Dictionary of the Hausa Language.[2] London, 1962., University of London Press.

Abraham, R.C.: Somali-English Dictionary.[2] London, 1964., University of London Press Ltd.

AHW = Soden, W. von: Akkadisches Handwörterbuch. I-III. Wiesbaden, 1965-1981., Otto Harrassowitz.

AL I-III = Meeks, D.: Année lexicographique. Égypte ancienne. Tome 1-3 (1977-1979). 2ème édition. Paris, 1998., Cybele.

Albright, W.F.: Review of The Eighth Campaign of Sargon. = Journal of the American Oriental Society 36 (1916), 226-232.

Albright, W.F.: Notes on Egypto-Semitic Etymology. II. = American Journal of Semitic Languages and Literatures 34/4 (1918), 215-255.

Albright, W.F.: The Principles of Egyptian Phonological Development. = Recueil de Travaux Relatifs à la Philologie et à l'Archéologie Égyptiennes et Assyriennes 40 (1923), 64-70.

Albright, W.F.: Notes on Egypto-Semitic Etymology. III. = Journal of the American Oriental Society 47 (1927), 198-237.

Albright, W.F.: The Furniture of El in Canaanite Mythology. = Bulletin of the American School of Oriental Research 91 (1943), 39-44.

ALC 1978 = Angas Language Committee (in Cooperation with Nigeria Bible Translation Trust): Shə̀k nkarŋ kè shəktok mwa nḍən Ngas. Ngas–Hausa–English Dictionary with Appendix Showing Some Features of Ngas Grammar. Jos, Nigeria, 1978., Nigeria Bible Translation Trust.

Alio, Kh.: Wordlist of Gàlèmbí. MS. 1988 (?).

Alio, Kh.: Wordlist of Ngamo. MS. 1988 (?).

Alio, Kh.: Wordlist of Karekare. MS. 1988 and 1991 (?).

Alio, Kh. & Jungraithmayr, H.: Lexique bidiya. Frankfurt am Main, 1989., Vittorio Klostermann.

Amborn, H.; Minker, G.; Sasse, H.-J.: Das Dullay. Materialen zu einer ostkuschitischen Sprachgruppe. Berlin, 1980., Reimer Verlag.

Appleyard, D.: The Internal Classification of the Agaw Languages. A Comparative and Historical Phonology. = Bynon, J. (ed.): Current Progress in Afro-Asiatic Linguistics. Amsterdam, Philadelphia, 1984., John Benjamins. Pp. 33-67.

Appleyard, D.: A Grammatical Sketch of Khamtanga – II. = Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies 50 (1987), 470-507.

Appleyard, D.: Agaw and Omotic Links. The Evidence of the Lexicon. MS. Paper presented at the 2nd International Symposium on Cushitic and Omotic Languages, Torino, November 1989. Proceedings forthcoming.

Appleyard, D.: Agaw Vocabulary Comparative Notes. MS. London, 1989. 24 p.

Appleyard, D.: The Vowel Systems of Agaw: Reconstruction and Historical Inferences. = Proceedings of the Fifth International Hamito-Semitic Congress. Band II. Wien, 1991., Afro-Pub. Pp. 13-28.

Appleyard, D.: A Comparative Agaw Wordlist. MS. London, 1991. 13 p.

Appleyard, D.: A Falasha Prayer Text in Agaw. = Goldenberg, G. & Raz, Sh. (eds.): Semitic and Cushitic Studies. Wiesbaden, 1994., Otto Harrassowitz. Pp. 206-251.

Appleyard, D.: Preparing a Comparative Dictionary of Agaw. MS. Paper presented at the III. Kuschitisten- und Omotistenkongress, Berlin, March 1994. 4 p.

Appleyard, D.: The Position of Agaw within Cushitic. = Zemánek, P. (ed.): Studies in Near Eastern Languages and Literatures. Memorial Volume for Karel Petráček. Praha, 1996., Academy of Sciences of the Czech Republic, Oriental Institute. Pp. 1-14.

Appleyard, D.: 'Kaïliña' – A 'New' Agaw Dialect and Its Implications for Agaw Dialectology. = Hayward, R.J. & Lewis, I.M. (eds.): Voice and Power. The Culture of Language in North-East Africa. London, 1996., SOAS. Pp. 1-19.

Appleyard, D.: Comparative Agaw Dictionary. MS. Printout of 3 February 2005. 130 p.

Appleyard, D.: A Comparative Dictionary of the Agaw Languages. Köln, 2006., Rüdiger Köppe Verlag.

ÄWb I = Hannig, R.: Ägyptisches Wörterbuch I. Altes Reich und Erste Zwischenzeit. Hannig-Lexica 4. Mainz am Rhein, 2003., Verlag Philipp von Zabern.

Badawy, A.: Philological Evidence About Methods of Construction in Ancient Egypt. = ASAE 54 (1956-57), 51-74.

Barreteau, D.: Description du mofu-gudur. Langue de la famille tchadique parlée au Cameroun. Livre II. Lexique. Paris, 1988., Éditions de l'ORSTOM.

Barreteau, D. & Jungraithmayr, H.: Les verbes monoradicaux dans les langues tchadiques. = Jungraithmayr, H. & Tourneux, H. (eds.): Études tchadiques. Verbes monoradicaux suivis d'une note sur la negation en haoussa. Actes de la XIIème réunion de Groupe d'Études Tchadiques LACITO-CNRS--PARIS. Paris, 1990., Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geuthner. Pp. 37-214.

Barreteau, D. & Brunet, A.: Dictionnaire Mada. Berlin, 2000., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

Basset, R.: Loqmân berbère avec quatre glossaires et une étude sur la légende de Loqmân. Paris, 1890., Ernest Leroux.

Basset, A.: Le nom de la "porte" en berbère. = Mélanges René Basset. Tome II. Paris, 1925., Éditions Ernest Leroux. Pp. 1-16.

Basset, A.: Études de géographie linguistique en kabyle. (I. Sur quelques termes berbères concernant le corps humain). Paris, 1929., Libraririe Ernest Leroux.

Basset, A.: La langue berbère. Morphologie. La verbe: étude de thèmes. Collection du centenairie de l'Algerie. Paris, 1929., Librairie Ernest Leroux.

Basset, R.: Notes de lexicographie berbère. = Journal Asiatique. Ser. VIII, vol. 10 (1887), 365-464.

Basset, R.: Le dialecte de Syouah. Paris, 1890., Ernest Leroux.

BED = Anonymous: Bura-English Dictionary. (Place unknown), 1953., (publisher unnamed). Master copy in the library of the Seminar für Afrikanische Sprachen und Kulturen der Universität Hamburg (inv. no.: 15 748 / JT 1526).

Behnk, F.: Über die Beziehungen des Ägyptischen zu den hamitischen Sprachen. = Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft 82 (1928), 136-141.

Bell, C. R. V.: The Somali Language.[2] London, 1969., Longmans, Green and Co.

Belova, A.G.: Struktura kornja v drevneegipetskom i semitskih jazykah. = Piłaszewicz, S. and Tulisow J. (eds.): Problemy języków Azji i Afryki. Warszawa, 1987., Wydawnictwo Polskiej Akademii Nauk. Pp. 275-282.

Belova, A.G.: K voprosu o rekonstrukcii semitskogo kornevogo vokalizma. = Voprosy Jazykoznanija 6 (1993), 28-56.

Bender, M.L.: The Languages of Ethiopia. A New Lexicostatistic Classification and Some Problems of Diffusion. = Anthropological Linguistics 13/5 (1971), 165-288.

Bender, M.L.: Word and Phrase List for Fieldwork in Western Ethiopia (rev. 1974). Chara I. MS. 1974.

Bender, M.L.: Proto-Omotic Phonology and Lexicon. = Bechhaus-Gerst, M.; Serzisko, F. (eds.): Cushitic-Omotic. Papers from the First International Symposium on Cushitic and Omotic Languages, Cologne, January 6-9, 1986. Hamburg, 1988., Helmut Buske Verlag. Pp. 121-159.

Bender, M.L.: A Survey of Omotic Grammemes. = Baldi, Ph. (ed.): Linguistic Change and Reconstruction Methodology. Berlin, New York, 1990., Walter de Gruyter. Pp. 661-695.

Bender, M.L.: Comparative Aroid (South Omotic) Syntax and Morphosyntax. = Afrika und Übersee 74 (1991), 87-110.

Bender, M.L.: Aroid (South Omotic) Lexicon.= Afrikanistische Arbeitspapiere 38 (1994), 133-162.

Bender, M.L.: The Mystery Languages of Ethiopia. = Marcus, H. (ed.): New Trends in Ethiopian Studies. Vol. 1. Lawrenceville, 1994., Red Sea Press. Pp. 1153-1174.

Biberstein Kazimirski, A. de: Dictionnaire arabe-français. Paris, 1860., Maisonneuve & Co. Editeurs.

BIFAO = Bulletin de l'Institut Français d'Archéologie Orientale (Le Caire).

Blachère, R. & Chouémi, M. & Denizeau, C. & Pellat, Ch.: Dictionnaire arabe-français-anglais (Langue classique et moderne). Tome I-III. Paris, 1967-1976., Maisonneuve et Larose.

Blažek, V.: Some Notes About New Korean Etymologies of G.J. Ramstedt. = ArOr 55 (1987), 156-161.

Blažek, V.: Omotic Lexicon in Afroasiatic Perspective: Body Parts Cognates. MS. Paper presented at the 2nd International Symposium on Cushitic and Omotic Languages (Torino, November 1989). 41 p.

Blažek, V.: Kartvelian Material in Nostratic Lexicon: New Etymologies II. = Shevoroshkin, V. (ed.): Nostratic, Dene-Caucasian, Austric and Amerind. Bochum, 1992., Brockmeyer. Pp. 129-148.

Blažek, V.: Emotions in Nostratic Lexicon. = Sborník Prací Filozofické Fakulty Brněnské Univerzity. Řada Jazykovědná 40 (1992), 135-146.

Blažek, V.: Who Are You, Homo Sapiens Sapiens? = Human Affairs 2/2 (1992), 138-149.

Blažek, V.: Toward the Position of Bed'awye within Afroasiatic. An Analysis of the Body Parts Terminology. MS. Printout in Köln, March 1994. 49 p.

Blažek, V.: The New Dravidian-Afroasiatic Lexical Parallels. = Starostin, S.A. (ed.): Problemy izučenija dal'nego rodstva jazykov an rubeže tret'ego tysjacheletija. Doklady i tezisy naučnoj konferencii (Moskva, 29 maja – 2 ijunja 2000 g.). Moskva, 2000., Rossijskij Gosudarstvennyj Gumanitarnyj Universitet. Pp. 180-193.

Blažek, V.: Fragment of a Comparative and Etymological Dictionary of Beja Anatomical Lexicon. MS. 2000. 90 p.

Blažek, V.: The New Dravidian-Afroasiatic Lexical Parallels. Full version. MS. Paper presented at the Conference "Problemy izučenija dal'nego rodstva jazykov an rubeže tret'ego tysjačeletija" (Moscow, 29 May – 2 June 2000). 26 p.

Blažek, V.: Beja Colour Terminology in a Comparative-Etymological View. MS. 2000. 5 p.

Blažek, V.: Beja Kinship and Social Terminology. MS. 2000. 11 p.

Blažek, V.: Flora in Beja Lexicon. MS. 2000. 8 p.

Blažek, V.: Fauna in Beja Lexicon. MS. 2000. 27 p.

Bomhard, A.R.: Common Indo-European/Afroasiatic Roots. Supplement 1. = General Linguistics 26 (1986), 225-257.

Büchner, H.: Vokabulare des Sprachen in und um Gava (Nordnigerien). = Afrika und Übersee 48 (1964), 36-45.

CAD = The Assyrian Dictionary of the Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago. Vol. 1-21. Glückstadt & Chicago, Since 1956, J.J. Augustin, The Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago.

Caïtucoli, C.: Schèmes tonals et morphologie du verbe en masa. = Caprile, J.-P. & Jungraithmayr, H. (eds.): Préalables à la reconstruction du proto-tchadique. Paris, 1978., SELAF. Pp. 67-87.

Caïtucoli, C.: Lexique masa. Paris, 1983., Agence de Coopération Culturelle et Technique.

Caprile, J.-P.: Lexique tumak-français (Tchad). Berlin, 1975., Verlag von Dietrich Reimer.

Castellino, G.R.: Relazione introduttiva.= Atti della Terza Giornata di Studi Camito-Semitici e Indoeuropei. Roma, 1984., Università degli Studi "La Sapienzia". Pp. 8-18.

CD = Crum, W.E.: A Coptic Dictionary. Oxford, 1939., Oxford, 1939., Oxford University Press.

CED = Černý, J.: Coptic Etymological Dictionary. London, Cambridge, 1976., Cambridge University Press.

Cerulli, E.: Note su alcune popolazioni sidāmā dell'Abissinia meridionale II: i Sidama dell'Omo. = Rivista degli Studi Orientali 12 (1929), 1-69.

Cerulli, E.: Studi etiopici. III. Il linguaggio dei Giangerò ed alcune lingue Sidama dell'Omo (Basketo, Ciara, Zaissè). Roma, 1938., Istituto per l'Oriente.

Cerulli, E.: Studi etiopici. IV. La lingua caffina. Roma, 1951., Istituto per l'Oriente.

Ceugney, C.: Du rôle de m préfixe en égyptien. = Recueil de Travaux Relatifs à la Philologie et à la Archéologie Égyptiennes et Assyriennes 2 (1880), 1-9.

Cohen, M.: Essai comparatif sur le vocabulaire et la phonétique du chamito-sémitique. Paris, 1947., Librairie Ancienne Honore Champion.

Colombel, V. de: Evolution du système verbal en linguistique tchadique: synchronie dynamique et diachronie. = Mukarovsky, H.G. (ed.): Proceedings of the Fifth International Hamito-Semitic Congress. Band I. Wien, 1990., Afro-Pub. Pp. 199-212.

Conti Rossini, C.: Note sugli agau. 1. Appunti sulla lingua khamta dell'Averghellé. = Giornale della Società Asiatica Italiana 17/2a (1905), 183-242.

Conti Rossini, C.: La langue des Kemant en Abyssinie. Wien, 1912., Alfred Hölder.

Conti Rossini, C.: Schizzo del dialetto saho dell'alta Assaorta in Eritrea. Roma, 1913., Tipografia della R. Accademia dei Lincei.

Cosper, R.: South Bauchi Lexicon. A Wordlist of Nine South Bauchi (Chadic) Languages and Dialects. Halifax, 1994., The Author (Saint Mary's University).

DCT = Molen, R. van der: A Hieroglyphic Dictionary of Egyptian Coffin Texts. Leiden, 2000., E.J. Brill.

DED = Burrow, T.; Emeneau, M.B.: A Dravidian Etymological Dictionary. Oxford, 1961., Clarendon Press.

DELC = Vycichl, W.: Dictionnaire étymologique de la langue copte. Leuven, 1983., Peeters.

Delheure, J.: Dictionnaire mozabite-français. Paris, 1984., Société d'Études Linguistiques et Anthropologique de France (SELAF).

D'jakonov, I.M.: Semitohamitskie jazyki. Opyt klassifikacii. Moskva, 1965., Nauka.

Diakonoff, I.M.: Problems of Root Structure in Proto-Semitic. = Archív Orientální 38 (1970), 453-480.

Diakonoff, I.M. with assistence by Militarev, A.Ju. & Stolbova, O.V.: Proto-Afrasian and Old Akkadian. MS. Leningrad, around 1986. Published in the Journal of Afroasiatic Languages 4/1 (1992).

DLE = Lesko, L.H.: A Dictionary of Late Egyptian. Volume I, II, III, IV. Berkeley, 1982., 1984., 1987., 1989. B.C. Scribe Publications.

Dolgopol'skij, A.B.: Materialy po sravnitel'no-istoričeskoj fonetike kušitskih jazykov. Gubnye i dental'nye smyčnye v načal'nom položenii. = Uspenskij, B.A. (ed.): Jazyki Afriki. Voprosy struktury, istorii i tipologii. Moskva, 1966., Nauka. Pp. 35-88.

Dolgopol'skij, A.B.: Materialy po sravnitel'no-istoričeskoj fonetike kušitskih jazykov. Veljarnyj zvonkij v anlaute. = Ohotina, N.V. & Uspenskij, B.A. (eds.): Problemy afrikanskogo jazykoznanija. Tipologija, komparativistika, opisanie jazykov. Moskva, 1972., Nauka. Pp. 197-216.

Dolgopol'skij, A.B.: Sravnitel'no-istoričeskaja fonetika kušitskih jazykov. Moskva, 1973., Nauka.

Dolgopolsky, A.: Semitic and East Cushitic. Sound Correspondences and Cognate Sets. = Segert, S. & Bodrogligeti, A.J.E. (eds.): Ethiopian Studies Dedicated to Wolf Leslau. Wiesbaden, 1983., Otto Harrassowitz. Pp. 123-142.

Dolgopolsky, A.: Semitic Nomina Segolata in Ethiopic. = Goldenberg, G. (ed.): Ethiopian Studies: Proceedings of the Sixth International Conference, Tel Aviv, April 1980. Rotterdam, Boston, 1986., Balkema. Pp. 71-90.

Donohue, V.A.: Pr-nfr. = Journal of Egyptian Archaeology 64 (1978), 143-8.

DRB = Naït-Zerrad, K.: Dictionnaire des racines berbères. Leuven & Paris, since 1998, Peeters.

DRS = Cohen, D.: Dictionnaire des racines sémitiques ou attestées dans les langues sémitiques. Fascicules 1-2. Paris & La Haye, 1970-1976., Mouton. Fascicule 3-. Leuven, 1993-, Peeters. With continuous pagination.

Durand, O.: Problèmes de lexicologie berbèro-sémitique: la berbère préislamique. = RSO 67 (1993), 229-244.

Ebert, K.H.: Sprache und Tradition der Kera (Tschad). Teil II. Berlin, 1976., Dietrich Reimer.

EDE I = Takács, G.: Etymological Dictionary of Egyptian. Volume One: A Phonological Introduction. Leiden, 1999., E.J. Brill.

EDE II = Takács, G.: Etymological Dictionary of Egyptian. Volume Two: b-, p-, f-. Leiden, 2001., E.J. Brill.

EDE III = Takács, G.: Etymological Dictionary of Egyptian. Volume Three: m-. Leiden, 2008., E.J. Brill.

Ehret, Ch.: The Historical Reconstruction of Southern Cushitic Phonology and Vocabulary. Berlin, 1980., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

Ehret, Ch.: Kw'adza Vocabulary. MS. Los Angeles, Ca1ifornia, 1980. IV + 17 p.

Ehret, Ch.: Proto-Cushitic Reconstruction.= Sprache und Geschichte in Afrika 8 (1987).

Ehret, Ch.; Elderkin, E.D.; Nurse, D.: Dahalo Lexis and Its Sources. = Afrikanistische Arbeitspapiere 18 (1989), 5-49.

Ehret, Ch.: The Consonant Inventory of Proto-Eastern Cushitic. = Studies in African Linguistics 22/3 (1991), 211-275.

Ehret, Ch.: Reconstructing Proto-Afroasiatic (Proto-Afrasian). Vowels, Tone, Consonants, and Vocabulary. Berkeley, Los Angeles, California, 1995., University of California.

Eilers, W.: Semitische Wurzeltheorie. = Atti del Secondo Congresso Internazionale di Linguistica Camito-Semitica, Firenze, 16-19 aprile 1974. Firenze, 1978., Istituto di Linguistica e di Lingue Orientali, Università di Firenze. Pp. 125-131.

Ember, A.: Egypto-Semitic Studies. Leipzig, 1930., The Alexander Cohut Memorial Foundation.

FÄW(b) = Kahl, J.: Frühägyptisches Wörterbuch (unter Mitarbeit von M. Bretschneider und B. Kneißler). Wiesbaden, Lieferung 1-4. Wiesbaden, 2002-4., Harrassowitz.

FD = Faulkner, R.O.: A Concise Dictionary of Middle Egyptian. Oxford, 1962., Clarendon Press.

Fédry, J. (avec la collaboration de Khamis, J. & o/Nedjei, M.): Dictionnaire dangaleat (Tchad). Thése de 3ème cycle, Institut National des Langues et Civilisations Orientales. Lyon, 1971., Afrique et Langage.

Fédry, J.: Le dangaleat. = Perrot, J. (ed.): Les langues dans le monde ancien et moderne. Paris, 1981., Éditions du Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique. Pp. 445-454.

Fitzpatrick, J.F.J.: Some Notes on the Kwolla District and Its Tribes. = Journal of the Royal African Society 10 (1910-11), 16-52, 213-22.

Flad, M.: A Short Description of the Falasha and Kamants in Abyssinia together with an Outline of the Elements and a Vocabulary of the Falasha Language. Chrishona, 1866., Mission Press.

Fleming, H.C.: Omotic Overview. = Bender, M.L. (ed.): The Non-Semitic Languages of Ethiopia. East Lansing, 1976., Michigan State University. Pp. 299-323.

Fleming, H.C.: Proto-Gongan Consonant Phonemes: Stage One. = Mukarovsky, H.G. (ed.): Leo Reinisch. Werk und Erbe. Wien, 1987., Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften. Pp. 141-159.

Fleming, H.C.: Proto-South-Omotic or Proto-Somotic Consonant Phonemes: Stage One. = Bechhaus--Gerst, M. & Serzisko, F. (eds.): Cushitic-Omotic. Papers from the International Symposium on Cushitic and Omotic Languages, Cologne, January 6-9, 1986. Hamburg, 1988., Helmut Buske Verlag. Pp. 163-175.

Fleming, H.C.; Aklilu Yilma; Mitiku, A.; Hayward, R.; Miyawaki, Y.; Mikesh, P.; Seelig, J.M.: Ongota (Or) Birale. A Moribund Language of Gemu-Gofa (Ethiopia). = JAAL 3/3 (1992) or (1992-93), 181-225.

Foucauld, Ch. de: Dictionnaire touareg-français, dialecte de l'Ahaggar. Vol. I-IV. Paris, 1951-52., Imprimerie Nationale de France.

Foulkes, H.D.: Angass Manual. Grammar, Vocabulary. London, 1915., Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co.

Frajzyngier, Z.: A Pero-English and English-Pero Vocabulary. Berlin, 1985., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

Gasparini, A.: Sidamo-English Dictionary. Bologna, 1983., E.M.I.

Gaster, T.H.: The Furniture of El in Canaanite Mythology. = Bulletin of the American School of Oriental Research 93 (1944), 20-23.

GB = Gesenius, W. (bearbeitet von Buhl, F.): Hebräisches und aramäisches Handwörterbuch über das Alte Testment. Unveränderter Neudruck der 1915 erschienenen 17. Auflage. Berlin, Göttingen, Heidelberg, 1962., Springer-Verlag.

GD = Landberg, Le Comte de: Glossaire daṭînois. Vol. I-III. Leiden, 1920., 1923., 1942., E.J. Brill.

GHWb = Hannig, R.: Grosses Handwörterbuch Ägyptisch-Deutsch (2800-950 v. Chr.). Mainz, 1995., Verlag Philipp von Zabern.

Gochal, G.: A Look at Shik Ngas. Jos, 1994., Jos University Press.

Gouffé, C.: Contacts de vocabulaire entre le haoussa et le touareg. = Cohen, D. (ed.): Actes du Premier Congrés International de Linguistique Sémitique et Chamito-Sémitique, Paris, 16-19 juillet 1969. Paris, 1974., Mouton. Pp. 357-380.

Graefe, E.: Untersuchungen zur Wortfamilie bj3-. Dissertation, Universität zu Köln, 1971. 250 p.

Gragg, G.: Oromo Dictionary. East Lansing, Michigan, 1982., Michigan State University.

Greenberg, J.H.: The Patterning of Root Morphemes in Semitic. = Word 6 (1950), 162-181.

Greenberg, J.H.: The Languages of Africa. = International Journal of American Linguistics 29 (1963).

Haberland, E. & Lamberti, M.: Ibaaddo ka-Ba'iso. Culture and Language of the Ba'iso. Heidelberg, 1988., Carl Winter Universitätsverlag.

HAM = Westendorf, W.: Handbuch der altägyptischen Medizin. Leiden, 1999., Brill.

Haruna, A.: Cultural Vocabulary of Guruntum. MS. 27-30 December 1991 and 7-9 February 1992. 17 + 37 p.

Haruna, A.: Guruntum-English. MS. 1992 (?). 43 p.

Haruna, A.: Cultural Vocabulary of Bubure. MS. 3-6 January 1992. 37 p.

Haruna, A.: Bubure (unsortiert). MS. 1992 (?). 31 p.

Hayward, R.J.: Remarks on Omotic Sibilants. = Becchaus-Gerst, M. & Serzisko, F. (eds.): Cushitic--Omotic. Papers from the International Symposium on Cushitic and Omotic Languages, Cologne, January 6-9, 1986. Hamburg, 1988., Helmut Buske Verlag. Pp. 263-299.

Hayward, R.J.: Comparative Notes on the Language of the S'amakko. = JAAL 1 (1989), 1-53.

Hayward, R.J.: The Velar Stem Alternation in Omotic. MS. Paper for the 6th International Hamito--Semitic Congress (Moscow, April 1994). 5 p.

HCVA I = Diakonoff, I.M.; Belova, A.G.; Militarev, A.Ju.; Porhomovskij, V.Ja.; Stolbova, O.V.: Historical Comparative Vocabulary of Afrasian. Part 1. = St. Petersburg Journal of African Studies 2 (1993), 5-28.

HCVA II = Diakonoff, I.M.; Belova, A.G.; Militarev, A.Ju.; Porhomovskij, V.Ja.; Stolbova, O.V.: Historical Comparative Vocabulary of Afrasian. Part 2. = St. Petersburg Journal of African Studies 3 (1994), 5-26.

HCVA III = Diakonoff, I.M.; Belova, A.G.; Militarev, A.Ju.; Porhomovskij, V.Ja.; Stolbova, O.V.: Historical Comparative Vocabulary of Afrasian. Part 3. = St. Petersburg Journal of African Studies 4 (1994), 7-38.

HCVA IV = Diakonoff, I.M.; Belova, A.G.; Militarev, A.Ju.; Porhomovskij, V.Ja.: Historical Comparative Vocabulary of Afrasian. Part 4. = St. Petersburg Journal of African Studies 5 (1995), 4-32.

HCVA V = Diakonoff, I.M.; Belova, A.G.; Militarev, A.Ju.; Porhomovskij, V.Ja.: Historical Comparative Vocabulary of Afrasian. Part 5. = St. Petersburg Journal of African Studies 6 (1997), 12-35.

Heine, B.: Vokabulare ostafrikanischer Restsprachen. Teil I. = Afrika und Übersee 56 (1973), 276-283.

Heine, B.: Notes on the Yaaku Language (Kenya). = Afrika und Übersee 58/2 (1975), 119-138.

Heine, B.: Notes on the Rendille Language. = Afrika und Übersee 59 (1976), 176-223.

Heine, B.: The Sam Languages. A History of Rendille, Boni and Somali. = Afroasiatic Linguistics 6/2 (1978), 23-115.

Heine, B.; Rottland, F.; Voßen, R.: Proto-Baz: Some Aspects of Early Nilotic-Cushitic Contacts. = Sprache und Geschichte in Afrika 1 (1979), 75-91.

Heine, B.: The Non-Bantu Languages of Kenya. Berlin, 1980., Reimer.

Helck, W.: Die Beziehungen Ägyptens zu Vorderasien im 3. und 2. Jahrtausend v. Chr. Wiesbaden, 1962., Otto Harrassowitz.

Hellwig, B.: Goemai – English – Hausa Dictionary. MS. Draft. Printed out on 20 August 2000. 42 p.

Hess, J.-J.: Über das präfigierte und infigierte ʕ im Arabischen. = Zeitschrift für Semitistik 2/1 (1923), 219-223.

Hetzron, R.: The Nominal System of Awngi (Southern Agaw). = BSOAS 41 (1978), 121-141.

Hodge, C.T.: Some Afroasiatic Etymologies.= Anthropological Linguistics 10/3 (1968), 19-29.

Hodge, C.T.: The Divergence of the Egyptian Suffix Conjugation. = Golomb, D. M. (ed.): "Working with No Data". Semitic and Egyptian Studies Presented to Thomas O. Lambdin. Winona Lake, Indiana, 1987., Eisenbrauns. Pp. 153-163.

Hodge, C.T.: Tooth and Claw. = Anthropolgical Linguistics 34 (1992), 202-232.

Hoffmann, C.:Towards a Comparative Phonology of the Languages of the Angas-Goemai Group. MS. University of Ibadan, faculty seminar on 19 March 1975. 32 p.

Hohenberger, J.: The Nominal and Verbal Afformatives of Nilo-Hamitic and Hamito-Semitic. = Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes 42/2 (1975).

Holma, H.: Lexikalische Miszellen. = Zeitschrift für Assyriologie 28 (1914), 147-162.

Hommel, F.: Über den Grad der Verwandtschaft des Altägyptischen mit dem Semitischen.= Beiträge zur Assyriologie 2 (1894), 342-358.

Hommel, F.: Die ältesten Lautwerte einiger ägyptischen Buchstabenzeichen. = Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft 53 (1899), 347-349.

Hommel, F.: Grundriss der Geographie und Geschichte des Alten Orients. München, 1904., C.H. Beck'sche Verlagsbuchhandlung.

Hoskison, J.T.: A Grammar and Dictionary of the Gude Language (Chadic). Ph.D. dissertation. 1983., The Ohio State University.

HSED = Orel, V.É. & Stolbova, O.V.: Hamito-Semitic Etymological Dictionary. Leiden, 1995., E.J. Brill.

Hudson, G.: Highland East Cushitic Dictionary. Hamburg, 1989., Buske.

Ibriszimow, D. & Gimba, A.M. (eds.): Bole Language and Documentation Unit. BOLDU Report I. Köln, 1994., Köppe.

Ibriszimow, D.: The Verb in Ngamo. MS. Presented at the 2nd Biennal International Colloquium on the Chadic Languages, Prague, 11-12 October 2003. 8 p.

IL = Institute of Linguistics. Bauch Area Survey Report presented by N. Campbell and J. Hoskison. MS. Zaria, 1972.

Illič-Svityč, V.M.: Opyt sravnenija nostratičeskih jazykov (semitohamitskij, kartvel'skij, indoevropejskij, ural'skij, dravidijskij, altajskij). Vvedenie. Sravnitel'nyj slovar' (b-Ḳ). Moskva, 1971., Nauka.

Jaggar, Ph.J.: Guruntum (gùrdùŋ) (West Chadic-B): Linguistic Notes and Wordlist. = African Languages and Cultures 2/2 (1989), 175-202.

Jansen-Winkeln, K.: Spätmittelägyptische Grammatik der Texte der 3. Zwischenzeit. Wiesbaden, 1996., Harrassowitz Verlag.

Jansen-Winkeln, K.: Zur Bedeutung von jm3ḫ. = BSÉG 20 (1996), 29-36.

Jansen-Winkeln, K.: "Horizont" und "Verklärtheit": Zur Bedeutung der Wurzel 3ḫ. = SAK 23 (1996), 201-215.

Jastrow, M.: A Dictionary of the Targumim, the Talmud Babli and Yerushalmi, and the Midrashic Literature. Volume I: ʔ-k, Volume II: l-t. New York, 1950., Pardes Publishing House Inc.

JEA = Journal of Egyptian Archaeology (London).

JNES = Journal of Near Eastern Studies (Chicago).

Johnstone, T.M.: Ḥarsūsi Lexicon. London, 1977., Oxford University Press.

Johnstone, T.M.: Jibbāli Lexicon. London, 1981., Oxford University Press.

Johnstone, T.M.: Mehri Lexicon. London, 1987., University of London.

Jones, D.: An Index of Ancient Egyptian Titles, Epithets and Phrases of the Old Kingdom. Vol. I. Oxford, 2000., Archaeopress, Publishers of the British Archaeological Reports.

Jordan, A.: Dictionnaire berbère-français (dialectes tašelhait) contenant 6.025 formes. Rabat, 1934., Éditions Omnia.

Jungraithmayr, H.: Wörterbuch der Angas-Sprache. MS. 1962.

Jungraithmayr, H.: Die Sprache des Sura (Maghavul) in Nordnigerien. = Afrika und Übersee 47 (1963), 8-89, 204-220.

Jungraithmayr, H.: Kanakuru-Deutsch. MS. 1966. 19 p.

Jungraithmayr, H.: A Comparative Word List of the Ron Languages (Southern Plateau, N. Nigeria). = Africana Marburgensia 1/2 (1968), 3-12.

Jungraithmayr, H.: Die Ron-Sprachen. Tschadohamitische Studien in Nordnigerien. Glückstadt, 1970., Verlag J. J. Augustin.

Jungraithmayr, H. & Shimizu, K.: Chadic Lexical Roots. Vol. II. Tentative Reconstruction, Grading and Distribution. Berlin, 1981., Verlag von Dietrich Reimer.

Jungraithmayr, H.: Lexique mokilko. Berlin, 1990., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

Jungraithmayr, H. (in collaboration with N. A. Galadima and U. Kleinewillinghöfer): A Dictionary of the Tangale Language (Kaltungo, Northern Nigeria) with a Grammatical Introduction. Berlin, 1991., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

Jungraithmayr, H. & Adams, A.: Lexique migama. Berlin, 1992., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

Jungraithmayr, H.: On Vowel Systems in Chadic. A Typological Overview. = Folia Orientalia 29 (1992-93), 119-129.

Jungraithmayr, H. & Ibriszimow, D.: "Chadic Lexical Roots" – Wege zum Urtschadischen. = IX. Afrikanistentag – Beiträge zur afrikanischen Sprach- und Literaturwissenschaft. Köln, 1993., publisher not indicated. Pp. 129-148.

Jungraithmayr, H. & Ibriszimow, D.: Chadic Lexical Roots. Volume I. Tenative Reconstruction, Grading, Distribution and Comments. Berlin, 1994., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

Jungraithmayr, H. & Ibriszimow, D.: Chadic Lexical Roots. Volume II. Documentation. Berlin, 1994., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

KB = Koehler, L. & Baumgartner, W.: The Hebrew and Aramaic Lexicon of the Old Testament. I-V. Leiden, 1994., E.J. Brill.

KHW = Westendorf, W.: Koptisches Handwörterbuch. Heidelberg, 1977., Carl Winter Universitätsverlag.

Kidda, M.E.: Dera Basic Vocabulary. MS. October 1991. 17 p.

Kidda, M.E.: Dera Cultural Vocabulary. MS. October 1991. 37 p.

Kießling, R. & Mous, M.: The Lexical Reconstruction of West-Rift Southern Cushitic. Kuschitische Sprachstudien, Band 21. Köln, 2004., Rüdiger Köppe Verlag.

Kossmann, M.: Essai sur la phonologie du proto-berbère. Köln, 1999., Köppe.

Kraft, Ch.H.: Chadic Wordlists. I-III. Berlin, 1981., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

Kurth, D. (ed.): Studien zu Vokabular, Ikonographie und Grammatik. Wiesbaden, 1994., Harrassowitz.

LÄ = Helck, W. & Westendorf, W. (Hrsg., begründet von W. Helck und E. Otto): Lexikon der Ägyptologie. Band I-VII. Wiesbaden, 1975-92., Harrassowitz.

Lamberti, M.: Kuliak and Cushitic. A Comparative Study. Heidelberg, 1988., Universitätsverlag Carl Winter.

Lamberti, M. & Tonelli, L.: The Noun System of Bilin. = Fukui, K. & Kurimoto, E. & Shigeta, M. (eds.): Ethiopia in Broader Perspective. Vol. I. Papers of the XIIIth International Conference on Ethiopian Studies (Kyoto, 12-17 December 1997). Kyoto, 1997., Shokado. Pp. 499-524.

Lane, E.W.: An Arabic-English Lexicon. I-VIII. London & Edinburgh, 1863-93., Williams and Norgate.

Laoust, E.: Siwa. I. Son parlier. Paris, 1931., Librairie Ernest Leroux.

Leslau, W.: Lexique soqoṭri (sudarabique moderne), avec comparaisons et explications étymologiques. Paris, 1938., Librairie C. Klincksieck.

Leslau, W.: Review of Cohen, M.: Essai comparatif etc. = Language 25 (1949), 312-316.

Leslau, W.: Semitic and Egyptian Comparisons. = Journal of Near Eastern Studies 21 (1962), 44-49.

Leslau, W.: A Prefix in Egyptian, Modern South Arabian, and Hausa. = Africa 32 (1962), 65-68.

Leslau, W.: Southeast Semitic Cognates to the Akkadian Vocabulary. II. = Journal of the American Oriental Society 84 (1964), 115-118.

Leslau, W.: Etymological Dictionary of Gurage (Ethiopic). Vol. III. Etymological Section. Wiesbaden, 1979., Otto Harrassowitz.

Leslau, W.: Comparative Dictionary of Geʿez (Classical Ethiopic). Wiesbaden, 1987., Otto Harrassowitz.

Levy, J.: Wörterbuch über die Talmudim und Midraschim nebst Beiträgen von Heinrich Leberecht Fleischer. Zweite Auflage mit Nachträgen und Berichtigungen von Lazarus Goldschmidt. I-IV. Berlin & Wien, 1924., Benjamin Harz Verlag.

Leyew: cf. Zelealem.

Louali-Raynal, N.: La spirantisation en berbère. = Lamberti, M. & Tonelli, L. (eds.): Afroasiatica Tergestina. Papers from the 9th Italian Meeting of Afro-Asiatic (Hamito-Semitic) Linguistics, Trieste, April 23-24, 1998. Contributi presentati al 9^{o} Incontro di Linguistica Afroasiatica (Camito-Semitica), Trieste, 23-24 Aprile 1998. Padova, 1999., Unipress. Pp. 271-298.

Loubignac, V.: Étude sur le dialecte berbère des Zaïan et Aït Sgougou. Textes (deuxième section). Paris, 1924., Ernest Leroux.

Lukas, J.: Die Logone-Sprache im Zentralen Sudan. = Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes 21/6 (1936).

Lukas, J.: Zentralsudanische Studien. = Abhandlungen aus dem Gebiet der Auslandskunde. Hansische Universität, Reihe B, Band 45/24 (1937).

Lukas, J.: Die Sprache des Buduma in Zentralen Sudan. = Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes 24/2 (1939).

Lukas, J.: Deutsche Quellen zur Sprache der Musgu in Kamerun. Berlin, 1941., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

Lukas, J.: Das Hitkalanci, eine Sprache um Gwoza (Nordostnigerien). = Afrika und Übersee 48 (1964), 81-114.

Lukas, J.: Studien zur Sprache der Gisiga (Nordkamerun). Hamburg, 1970., Verlag J. J. Augustin.

Lukas, J.: Die Personalia und das primäre Verb im Bolanci (Nordnigerien). Mit Beiträge über das Karekare. = Afrika und Übersee 55 (1971), 114-139.

Lukas, J.: Studien zur Bade-Sprache (Nigeria). = Afrika und Übersee 58 /2 (1974-75), 82-105.

Lukas, J.: Ein Text in der Sprache der Djonkor des Gera-Massivs. = Afrika und Übersee 58/3-4 (1975), 212-226.

Lukas, J.: Tschadische Studien I. Beiträge zur Kenntnis des Mokulu. = Afrika und Übersee 60 (1977), 1-58, 182-229.

Lukas, R.: Das Nomen im Bade (Nordnigerien). = Afrika und Übersee 51 (1968), 91-116, 198-224.

Matsushita, Sh.: An Outline of Gwandara Phonemics and Gwandara-English Vocabulary. Tokyo, 1972., Tokyo Press.

MDAIK = Mitteilungen des Deutschen Archäologischen Instituts, Abteilung Kairo (Wiesbaden).

Meinhof, C.: Linguistische Studien in Ostafrika. Fortsetzung. = Mitteilungen des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen 9 (1906), 278-333.

Mercier, H.: Vocabulaires et textes berbères dans le dialecte des Ait Izdeg. Rabat, 1937., René Céré.

Militarev, A.Ju.: Ob odnom obščeafrazijskom zemledel'českom termine. Novye lingvističeskie dannye o proishoždenii zemledelija. = Vestnik Drevnej Istorii 4 (1983), 97-106.

Militarev, A.Ju.: Sovremennoe sravnitel'no-istoričeskoe afrazijskoe jazykoznanie: čto ono možet dat' istoričeskoj nauke? = Lingvističeskaja rekonstrukcija i drevnejšaja istorija Vostoka. Čast' 3. Moskva, 1984., Nauka. Pp. 3-26.

Militarev, A.Ju.: Jazyk meroitskoj épigrafiki kak istoričeskij istočnik v svete ego genezisa. = Vestnik Drevnej Istorii 2 (1984), 153-170.

Militarev, A.Ju. & Stolbova, O.V.: First Approach to Comparative-Historical Phonology of Afrasian (Consonantism). = Mukarovsky, H.G. (ed.): Proceedings of the Fifth International Hamito-Semitic Congress. Band I. Wien, 1990., Afro-Pub. Pp. 45-72.

Militarev, A.Ju.: Guančskie jazyki. Fonetika. = Solncev, V.M. (ed.): Jazyki Azii i Afriki. IV, kniga 2. Moskva, 1991., Glavnaja Redakcija Vostočnoj Literatury. Pp. 163-173.

Militarev, A.Ju.: Istoričeskaja fonetika i leksika livijsko-guančskih jazykov. = Solncev, V.M. (ed.): Jazyki Azii i Afriki. IV, kniga 2. Moskva, 1991., Glavnaja Redakcija Vostočnoj Literatury. Pp. 238-267.

Militarev, A.Ju.: Once More about Glottochronology and the Comparative Method: the Omotic-Afrasian Case. = Orientalia et Classica. Trudy Instituta vostočnyh kul'tur i antičnosti. Vypusk VI. Moskva, 2005., Rossijskij Gosudarstvennyj Gumanitarnyj Universitet. Pp. 339-408.

Mouchet, J.: Vocabulaires comparatifs de quinze parlers du Nord-Cameroun. = Bulletin de la Société d'Études Camerounaises 29-30 (1950), 5-74.

Mouchet, J.: Vocabulaires comparatifs de sept parlers du Nord-Cameroun. = Bulletin de la Société d'Études Camerounaises 41-42 (1953), 136-206.

Mukarovsky, H.G.: Baskisch-berberische Entsprechungen. = Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes 62 (1969), 32-51.

Mukarovsky, H.G.: Mande-Chadic Common Stock. A Study of Phonological and Lexical Evidence. Wien, 1987., Afro-Pub.

Nehlil: Étude sur le dialecte de Ghat. Paris, 1909., Éditions Ernest Leroux.

Netting, R.M.: Kofyar Vocabulary. MS. 1967.

Newman, P. & Ma, R.: Comparative Chadic: Phonology and Lexicon. = Journal of African Languages 5/3 (1966), 218-251.

Newman, P.: The Kanakuru Language. Leeds, 1974., The Institute of Modern English Language Studies, University of Leeds in association with The West African Linguistic Society.

Newman, P.: Chadic Classification and Reconstructions. = Afroasiatic Linguistics 5/1 (1977), 1-42.

OMRO = Oudheidkundige Mededelingen uit het Rijksmuseum van Oudheden te Leiden (Leiden).

Orel, V.É. & Stolbova, O.V.: K rekonstrukcii praafrazijskogo vokalizma. 3-4. = Voprosy Jazykoznanija 2 (1990), 75-90.

Orel, V.É. & Stolbova, O.V.: Čadsko-egipetskie izoglossy v oblasti kul'turnoj leksiki. = Lingvističeskaja rekonstrukcija i drevnejšaja istorija Vostoka. Čast' 1. Moskva, 1989., Nauka. Pp. 131-136.

Orel, V.É. & Stolbova, O.V.: Cushitic, Chadic, and Egyptian: Lexical Relations. = Shevoroshkin, V. (ed.): Nostratic, Dene-Caucasian, Austric and Amerind. Bochum, 1992., Brockmeyer. Pp. 167-180.

Orel, V.É. & Stolbova, O.V.: On Chadic-Egyptian Lexical Relations. = Shevoroshkin, V. (ed.): Nostratic, Dene-Caucasian, Austric and Amerind. Bochum, 1992., Brockmeyer. Pp. 181-203.

Orel, V.É. & Stolbova, O.V.: Position of Cushitic (Preliminary Report). = Shevoroshkin, V. (ed.): Nostratic, Dene-Caucasian, Austric and Amerind. Bochum, 1992., Brockmeyer. Pp. 204-224.

Orel, V.É.: Mir semito-hamitov. = Principy sostavlenija étimologičeskih i istoričeskih slovarej raznyh semej. Tezisy dokladov konferencii 8-9 nojabrja 1993 g. Moskva, 1993., Institut Jazykoznanija Rossijskoj Akademii Nauk. Pp. 37-44.

Orel, V.É.: Semitohamitskij, sinokavkazskij, nostratičeskij. = Moskovskij Lingvističeskij Žurnal 1 (1995), 99-116.

Ormsby, G.: Notes on the Angass Language. = Journal of the Royal African Society 12 (1912-1913), 421-424 & 13 (1913-1914), 54-61, 204-210, 313-315.

Osing, J.: Review of Takács, G.: Etymological Dictionary of Egyptian, Vol. I. = Bibliotheca Orientalis 58/5-6 (2001), 565-581.

Penchoen, Th.G.: Tamazight of the Azt Ndhir (Afroasiatic Dialects, Volume 1). Los Angeles, 1973., Undena Publications.

Porhomovskij, V.Ja.: Istoričeskij konsonantizm jazykov kotoko. Moskva, 1972., Institut Jazykoznanija Akademii Nauk SSSR.

Prasse, K.-G.: A propos de l'origine de h touareg (tahaggart). = Det Kongelige Danske Videnskabernes Selskab. Historisk-filosofiske Meddelelser 43/3 (1969).

Prasse, K.-G. & Alojaly, Gh. & Mohamed, Gh.: Lexique touareg-français. Copenhague, 1998., Museum Tusculanum Press, Université de Copenhague.

PT = Sethe, K.: Die altägyptischen Pyramidentexte. I-II. Leipzig, 1980., 1910., J.C. Hinrichs'sche Buchhandlung.

Pusch, E.: Register der ägyptischen Wörter zu Junker Giza I-XII. = ZÄS 101 (1974), 13-35.

Reinisch, L.: Die Chamirsprache in Abessinien. II. Chamir-deutsches Wörterbuch. = Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. Phil.-hist. Classe 106 (1884), 330-450.

Reinisch, L.: Die Quarasprache in Abessinien. II. Quarisch-deutsches Wörterbuch. = Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. Phil.-hist. Classe 109/1 (1885), 3-152.

Reinisch, L.: Die ʿAfar-Sprache. II. = Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. Phil.-hist. Classe 113/2 (1886), 795-916.

Reinisch, L.: Wörterbuch der Bilin-Sprache. Wien, 1887., Alfred Hoelder.

Reinisch, L.: Wörterbuch der Saho-Sprache. Wien, 1890., Alfred Hölder.

Reinisch, L.: Das Zalwort vier und neun in den chamitisch-semitischen Sprachen. = Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. Phil.-hist. Classe 121/12 (1890).

Reinisch, L.: Wörterbuch der Bedawye-Sprache. Wien, 1895., Alfred Hölder Verlag.

Reutt, T.E. & Kogan, E.Z.: Materialy po leksike jazykov margi i bura. = Bespis'mennye i mladopis'mennye jazyki Afriki. Moskva, 1973., Nauka. Pp. 83-147.

Roper, E.-M.: Tu Beḍawiɛ. An Elementary Handbook for the Use of Sudan Government Officials. Hertford, 1928., Stephen Austin & Sons.

Sachnine, M.: Dictionnaire lamé-français. Lexique français-lamé. Paris, 1982., SELAF.

Sasse, H.-J.: The Consonant Phonemes of Proto-East-Cushitic (PEC). = Afroasiatic Linguistics 7/1 (1979), 1-67.

Sasse, H.-J.: Neue Perspektiven im Afroasiatischen? = Jungraithmayr, H. & Miehe, G. (eds.): Berliner Afrikanistische Vorträge XXI. Deutscher Orientalistentag, Berlin 24.-29. März 1980. Berlin, 1981., Verlag von Dietrich Reimer. Pp. 145-165.

Sasse, H.-J.: An Etymological Dictionary of Burji. Hamburg, 1982., Helmut Buske Verlag.

Satzinger, H.: Sudan-Ägyptisch und Elephantine-Koptisch. = Bulletin. Société d'Égyptologie Genève 4 (1980), 83-87.

Satzinger, H.: Afroasiatischer Sprachvergleich. = Grunert, S. & Hafemann, I. (Hrsg.): Textcorpus und Wörterbuch. Aspekte zur ägyptischen Lexikographie. Leiden, 1999., Brill. Pp. 367-386.

Savà, G.: English-Ts'amakko Wordlist. MS. 2005.

Schuh, R.G.: Nunation and Gender in Bade. = Afrika und Übersee 58/2 (1975), 106-119.

Schuh, R.G.: Bole-Tangale Languages of the Bauchi Area (Northern Nigeria). Berlin, 1978., Dietrich Reimer.

Schuh, R.G.: Bade/Ngizim Vowels and Syllable Structure. = Studies in African Linguistics 9/3 (1978), 247-283.

Schuh, R.G.: A Dictionary of Ngizim. Berkeley, California, 1981., University of California.

Schuh, R.G.: West Chadic Vowel Correspondences. = Bynon, J. (ed.): Current Progress in Afro-Asiatic Linguistics. Amsterdam, 1984., John Benjamins. Pp. 167-223.

Schulman, A.R.: Mhr and Mškb, Two Egyptian Military Titles of Semitic Origin. = ZÄS 93 (1966), 123-132.

SED I = Kogan, A. & Militarev, A. (with assistance of A. Belova, A. Kovalev, A. Nemirovskaja, D. Nosnitsyn): Semitic Etymological Dictionary. Vol. I. Anatomy of Man and Animals. Münster, 2000., Ugarit-Verlag.

Seibert, U.: Comparative Ron Wordlist. MS. Frankfurt, 2000. 45 & 17 p.

Shimizu, K.: The Southern Bauchi Group of Chadic Languages. A Survey Report. = Africana Marburgensia. Special Issue 2 (1978), 1-50.

SISAJa I = D'jakonov, I.M.; Belova, A.G.; Četveruhin, A.S.; Militarev, A.Ju.; Porhomovskij, V.Ja.; Stolbova, O.V.: Sravnitel'no-istoričeskij slovar' afrazijskih jazykov. Vypusk 1. p-ṗ-b-f. = Pis'mennye pamjatniki i problemy istorii kul'tury narodov Vostoka. XV godičnaja naučnaja sessija Leningradskogo Otdelenija Instituta Vostokovedenija Akademii Nauk SSSR. Moskva, 1981., Nauka. Pp. 3-127.

SISAJa II = D'jakonov, I.M.; Belova, A.G.; Militarev, A.Ju.; Porhomovskij, V.Ja.; Stolbova, O.V.: Sravnitel'no-istoričeskij slovar' afrazijskih jazykov. Vypusk 2. t-ṭ-d. = Pis'mennye pamjatniki i problemy istorii kul'tury narodov Vostoka. XVI godičnaja naučnaja sessija Leningradskogo Otdelenija Instituta Vostokovedenija Akademii Nauk SSSR. Moskva, 1982., Nauka. Pp. 3-93.

Skinner, N.: North Bauchi Chadic Languages: Common Roots. = Afroasiatic Linguistics 4/1 (1977), 1-49.

Skinner, N.: Hausa Comparative Dictionary. Köln, 1996., Rüdiger Köppe Verlag.

Sölken, H.: Seetzens Áffadéh. Ein Beitrag zur Kotoko-Sprachdokumentation. Berlin, 1967., Akademie--Verlag.

Starostin, S.A.; Dybo, V.A.; Dybo, A.V.; Helimsky, E.A.; Militarev, A.Ju.; Mudrak, O.A.; Starostin, G.S.: Basic Nostratic-Afrasian-Sino-Caucasian Lexical Correspondences. Preliminary working version. MS. Moscow, 1995.

Stolbova, O.V.: Rekonstrukcija konsonantnoj sistemy zapadnočadskih jazykov. = Pis'mennye pamjatniki i problemy istorii kul'tury narodov Vostoka. XIX godičnaja naučnaja sessija Leningradskogo Otdelenija Instituta Vostokovedenija Akademii Nauk SSSR. Moskva, 1986., Nauka. Pp. 80-115.

Stolbova, O.V.: Sravnitel'no-istoričeskaja fonetika i slovar' zapadnočadskih jazykov. = Porhomovskij, V.Ja. (ed.): Afrikanskoe istoričeskoe jazykoznanie. Problemy rekonstrukcii. Moskva, 1987., Nauka. Pp. 30-268.

Stolbova, O.V.: Studies in Chadic Comparative Phonology. Moscow, 1996., "Diaphragma" Publishers.

Stolbova, O.V.: Akkadsko-čadskie leksičeskie paralleli. = Istorija i jazyki Drevnego Vostoka: Pamjati I.M. D'jakonova. Sankt-Peterburg, 2002., Institut Vostokovedenija RAN - Sankt-Peterburgskij Filial. Pp. 268-279.

Stolbova, O.V.: Chadic Lexical Database. Issue I. L, N, NY, R. Kaluga, 2005., Poligrafiya.

Stroomer, H.: A Comparative Study of Three Southern Oromo Dialects in Kenya. Hamburg, 1987., Buske.

Stroomer, H.: A Grammar of Boraana Oromo (Kenya). Phonology, Morphology, Vocabularies. Köln, 1995., Buske.

Stroomer, H.: A Concise Vocabulary of Orma Oromo (Kenya). Köln, 2001., Köppe.

Strümpell, F.: Wörterverzeichnis der Heidensprachen des Mandara-Gebirges (Adamaua). = Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprachen 13 (1922-23), 109-149.

Taïfi, M.: Dictionnaire tamazight-français (parlers du Maroc central). Paris, 1991., L'Harmattan-Awal.

Takács, G.: Development of Afro-Asiatic (Semito-Hamitic) Comparative-Historical Linguistics in Russia and the Former Soviet Union. München, Newcastle, 1999., Lincom Europa.

Takács, G.: Review of Solncev, V.M. (ed.): Jazyki Azii i Afriki IV/2 – A New Contribution to Berber Comparative-Historical Linguistics by A.Ju. Militarev: Some Etymological Notes. = Lingua Posnaniensis 41 (1999), 198-209.

Takács, G.: Comparative Dictionary of the Angas-Sura Languages. Berlin, 2004., Dietrich Reimer Verlag.

Takács, G.: Egyptian Lexicography and Etymology: Against or With Afro-Asiatic Comparison? = Rocznik Orientalistyczny 58/2 (2005), 14-113.

Thausing, G.: Ägyptische Confixe und die ägyptische Verbalkonstruktion. = Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes 68 (1941), 5-34.

Tosco, M.: The Dhaasanach Language. Grammar, Texts, Vocabulary of a Cushitic Language of Ethiopia. Köln, 2001., Köppe.

Tourneux, H.: Le mulwi ou vulum de Mogroum (Tchad). Langue du groupe musgu – famille tchadique. Paris, 1978., Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique.

Vergote, J.: Phonétique historique de l'égyptien. Paris, 1945., Le Muséon.

Vycichl, W.: Hausa und Ägyptisch. Ein Beitrag zur historischen Hamitistik. = Mitteilungen des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen an der Friedrich-Wilhelms-Universität zu Berlin 37 (1934), 36-116.

Vycichl, W.: Festgabe für Hermann Junker zu seinem 60. Geburtstag. = Archiv für Aegyptische Archaeologie 1/6 (1938), 131-140.

Vycichl, W.: Etymology. = Atiya, A.S. (ed.): The Coptic Encyclopaedia. Vol. 8. New York, 1991., MacMillan. Pp. 118-124.

Ward, W.A.: Some Egypto-Semitic Etymologies. = Orientalia NS 31 (1962), 397-412.

Ward, W.A.: Index of Egyptian Administrative and Religious Titles of the Middle Kingdom. With Glossary of the Words and Phrases Used. Beirut, 1982., American University of Beirut.

Wb = Erman, A. & Grapow, H.: Wörterbuch der ägyptischen Sprache. I-V.[2] Berlin, 1957-1971., Akademie-Verlag.

Wedekind, K.: A Survey of Awngi. = SLLE Linguistic Reports 28 (1995), 2-22.

Whiteley, W.H.: Studies in Iraqw. Kampala, 1953., East African Institute of Social Research.

Witczak, K.T.: Indo-European Word for "Leech" and Its Nostratic Equivalents. = Archív Orientální 60 (1992), 38-42.

WKAS II = Kraemer, J.; Gätje, H.; Spitaler, A.; Ullmann, M.: Wörterbuch der klassischen arabischen Sprache. Band II, Teil 1-4: l-lyf. Wiesbaden, 1983-2001., Otto Harrassowitz.

Wolff, E.: Sprachwandel und Sprachwechsel in Nordostnigeria. = Afrika und Übersee 58/3-4 (1974-75), 187-212.

Wölfel, J.D.: Monumenta linguae Canariae. Die kanarischen Sprachdenkmäler. Eine Studie zur Vor- und Frühgeschichte Weißafrikas. Graz, 1965., Akademische Druck- u. Verlagsanstalt.

WUS = Aistleitner, J.: Wörterbuch der ugaritischen Sprache. = Berichte über die Verhandlungen der Sächsischen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Leipzig. Phil.-hist. Klasse 106/3 (1963).

Zaborski, A.: Biconsonantal Verbal Roots in Semitic. = Zeszyty Naukowe Universytetu Jagiellońskiego, prace językoznawcze 5 (1971), 51-98.

Zadok, R.: Notes on the West Semitic Material from Emar. = Annali, Istituto Universitario Orientale di Napoli 51/2 (1991), 113-137.

Zelealem Leyew: First Report on a Survey of the Shinasha and Agew Dialects and Languages. = Survey of Little-Known Languages of Ethiopia (SLLE) Linguistic Reports 18 (1994), 1-8.

Zyhlarz, E.: Ursprung und Sprachcharakter des Altägyptischen. = Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprachen 23 (1932-33), 25-45, 81-110, 161-194, 241-254.

R O C Z N I K O R I E N T A L I S T Y C Z N Y, T. LXV, Z. 2, 2012, (s. 119–130)

MICHAEL KNÜPPEL

Lydia T. Black (16.12.1925–12.3.2007) – Leben und Werk

Abstract

The present article deals with life and work of the Social Anthropologist, Sibirist and Americanist Lydia T. Black (1925–2007), whose works cover fields of research reaching from ethnological studies on the material and spiritual cultures of the natives of North East Asia, the Aleuts and Alaska to the history of Russian Alaska. The paper includes a chronological listing of the publications of this outstanding scholar as well as a biographical sketch.

Keywords: Lydia T. Black, Social Anthropologist, Sibirist, Americanist, bio-bibliography

Am 12.3.2007 starb 81-jährig in Kodiak auf der gleichnamigen Halbinsel in Alaska die große Ethnologin, Sibiristin und Amerikanistin – vor allem aber Grenzgängerin zwischen diesen Disziplinen in einem sehr wörtlichen Sinne – Lydia T. Black. Grund genug hier einen kurzen Überblick über das Schaffen dieser ungewöhnlichen Erscheinung des Wissenschaftsbetriebes (in Gestalt eines Werkverzeichnisses) zu geben.

Geboren wurde Lydia T. Black am 16.12.1925 im damals sowjet. Kiev als Tochter eines Ingenieurs. Sie erlebte in ihrer Kindheit die Jahre des Stalinismus, später die Besatzung durch die deutschen Truppen, überlebte Gefangenschaft und Deportation. Als sie acht Jahre alt war, fiel ihr Vater den stalinistischen Säuberungen zum Opfer, als sie sechzehn war, verstarb ihre Mutter an Tuberkulose. Während der Besatzung wurde sie nach Deutschland verschleppt, mußte in der Nähe von München Zwangsarbeit leisten und arbeitete nach Kriegsende zunächst als Reinigungskraft in einer Einrichtung der US-Army, wo man auf die sprachbegabte junge Frau, die inzwischen sechs Sprachen nahezu fließend beherrschte, aufmerksam wurde und sie als Übersetzerin der *United Nations Relief and*

Rehabilitation Administration (UNRRA) in einer Einrichtung für sogenannte „displaced children" anstellte.

Zu ihren umfangreichen Sprachkenntnissen war sie vor allem durch ihre Großmutter gelangt. Diese hatte ein recht eigenwilliges Lehrprogramm für ihre Enkeltochter aufgestellt: zwei Tage in der Woche wurde nur Russisch gesprochen, zwei Tage Französisch, zwei Tage Deutsch und an den Sonntagen die Muttersprache Ukrainisch. Polnisch hatte sie später – während des Krieges resp. der Zeit ihrer Verschleppung – erlernt.

Gegen Ende der 1940er Jahre – zur Zeit ihrer Tätigkeit für die UNRRA – beabsichtigte sie ein Pädagogik-Studium aufzunehmen. Zunächst jedoch heiratete sie im Jahre 1950 den späteren Thermodynamik-Ingenieur und NASA-Mitarbeiter Igor A. Black, mit dem sie dann in die USA übersiedelte. Ein Studium begann die spätere Ausnahmegelehrte dort erst nach dem allzu frühen Tod ihres Ehemannes im Jahre 1969 an der Brandeis University nahe Boston. Allerdings wandte sie sich nun nicht, wie ursprünglich beabsichtigt, der Pädagogik zu, sondern nahm vielmehr ein Studium der Ethnologie auf. Es war die Brandeis University, an der sie zunächst ihren B.A. erlangte und im Jahre 1971 schließlich mit dem M.A. abschloß. Nur zwei Jahre später folgte die Erlangung des akademischen Grades eines Ph.D. an der University of Massachusetts (Amherst) mit einer vielbeachteten Arbeit über den Symbolismus bei den Nivchen („Dogs, bears, and killer whales. An analysis of the Nivkh symbolic system"), die zu dieser Zeit ihren Forschungsschwerpunkt bildeten. Daran anschließend nahm L. T. Black eine Stelle an der Fakultät für Anthropologie am Providence College in Rhode Island an. Während ihrer dortigen Lehrtätigkeit wirkte sie zugleich als Mitglied des Lehrkörpers am Brown University's Arctic Institute. Im Jahre 1984 siedelte L. T. Black nach Alaska über, um so ihren Forschungsgegenständen auch örtlich näher zu sein und übernahm eine Stelle an der University of Alaska (Fairbanks). Hier entstanden zahlreiche ihrer Arbeiten über Ethnographie und Kunst der Ethnien Alaskas – besonders der Aleuten –, aber auch zur Geschichte des russischen Alaska.

Im Jahre 1998 wurde Lydia T. Black pensioniert, setzte sich allerdings nicht zu Ruhe – ganz im Gegenteil intensivierte sie nun zahlreiche Tätigkeiten. So nahm sie an der Katalogisierung und Übersetzung der Materialien des Archivs des *St. Herman's Theological Seminary* in Kodiak teil. Für diese Arbeiten wurde sie später von der orthodoxen Kirche in Alaska mit der Verleihung des St. Herman-Kreuzes gewürdigt. Daneben lehrte sie als Dozentin für Russische Geschichte an der *St. Innocent's Academy* in Kodiak.

Für ihre Leistungen wurden Lydia T. Black zahlreiche Auszeichnungen zuteil. So wurde ihr 2001 von der russischen Regierung der Orden der Freundschaft für ihre besonderen Verdienste um die Förderung des gegenseitigen kulturellen Verständnisses zwischen Rußland und den Vereinigten Staaten verliehen. Für ihr Lebenswerk wurde L.T. Black im Jahre 2000 mit dem *Alaska Anthropological Association's Lifetime Achievement Award* und im Jahre 2005 mit dem *Alaska Governor's Lifetime Achievement Award for the Humanities* ausgezeichnet.

Lydia T. Black war – wie eingangs erwähnt – eine Grenzgängerin: sie wirkte auf ganz unterschiedlichen Feldern und sehr verschiedenen wissenschaftlichen Disziplinen: diese reichten von der Ethnologie über die Geschichtswissenschaften bis hin zur

Kunstgeschichte des nordpazifischen Raumes, welchen sie als einen in einem weiteren Sinne zusammenhängenden Kulturraum, aber auch ein Großraum, welcher in historischer Pespektive – von der Entdeckungsgeschichte bis zur russischen Präsenz im 18. und 19. Jh. – miteinander verbunden war, betrachtete. Mit dem Verscheiden von Lydia T. Black ist nun eine der wenigen Vertreterinnen verschieden, die dies zu leisten vermochten. Sie brachte die hierfür erforderlichen Voraussetzungen sowie die notwendige Schulung – vor allem jedoch ein ganz besonderes Gespür für die „richtigen" Fragestellungen – mit, was sich in ihren Arbeiten in einer ganz außergewöhnlichen Weise widerspiegelt.

I. Monographien
II. Herausgeberschaft
III. Aufsätze (Zeitschriften- und Buchbeiträge)
IV. Miszellen
V. Berichte
VI. Besprechungen
VII. unveröffentlichte Manuskripte[1]

1972

1. III. Relative status of wife givers and wife takers in Gilyak society. In: *American Anthropologist* 74 (5), Oktober 1972, pp. 1244–1248.

1973

2. I. *Dogs, bears, and killer whales. An analysis of the Nivkh symbolic system*. PhD Diss. Department of Anthropology, University of Massachusetts, Amherst. Ann Arbor, Michigan: University Microfilms.
3. III. The Nivkh (Gilyak) of Sakhalin and Lower Amur. In: *Arctic Anthropology* 10 (1), pp. 1–110.
4. VI. Comment on Shelton's review of sacrifice in Ibo religion. In: *American Anthropologist* 1975 (4). August 1973, pp. 1177–1179.

[1] Zu den Publikationen Blacks treten auch noch von ihr angefertigte Filme – im Video-Format – hinzu, die jedoch, da es sich um keine Bestandteile eines Schriftenverzeichnisses handelt, im Schriftenverzeichnis nicht aufgeführt sind: (1) *Aleut art*. Videotape. KAKM-Anchorage, Public Television. Distributor: Alaska State Library, 1982–1983; (2) *My life and works* (?). Videotape University of Alaska Fairbanks Library; (3) *American whalers in Kodiak waters in the 19th century*. Videotape, Kodiak, Alaska, The Alutiiq Museum, 2004; (4) *Spruce Island: A history*. Videotape, Kodiak, Alaska: Baranov Museum, 2005; (5) *Whaling in Kodiak waters*. Videotape, Kodiak Library.

1977

5. III. Ivan Pan'kov: An architect of Aleut literacy. In: *Arctic Anthropology* 14 (1), pp. 94–107 [auch in: *Orthodox Alaska* 7 (4). October 1978, pp. 1–33 (mit Nachträgen und Abbildungen), in: *Interpreting Alaska's history: An anthology*. Hrsg. v. M. Manguso u. Stephen Haycox. Anchorage, Alaska: Pacific University Press, 1989, pp. 86–109 u. in: *An Alaska anthology: Interpreting the past*. Hrsg. v. Stephen Haycox u. M. Manguso. Seattle and London: University of Washington Press, 1996, pp. 43–55].
6. III. The concept of race in Soviet anthropology. In: *Studies in Soviet Thought* 17 (1), pp. 1–27.
7. III. The Konyag (the inhabitants of the island of Kodiak) by Ioasaf [Bolotov] 1974–1799, and by Gideon, 1804-1807. In: *Arctic Anthropology* 14 (2), pp. 79–108.

1978

7.a III. Ivan Pan'kov: An architect of Aleut literacy. In: *Orthodox Alaska* 7 (4). October 1978, pp. 1–33 [cf. Nr. 5].

1979

8. III. The question of maps. Exploration in the Bering Sea, eighteenth century. In: *The Sea in Alaska's Past, Conference Proceedings*. Anchorage, Alaska: Alaska State Office of History and Archaeology (History and Archaeology Publication Series 25), pp. 6–50.
9. III. Black, Lydia T.: Notes on Yukaghir linguistics and methods of text transcription. In: *Arctic Anthropology* 16 (1), pp. 179–216 [Teil von Black, Lydia T. / Michael, Henry: The Tundra Yukagir at the turn of the century. Ibd., pp. 178–217 (dies eine Übersetzung eines Werkes von Ė.A. Krejnovič aus dem Russ.); hierin auch Black, Lydia T.: Addendum to „Note on Yukagir linguistics". Ibd., p. 217].

1980

10. I. *The journals of Iakov Netsvetov. The Atkha years 1828–1843*. Kingston, Ontario: The Limestone Press.
11. III. The Aleutians: The early history. In: *Alaska Geographic* 7 (3), pp. 82–89.
12. VI. Siikala, Anna-Leena: The rite technique of the Siberian shaman. Helsinki 1978 (FF Communications 93, 220). In: *American Anthropologist* 82 (2). Juni 1980 (zugl. In memoriam Margaret Mead, 1901–1978), pp. 414–415.

1981

13. III. The daily journal of Reverend Father Juvenal. A cautionary tale. In: *Ethnohistory* 28 (1), pp. 33–58.
14. III. The nature of evil. Of whales and sea otters. In: *Indians, animals, and the fur trade: A critique of "Keepers of the game*". Hrsg. v. Shepard Krech III. Athens, Georgia: University of Georgia Press, pp. 111-153.
15. III. Volcanism as a factor in human ecology In: *Ethnohistory* 28 (4), pp. 313–340.
16. III. *Who are the Aleuts: A question of ethnic identity*. University of Alaska Fairbanks [ohne Jahr – vermutl. 1981], 12 pp. [in: „Alaska Native Languages Center Archives", Sign. AL-976-B-11981].

1982

17. I. *Aleut art. Unangam aguqaadangin. Unangan of the Aleutian Archipelago*. Anchorage, Alaska: Aang Anĝaĝin, Aleutian / Pribilof Islands Association, Inc.; 173, [19] pp. + Ill.
18. III. The curious case of the Unalaska icons. In: *Alaska Journal* 12 (2), pp. 7–11.

1983

19. I. *Atka. An ethnohistory of the Western Aleutians*. Kingston, Ontario: The Limestone Press (Alaska History 24), IV + 219 pp. + Ill.
20. III. Aleut art: A cord of many strands. In: *EXXON U.S.A*. 22 (3), pp. 16–21.
21. III. Eskimo motifs in Aleut art and folklore. In: Études/ Inuit/ Studies 7 (1), pp. 3–23.
22. III. Record of maritime disasters in Russian 1741-1799. In: *Proceedings of the Alaskan Maritime Archaeology Workshop May 17-19, Sitka Alaska*. Hrsg. v. Steven L. Langdon. Alaska Sea Grant Report, September 1983, Fairbanks, Alaska: University of Alaska.
23. III. Some problems in interpretation of Aleut prehistory. In: *Arctic Anthropology* 20 (1), pp. 49–68.
24. VI. Hixon, Margaret: Old believers in Oregon. 1981. Portland, OR, 1981. In: *American Anthropologist* 85 (3). September 1983, pp. 745–746.

1984

25. I. *The journals of Iakov Netsvetov. The Yukon years, 1845–1863*. Translated, with an introduction and suppl. material. Kingston, Ontario: The Limestone Press (Alaska History 26; Alaska Historical Commission Studies in History 130), XX + 513 pp., Ill.

26. I. *Notes on the islands of Unalaska district by Ioann Veniaminov*. Hrsg. v. R.A. Pierce. Übers. v. R. Geoghegan. With annotations and supplementary materials. Kingston, Ontario: The Limestone Press.

1985

27. III. The Yupik of Western Alaska and Russian impact. In: Études/ Inuit/ Studies 8, Supplementary Issue "The Central Yupik Eskimos".

1987

28. II. [zusammen mit Peter L. Corey]: *Faces, voices & dreams. A celebration of the centennial of the Sheldon Jackson Museum, Sitka, Alaska, 1888–1988*. With a contribution by Lydia L. Black. Sitka, Alaska: Division of Alaska State Museums [u. a.]; XVIII + 201 pp. + Ill.
29. III. Peg calendars of Alaska. In: *Faces, voices and dreams: A celebration of the centennial of the Sheldon Jackson Museum 1888–1988*. Hrsg. v. Peter Corey. Juneau, Alaska: Division of Alaska State Museums and The Friends of the Alaska State Museum, pp. 97–100.
30. III. Whaling in the Aleutians. In: Études/ Inuit/ Studies 11 (2), pp. 7–50.
31. V. Comment on John Halverson: "Art fore art's sake in the palaeolithic". In: *Current Anthropology* 28 (1), pp. 73–75.
32. VI. Iurii A. Kreinovich (1906–1985). In: *International Journal of American Linguistics* 53 (4), Oktober 1987, pp. 460–461.

1988

33. III. [zusammen mit Roza G. Liapunova]: Aleut: Islanders of the North Pacific. In: *Crossroads of continents: Cultures of Siberia and Alaska*. Hrsg. v. William W. Fitzhugh u. Aron Crowell. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press, pp. 52–57.
34. III. Peoples of the Amur and maritime regions. In: *Crossroads of continents: Cultures of Siberia and Alaska*. Hrsg. v. William W. Fitzhugh u. Aron Crowell. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press, pp. 24–30.
35. III. The story of Russian America. In: *Crossroads of continents: Cultures of Siberia and Alaska*. Hrsg. v. William W. Fitzhugh u. Aron Crowell. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press, pp. 70–82.

1989

36. I. [zusammen mit Richard A. Pierce]: *The round the world voyage of Hieromonk Gideon, 1803–1809*. Translated from original manuscripts with comparative analysis, additional materials and annotations. Kingston, Ontario, Fairbanks,

Alaska: The Limestone Press (Alaska History 32; Alaska State Library Historical Monograph 9); XIII + 184 pp., Ill. + Karten.

36.a III. Ivan Pan'kov: An architect of Aleut literacy. In: *Interpreting Alaska's history: An anthology*. Hrsg. v. M. Manguso u. Stephen Haycox. Anchorage, Alaska: Pacific University Press, 1989, pp. 86–109 [cf. Nr. 5].

37. III. Russia's American adventure In: *Natural History*, December 1989 [auch in: *Annual Editions: American History*. Vol. I: *Pre-colonial through reconstruction,* 11th edition, pp. 98–102].

38. III. Studies of Russian America: State of the art. In: *Pacifica* 1, pp. 27–46.

39. V. Comment on I. Davidson and W. Nobel: "On the archaeology of perception". In: *Current Anthropology* 30 (2), p. 138.

1990

40. III. The atlas of navigator Lovtsov, 1782. In: *Russia in North America: Proceedings of the 2nd International Conference on Russian America, Sitka, Alaska, August 19–22, 1982*. Kingston, Ontario: The Limestone Press.

41. III. La contribution sovetique a l'ethnographie de l'Alaska. In: *Cahier du Monde Russe et Sovetique*. Centre d'etudes sur l'U.S.S.R., École des haute Études en Sciences Sociales, Paris, pp. 327–332.

42. III. The creole class in Russian America In: *Pacifica* 2 (2), pp. 142–155 [auch in: *The Californians*, Sonderausgabe "Settlement Ross", Fort Ross, California State Park, 1992].

43. III. Native artists in Russian America. In: *Russian America: The forgotten frontier*. Hrsg. v. Barbara S. Smith u. Raymond T. Barnett. Tacoma, Washington: Washington State Historical Society, pp. 197–203.

1991

44. I. *Glory remembered. Wooden headgear of Alaska sea hunters*. With a reprint of "Aleut hunting headgear and its ornamentation" by Sergej V. Ivanov. Juneau, Alaska: Friends of the Alaska State Museum; 173 pp, + Ill.

45. I. [zusammen mit Richard A. Pierce]: *The Lovtsov atlas of the North Pacific Ocean. Compilet at Bol'sheretsk, Kamchatka, in 1782 from discoveries made by Russian mariners and Captain James Cook and his officers by Vasilii Fedorovich Lovtsov*. Translated, with introduction and notes. Kingston, Ontario: The Limestone Press (Alaska History 38; Maps of Russian America 2); VII + 62 pp.

46. III. [zusammen mit Richard A. Pierce]: Russian America and the Finns. In: *Terra* 29 (2-3), Dezember 1991–Mai 1992, pp. 18–29.

47. III. Soviet peoples. In: *Reviews in Anthropology* 20, pp. 265–279.

48. III. Unalaska archaeology and history project. In: *National Geographic Research and Exploration* 7CY, pp. 490–497.

1992

48.a III. The creole class in Russian America In: *The Californians*, Sonderausgabe "Settlement Ross", Fort Ross, California State Park [cf. Nr. 42].

49. III. From Valaamo to Spruce island: Russian Orthodoxy in Alaska, U.S.A. In: *Northern religions and shamanism*. Hrsg. v. Mihály Hoppál u. Juha Pentikäinen. Budapest: Akadémiai Kiadó; Helsinki: Finnish Literature Society, pp. 100–107.

50. III. Hunters' dress as metaphor of power. In: *Hunting rituals of Northern peoples*. 5th Abashiri Symposium on Peoples and Cultures of the North. Abashiri-shi, Hokkaido, Japan: Museum of Northern Peoples, pp. 63–67.

51. III. Promyshlenniki: Who were they? In: *Bering and Chirikov: The American voyages and their impact*. Hrsg. v. O.W. Frost. Anchorage, Alaska: Alaska Historical Society, pp. 279–290.

52. III. The Russian conquest of Kodiak In: *Anthropological Papers of the University of Alaska* 24 (1-2), pp. 165–182 [Russ. Übers. in: *Pokoreniie russkimi Kad'iaka. Russkaia Amerika I Dal'nii Vostok, konets XVIII v.–1867 g*. Hrsg. v. A.P. Artemiev. Akademia Nauk 2001, pp. 104–131].

53. III. *Russian names in Aleut society*. Paper presented at the First International Congress of Arctic Social Sciences, 28–31 October 1992; Université Laval, Québec [auf Russisch: 2003].

54. III. Russian Orthodoxy in Alaska. In: *Northern religions and shamanism* [Religional conference of the International Association of the History of Religions. Selected papers]. Hrsg. v. Mihály Hoppál/ Juha Pentikäinen. Budapest (Ethnologica Uralica 3), pp. 100–107.

55. III. The Russians were coming … *Spain and the North Pacific Coast: Essays in recognition of the bicentennial of the Malaspina Expedition, 1791–1792*. Hrsg. v. Robin Inglis. Vancouver, B. C., Canada: Vancouver Maritime Museum, pp. 29–34.

1993

56. III. Ecological adaptations of Komi resettled groups. In: *Arctic Anthropology* 30 (2), pp. 92–102 [Übers. einer russ. Arbeit v. N.D. Kondakov].

57. III. Hats of wood. The intriguing masks of Alaskan sea hunters. In: *The world and I, culture*. Hrsg. v. John Bowles. Washington, D.C.: News World Communications, Inc., pp. 286–295.

58. V. *Ethnographic summary: The Aleutian-Pribilof Islands Region*. Working paper prepared as part of long-term multidisciplinary research „Social Transition in the North", Bd. 1, Nr. 3, Mai 1993. Anchorage, Alaska: Social Research Institute.

59. V. *Unga community and its population from prehistoric times to the present*. Report submitted to the Unga Tribal Council, 14 May 1993 for presentation to the Secretary of the Interior, Bureau of Indian Affairs, related to the request for tribal status recognition.

1994

60. III. Deciphering Aleut / Koniag iconography. In: *Anthropology of the North Pacific Rim*. Hrsg. v. William W. Fitzhugh u. Valérie Chaussonnet. Washington, London: Smithsonian Institution Press, pp. 133–146.
61. III. Religious syncretism as cultural dynamic. In: *Circumpolar religion and ecology. An anthropology of the North*. Hrsg. v. Takashi Irimoto u. Takako Yamada. Tokyo: University of Tokyo Press, pp. 213–220.
62. V. *Aleuts in U.S.A. and Russia*. Prepared for and submitted to the Aleutian Corporation, Anchorage, Alaska.
63. V. *Aleut rights as defined in the charters and regulations of the Russian-American Company, 1799, 1821, and 1844*. Prepared for and submitted to the Aleutian Corporation, Anchorage, Alaska.

1996

64. III. The bear in human imagination and ritual. In: *The Journal of Wildlife Management* 6, pp. 1–5.
64.a III. Ivan Pan'kov: An architect of Aleut literacy. In: *An Alaska anthology: Interpreting the past*. Hrsg. v. Stephen Haycox u. M. Manguso. Seattle and London: University of Washington Press, 1996, pp. 43–55 [cf. Nr. 5].

1997

65. I. [zusammen mit Katherine L. Arndt]: *A good and faithful servant. The year of St. Innocent*. Fairbanks, Alaska: University of Alaska Press.
66. III. *The invisible art of native Alaska*. Paper presented at the Annual Meeting of the American Anthropological Association, November 1997, Washington DC.
67. III. Put' na Novyi Valaam. In: *Istoriia Russkoi pravoslavnoi cervki na Aliaske*. Bd. I: *Osnovaniie Russkoi Ameriki, 1732–1799*. Hrsg. v. N.N. Bolchovitinov. Moskva: Meždunarodnije otnošenija, pp. 251–277.

1998

68. I. *Orthodoxy in Alaska*. The sixth distinguished lecture series of the Patriarch Athenagoras Orthodox Institute, October 1996. Berkeley, California: The Patriarch Athenagoras Orthodox Institute at the Graduate Theological Institute.
69. III. The bear in human imagination and ritual. In: *Ursus* 10 (Conferences held at Fairbanks, Alaska and Mora, Sweden, International Association of Bear Research and Management), pp. 343–347.

1999

70. I. *The history and ethnohistory of the Aleutians East Borough* (with contributions, edited by Black, by J. Jacka, S. McGowan, N. Taksami, M. Wright). Kingston, Ontario, Fairbanks, Alaska: The Limestone Press, 1999 (Alaska History 49); 385 pp. + Ill. + Karten.
71. III. The animal world of the Aleuts. In: *Arctic Anthropology* 35 (2), pp. 126–135.
72. III. Russian America: The place to starts. In: *Alaska Geographic* 26 (4), pp. 4–17.
73. VII. *Alutiiq whaling traditions*. Vorlesung im Alutiiq Museum, 22. April 1999.
74. VII. *The birth of Russian ethnography*. 25. Februar 1999, 21 pp.

2000

75. III. The best route to America lies across the pole. Paper presented at the international conference *Science under sail: Russian exploration in the North Pacific, 1728–1867*, Cook Inlet Historical Society Symposium, Anchorage Alaska October 13–14, 2000. Anchorage, Alaska: Cook Inlet Historical Society.

2001

76. III. Forgotten literacy. In: *Looking both ways. Heritage and identity of the Alutiiq people*. A project of the Arctic Center, Department of Anthropology, National Museum of Natural History, Smithsonian Institut. Hrsg. v. Aron L. Crowell, Amy F. Steffian u. Gordon L. Pullar. Fairbanks, Alaska: University of Alaska Press 2001, pp. 60–61.
77. III. Fusion of cultures and meeting of the frontiers. In memory of ordinary people. In: *"Meeting of the Frontiers"* Conference, University of Alaska Fairbanks, Fairbanks, Alaska, May 17–19, 2001. Internet, Library of Congress, "Meeting of the Frontiers".
77.a III. *Pokoreniie russkimi Kad'iaka. Russkaia Amerika I Dal'nii Vostok, konets XVIII v.–1867 g*. Hrsg. v. A.P. Artemiev. Akademia Nauk 2001, pp. 104–131 [russ. Übers. v. Nr. 52].

2002

78. III. Addendum. In: *Prepodbnyi German Aliaskinskij, Žizneopisaniye*. Hrsg. v. Sergej Korsun. Jordanville, N.Y.: Holy Trinity Monastery, pp. 106–145.
79. VII. Native Alaska christianity (prepared for *American Indian religious traditions: An encyclopedia*, ABC-CLIO, Santa Barbara, CA) [identisch mit Nr. 90 ?].

2003

80. I. *Aleut Art: Unangam Aguqaadangin*. 2. revised and expanded edition. Virginia Beach, VA: The Donning Company Publishers. Copyright: Aleutian / Pribilof Islands Association, Inc.; 208 pp. + Ill.
82. III. Russkie imena v aleutskom obščestve. In: *Russkie Pervoprochodcy na Dal'nem Vostoke v XVII–XIX vv. Istoriko-Archeologičeskie issledovanija*. Vladivostok, pp. 104–110 [cf. Nr. 53].
81. III. The whalers of Little Afognak. In: *The Baranov Quarterly*, März 2003.

2004

83. I. *Russians in Alaska 1732–1867*. Fairbanks, Alaska: University of Alaska Press, 2004; XV + 328 pp. + Ill. + Karten.
84. III. Warriors of Kodiak: Military traditions of Kodiak islanders. In: *Arctic Anthropology* 41 (2), pp. 140–152.

2005

85. III. *A scholar's life well lived*. "Stepping stones to history: Islands in Alaska's past". Alaska Historical Society Conference, Kodiak, Alaska, October 5–8, 2005.
86. III. *Biographical sketches of local persons closely associated with Saint Herman of Alaska and his legacy*, 16. Januar [vorbereitet für das Baranov Museum].
87. III. Šamanism i pravoslavie: neizučennye svjazi i simbioz. Institut istorii, archeologii i ėtnografii narodov Dal'nego Vostoka. Ursprünglich unter dem Titel „Shamanism and Orthodox Christianity. An unexplored symbiotic relationship" vorgelegt auf der Jesup Centenary Conference, New York, November 1997.
88. III. *Spruce Island: A history*. Conference about the development of the settlement of New Valaam (now Monk's Lagoon) and Saint Herman, Baranov Museum. 25. März.
89. III. *Vojenno-morskoe ministerstvo i Rossijsko-Amerikanskaja kompanija (Neizučennaya problema i nepredvidennyie posledstvija)*. Institut istorii, archeologii i ėtnografii narodov Dal'nego Vostoka (ursprünglich vorgelegt als "The Imperial Navy, V. M. Golovnin, and Baranov's Removal" auf der internationalen Konferenz anläßlich des 200. Jahrestages der Gründung der Russisch-Amerikanischen Gesellschaft und der Erkundung der Amerikanischen Zivilisation als historischem Phänomen. Center for North American Studies, Institute of World History, Russian Academy of Sciences, Moscow, 6–9 September 1999).
90. IV. Missionization, Alaska. In: *American Indian religious traditions: An encyclopedia*. Hrsg. v. Suzanne J. Crawford u. Dennis F. Kelley. Santa Barbara, CA: ABC-CLIO Inc., 2005, pp. 510–516 [identisch mit Nr. 79 ?].

2006

91. III. *Whaling on Kodiak*, presented on whale fest event, Baranov Museum, 14. April.
92. VII. *Katmai, summary for Lake Clark/ and Katmai National Parks and Preserves*. 8 pp.

2008

93. I. [Hrsg.; zusamment mit Nora Marks Dauenhauer u. Richard Dauenhauer]: *Anóoshi lingít aaní ká. Russians in Tlingit America. The battles of Sitka 1802, and 1804*. Seattle: University of Washington Press (Classics of Tlingit Oral Literature 4).

In Vorbereitung

94. I. [zusammen mit Donald W. Clark]: *History of Kodiak Archipelago settlement and population, 18th century to present*.

Unveröffentlichte Manuskripte (ohne Jahr)

95. VII. [zusammen mir Barbara Sweetland Smith]: *The church of Father Ioann*.
96. VII. *The invisible contemporary art of Alaska native peoples*. 5 pp.
97. VII. *The journey's end*. 7 pp. [1970er Jahre].
98. VII. *Lecture at Baranov Museum on Chirikov Island*. Ohne Jahr [2005 oder 2006].

R O C Z N I K O R I E N T A L I S T Y C Z N Y, T. LXV, Z. 2, 2012, (s. 131–140)

EWA ZAJDLER

Optimizing the Process of Basic Modern Chinese Teaching and Proficiency Tests for Adults in Sinological Glottodidactics in the Polish Language Environment

Abstract

The sinological studies in Poland and the Chinese language teaching have a long tradition. Due to the growing interest in Chine, the increasing need for the Chinese language competences has to be outlined. The teachers' attention to teaching process is expected to be consistent with the level-specific curriculum, both for the teaching and testing language proficiency. Thus, fallowing the experience of commonly taught languages in Europe, the European standards derived from *Common European Framework of Reference for Languages: learning, teaching, assessment* (2001) have become the base for the framework of teaching and assessing Chinese language competences on the basic level A1 and A2.

Keywords: CEFR, teaching Chinese, level-specific curriculum, planning the teaching process

The sinological studies and the teaching of Chinese carried out at the University of Warsaw have a long tradition that goes back to the 1930s and has contributed to the broad perspective of the European and worldwide studies of the Chinese philosophy, classics, tradition, literature, culture, language and society. Having neared the end of the 20th century, the hitherto practice in glottodidactics – frequently referred to as the teaching of rare languages – had to face the challenge of the expansion of teaching Chinese beyond the experienced academic centres. As a consequence, the Chinese linguistics in Poland has turned towards applied linguistics.

CEFR as a language teaching standard in Europe

Following three decades of expert works in the field, the Council of Europe released the final version of the official document titled *Common European Framework of Reference for Languages: Learning, Teaching, Assessment* (abbreviated further as CEFR). The book is intended for people involved in organizing and programming language teaching process in the broad sense of the term as well as for language learners undergoing the process. Going far beyond the matters concerning the teaching and learning process, the publication starts a discussion about providing instructions with regard to less-commonly taught languages in Europe (ESOKJ[1] 2003:5,7-8, Komorowska 2003:74–75, Martyniuk 2007:63). The publication neither determines nor restricts the teaching activities; rather than that, it offers a mode of categorization to be used for describing the teaching process from both teacher's and learner's perspectives.

The CEFR refers to and comes out of the plurilingualism and pluriculturalism of the communities in Europe, where language education means not only a second language instruction but, first of all, the development of communicative competence in the pluricultural context. Thanks to numerous experts and their long-term practice, *the languages that are commonly taught in Europe* have been taught in line with appropriately prepared courses and proficiency tests carried out within properly distinguished language levels, while courses in less-commonly taught languages have been offered without clear-cut criteria regarding the levels and scope of teaching programs.

CEFR – a new context for teaching Chinese

The growing interest in Modern Chinese in Europe is a consequence of the economic development we have recently been witnessing in China. Parallel to the call for standardized language instructions in Europe, the demand to certify language competence according to the levels being taught increases as well. The CEFR points to a substantial value of the objectives and the obvious socio-cultural dimension of language education. Communicative language competences consisting of the linguistic, sociolinguistic and pragmatic components, namely knowledge, skills and know-how, sensitivity to social conventions, mastery of discourse, cohesion and coherence, as well as of language activities and strategies to interact through reception and production are described systematically and from a holistic perspective (CEFR 2001:13–14). Therefore the CEFR is regarded as a proper tool to optimise the process of Modern Chinese teaching and proficiency tests. The CEFR offers the A (basic) to C (proficiency) levels objectives and assumptions to be described in a way adequate for the corresponding curricula and to be applied

[1] Polish edition of *Common European Framework of Reference for Languages: Learning, Teaching, Assessment*, (2001).

gradually and effectively within any programmed language course in the range of the given level. Yet the CEFR offers a subdivision of the level if it is justified in the scheme of the curriculum. The scope of the given level should never refer to the particular educational context (CEFR 2001:33–36). Regarded as a document "of crucial importance for language education throughout the European Union … [it] sets new standards in developing foreign language teaching curricula" (Szczepaniak-Kozak 2005:290). In addition to descriptors, the CEFR uses action-oriented approach to outline the priority goals in language (Martyniuk 2007:64). Since the communication is an act performed by a person embedded in a certain context of everyday life in a community, the CEFR treats each of such acts as a descriptor rooted in the situation, purpose, task and theme. The individual, social and cultural conditions make learner persist constantly in language competence development (CEFR 2001:9, 45). The CEFR does not promote any teaching method, thus being able to meet the requirements of any mode of language teaching. It is highly appreciable that the CEFR "has adopted the principle of the non-evaluative attitude to language teaching. It means that any teaching method, any in-class technique and any final choice as to the purpose or content of teaching is considered on equal basis" (Komorowska 2003:77).

Along with the experience in teaching and research in language acquisition and cognition, the CEFR seems to be a starting point to render the levels distinguishable and explicit both for the practice of teaching and for the proficiency certifying within the wide range of language teaching policies. The teacher's intuitional attempts to adapt and revise a language course can be useful and sufficient in its local dimension. To make language testing and certifying reliable, the course levels and testing curricula have to comply with the European standardisation. Therefore the qualitative and quantitative method applied to scale proficiency levels of language competence can invest them with reliability in the certain research context, especially with regard to teaching, measurement and research group. Quantitative analysis, however, is a theoretical and steady process and only under that condition can it contribute to reliability estimation (CEFR 2001:21–22). "Its [CEFR] proper role is to encourage all those involved as partners in a language learning / teaching process to state as explicitly and transparently as possible their own theoretical basis and their practical procedures. In order to fulfil this role it sets out parameters, categories, criteria and scales" (CEFR 2001:18); it offers the perspective of language teaching theory and practice, as well as of language acquisition, that is oriented towards new solutions, without preference of any particular ones over others.

Planning the teaching process

In the new millennium, planning the teaching process in Poland – an inherent part of the European educational market – cannot be pursued independently of the Council of Europe's concept of a plurilingual and pluricultural community that is capable of

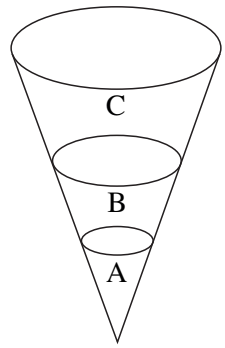
effective communication and exchange of achievements and values. Thus for the use in teaching Chinese, basing on the CEFR's original division into three broad levels (A – Basic User, B – Independent User, C – Proficient User), six levels divided further into two sublevels are proposed, using letters and numbers to denominate level codes (see CEFR 2001:23–24, Martyniuk 2007:65) as shown below:

Breakthrough – Elementary A1.1
Breakthrough – Basic A1.2
Waystage – Extended A2.1
Waystage – Target A2.2

Threshold – Pre-Threshold B1.1
Threshold – Threshold Proper B1.2
Vantage – Prefatory B2.1
Vantage – Relative B2.2

Effective Operational Proficiency – Intermediate C1.1
Effective Operational Proficiency – Advanced C1.2
Mastery – Professional C2.1
Mastery – Expert Professional C2.2

Each level consists of less and more advanced stages of language competence which are numbered 1 or 2 (with extensions). If needed, further distinctions to scale the levels of the courses are possible. Such division occurs to be of importance in the light of a relatively slow increase in language competence within a language course when compared to the teaching of European languages. Only an intensive multi-hour course can cover the syllabus for the main level, like A1, A2, B1 etc. It must be emphasized that learning Chinese is time-consuming and every step has to be completed carefully in a course, otherwise a learner will quit already at an early stage, unable to build up communicative competence determined by linguistic competences. Yet since the level-specific curriculum is not in any way linked to the teaching materials or methods, its code never indicates the level to be completed within a course but the level within which that given course is covered. Language proficiency consists of the skills of using that language in the communication tasks. There is no absolute value of competences that would stretch across the full scope of proficiency for the particular level and fulfil with accuracy the criteria that permit advancement to the next level in a sequence. Yet the distance between the proficiency levels marked A, B and C does not imply equal time and effort involved in achieving the goal (CEFR 2001:31–33). Any higher and more advanced level always has a wider scope and is founded upon the already worked out skills, as pictured below:



If a course covers part of the objectives of the curriculum defined for the given level, it should define in a code the scope for the level of intermediate stages. An action-oriented approach offered in the CEFR to teach the use of language as the communication tasks in the community uses various criteria for descriptors, and therefore a thematic and lexical range along with the linguistic competences have been applied in the basic level curriculum for Chinese language teaching.

Basic level curriculum

Most native speakers of Polish start classes in Chinese without any socio-cultural background as regards the Chinese context. Therefore understanding the culture and some basic linguistic guidelines provides them with an idea of the communicative context in Chinese. Linguistic knowledge in itself is not the aim here; it is a source of a conscious approach to see the language and its written code, the characters, as a systemic structure in phonology and phonetics, syntax, semantics and orthography, all of them being essential in developing integrated communication skills. One must first acquire language components and the four skills to be able to use them if they are to be integrated in an act of communication.

The objectives and assumptions for the basic level curriculum have been determined by the language activities to be provided for within the scope relevant for the level as well as the linguistic competences and the strategies conditioning reception and production, required for the A1 and A2 levels. The said activities are delineated in the curriculum by the anticipated verbal communication skills in the socio-cultural context of the specified area, along with the necessary lexical and grammatical competences in that respect. Using CEFR (2001) as an instrument that facilitates incorporating the sinological glottodidactics into the European standards of learning, teaching and assessing language competences, a curriculum for the basic level has been proposed here. The four skills, namely listening, speaking, reading and writing, along with the starting skills and the fragmentary linguistic and socio-cultural skills, have to be cultivated at every level. However, attention must be paid to keep them well-proportioned and sequenced properly at every stage of the

teaching / learning process. A teaching program, if drawn out of the curriculum rooted in the CEFR's task approach, guarantees sequential stages and effective support in the proficiency competence development.

The teaching programs and materials can differ in highlighting skills and abilities. What matters most is their inner coherence and consistency with the curriculum, which is not a guide for the teaching process but a kind of well programmed approach and syllabus of the formal tools needed for the expected communication range. Therefore teaching methods are not included in the curriculum.

Objectives and assumptions

The main goal in Chinese language teaching at the basic level is to provide learner with the communicative competence corresponding to the scope of the Waystage – Target level (A2.2). However, that stage requires an approach which can provide true beginners[2] with learning techniques and strategies and give them a chance to develop language proficiency in all four skills in the future. Due to the difficulties in pronouncing Chinese tones as well as in writing and reading Chinese characters while taking the first steps in the learning process, the starting skills, which strongly determine the fluent and correct use of the spoken and written language, have been distinguished. The very basic language competence cannot emerge without advanced phonation skills that would correspond with the articulatory phonetics. As regards the reading and writing skills and the acquisition of lexemes, awareness of the radicals and the kinetic memory of the strokes in a word notation contribute to the passive recognition of the semantics of ideograms and to the active inscription of a word as well as to imaging while processing the word in one's mind. The basic level curriculum refers to simple everyday contacts, routines, places, issues that fit within the category of pragmatic functions which form a natural basis for word-formation categories. They are part of the set of entries defined for the program in quantitative terms estimated by the number of lexical and grammatical morphemes. They include the vocabulary for true beginners, starting from naming persons and things in learners' direct environment to everyday affairs a foreigner can face in a Chinese-speaking community. Thus for the A1 level there are approximately 450 morphemes, and for the A2 level there are some 1,000 morphemes in the simplified and traditional writing systems (i.e. 600 and 1,300 characters in the two systems, respectively). Grammar issues introduce word, phrase and sentence constructing issues that are necessary for elementary and basic communication in the cases of simple contacts with native users of Chinese as provided for in the CEFR indicators. Parallel to gradual advancement in the basic linguistic behavior, it is also necessary to make learners familiar with social and cultural realities so that their knowledge of the culture and the society facilitated, motivated and

[2] A true beginner starts learning, while a false beginner is already familiar with some words or structures but his / her experience with a new language is insufficient to let him / her communicate.

enhanced the usage of the learned structures and expressions in communicative contexts. The optimum time of completing the program for each of the two discussed levels, i.e. A1 and A2, has been estimated on the basis of the hitherto practice as about 240 hours of practical classes in Modern Chinese.

Proposed curriculum for teaching basic Modern Chinese – set of entries (Zajdler 2010)

Phonetics and orthography[3]

Phonetic transcription – the *pinyin*, tone marking
Relation between a sound and a letter in the *pinyin* transcription; register of tones
Exercising phonological hearing and the articulation of sounds
Matters related to writing Chinese characters, traditional vs. simplified characters
Radicals
Dictionary exercises

Thematic and lexical entries for A1

Polite phrases
Basic information about oneself and others
Names of everyday items, clothes, rooms at home
Family, children, education, profession
Countries, languages, popular Chinese last names
Ownership, belonging
Condition and features of people and objects in the closest environment
Directions and relations in space
Daily routines, moving around, shopping
Important public buildings (such as the office, the school, the university, the library, the railway station, the shop etc.)
Numbers, amount, money
Time, calendar
Basic information about accommodation, basic personal information in a form / an ID
Means of transportation
Attitude to the contents of an utterance (modality) within the basic scope of the following: want, be able to, can, have
Basic groceries, selected dishes
Basic interaction (questions, answers and negations expressed in phrases and in sentences)

[3] Basically for the A1 level

Scope of grammar entries for A1

Personal pronouns, possessive pronouns, demonstrative pronouns
A copular sentence
SVO sequence in the sentence
Question words: 誰, 什麼, 誰的, 哪個, 怎麼, 哪兒, 什麼時候, 幾, 多少,
Question words position in the sentence
Negation 不 and 沒
Question particles 嗎 and 呢
Verb-NEG-Verb questions
Most often used adverbs
Adjectives as a predicate and as a modifier; attributive and structural particle 的
Default object and content object, the VO verbs
Numbers
Most popular classifiers
Adjectives 多 and 少; quantifier phrases
Interrogative pronouns concerning date and time, word order in interrogative sentences
Position of the adverbial of time in a sentence
Prepositional vs. post-verbal locative phrases
Time and location prepositions
Question Word referring to the location; word order
Intensifiers to adjectives as a predicate and as a modifier
Focussing construction 是... 的
Most frequent modal verbs
Imperative particle 吧
Directional verbs

Thematic and lexical entries for A2

Extending the limited vocabulary from the thematic range for A1: an individual / family and friends / one's close environment and places / activities / daily routines / everyday items
Expressing intensity of a feature and skill level
Assessing intensity and skill level
Comparing, similarities and differences in features and abilities
Expressing consent, will, possibility; naming skills, abilities (or lack of any of these)
Requests and orders
Naming current activity and activity planned for the future
Parallelism, sequence and conditionality of activities
Expressing the perfective aspect and the resultativity of simple daily routines
Expressing the duration of an activity
Education, employment, dealing with basic formalities in an office

General physical and mental state, basic communication with a physician
Entertainment, leisure, hobbies, basic information about traveling
Natural phenomena, seasons, weather
Favorite places, colors, elements of culture and tradition
Expressing percentage, fractions, numbers up to a million (the specificity of the numeric system in the range up to 10,000)

Scope of grammar entries for A2

Ordinal numbers
Negative particle in the imperative 别
Most frequent modal verbs (follow-up)
Degree complement (得+ intensifiers and manner adverbials)
Manner phrase with 地
Constructions that link concurrent, sequenced, conditional activities
Constructions that express comparing features and abilities
Prepositional construction that expresses distance and direction
The perfective particle 了and the experiential particle 過
Pivotal sentences
Cause-and-effect construction
Directional and resultative verbs (follow-up)
Potential verbs
Modal particles
Durative aspect
Topicalization, SOV order, 把 construction
被 construction
Classifiers (follow-up)
Verbal classifiers
Compound sentences and basic copulative, disjunctive and adversative conjunctions
Adverbs and particles used in the phrase and sentence structures listed above
Reduplication

The sociolinguistic and cultural aspect for the basic level covers basic polite phrases, skillful establishment of contacts and participation in simple informal conversations in line with the conversation formats suitable for the Eastern culture. Moreover, the symbols (e.g. the dragon), colors (e.g. red), rituals (such as expressing respect), values (social order etc.) linked directly with the culture of the East as well as the richness of tradition and thought represented by the Chinese characters constitute a background for learning the language and implementing communication.

Provided that the CEFR promotes the plurilingual and intercultural communication approach to the language education, the attempt to standardize Chinese language teaching in Poland according to its principles seems reasonable. The very first step on the way to

achieve that goal has been to draft the curriculum for the basic level with the basis of the language functions and items on the said level, with a broad space to create teaching programs for the courses dedicated to diverse addressees and proceeded in various ways. In a long-ranging perspective, the basic level can serve as a stable point of reference for the certification tests which are assumed as a means to evaluate examined people's fluency in a language rather that their achievements within the language courses taken.

The unification of teaching content and assessment criteria is proposed under the common theme of language tasks and positive description of the acquired skills (the 'Can Do' descriptors). The issue of assessment, an integral component of the educational activities, has been undertaken in this study from the perspective of the certification tests in language competences on the basic level. Based on the levels provided for in the framework, it is possible to carry out exams and certify overall language proficiency regardless of the mode of education, the learning time, the nature of the detailed teaching program, and the methods and materials used in the teaching process. The framework offers a unified scope of language competences that can be arrived at with the use of a variety of methods. Bearing in mind the requirement to chart the direction for developing external exams carried out to certify language proficiency, the author hereby points to objective testing and analytical assessment criteria as the optimum methods of external assessment of language competences.

Starting with the basic level A1 and A2, this article is meant to encourage a discussion and an analysis of the process of language teaching and the assessment of proficiency in Chinese.

References

Council of Europe, *Common European Framework of Reference for Languages: Learning, Teaching, Assessment* (CEFR), Cambridge University Press, Cambridge 2001, http://www.coe.int/T/DG4/Portfolio/documents/0521803136txt.pdf (June 30, 2010).

Komorowska Hanna, *Europejski system opisu kształcenia językowego w pracy nauczyciela*, „Języki Obce w Szkole" 6/2003, pp. 74–80.

Martyniuk Waldemar, *European Frameworks of References for Language Competences*, in: W. Martyniuk (ed.), *Towards a Common European Framework of School Education?*, Universitas, Kraków 2007, pp. 61–80.

Rada Europy, *Europejski system opisu kształcenia językowego: uczenie się, nauczanie, ocenianie* (ESOKJ), CODN, Warszawa 2003 [Eng. Council of Europe, D. Coste et al., *Common European Framework of Reference for Languages: Learning, Teaching, Assessment*, Cambridge University Press, Strasbourg––Cambridge 2001.]

Szczepaniak-Kozak Anna, *Konstruowanie programów nauczania według europejskiego systemu opisu kształcenia językowego*, in: P. Waśko et al. (ed.), *Polski system edukacji po reformie 1999 roku*, Elipsa, Poznań–Warszawa 2005, pp. 290–294.

Zajdler Ewa, *Glottodydaktyka sinologiczna. Optymalizacja procesu nauczania dorosłych i testowania biegłości we współczesnym języku chińskim na poziomie podstawowym w glottodydaktyce sinologicznej w polskim środowisku językowym*, Wydawnictwo Akademickie Dialog, Warszawa 2010.

R O C Z N I K O R I E N T A L I S T Y C Z N Y, T. LXV, Z. 2, 2012, (s. 141–161)

Recenzje

ARAM Periodical. Volume 16 – *Mandaeans and Manichaeans*, Peeters, Leuven 2004, IX+314 pp. *ARAM Periodical*. Volume 22 – *The Mandaeans*, Peeters, Leuven 2010, VII+611 pp.

The two volumes under review belong to the series of annuals published by the ARAM Society for Syro-Mesopotamian Studies, based at the Oriental Institute of Oxford University. As a rule, the issues of the periodical contain the papers read at international conferences organized by the Society. They deal with the past of the Aramaic world and with its offshoots, inclusive of Syriac, Mandaic, Palestinian Christianity, etc. The two fascicles of vol. 1 (1989) appeared as a journal, but vol. 2 already provides the papers read at a conference on Nabataeans, held at Oxford in 1989, and vol. 3 contains the proceedings of a conference dealing with the Syriac-Arabic cultural interchange during the Abbasid era in Iraq, held likewise at Oxford in 1991. Vol. 4 contains the papers of the conference on Decapolis, held at Oxford in 1992, while vol. 5 was dedicated in 1993 to Sebastian P. Brock, a world-wide known specialist of Syriac, passed away a few years ago. Vol. 6 deals with cultural interchange during the Umayyad period in Bilād aš-Šām, i.e. in Syria-Palestine, while Palmyra is the subject of vol. 7, and the Near-Eastern trade routes constitute the central topic of vol. 8. Vols. 9 and 10, issued in 1999, concern the history and archaeology of the Mamluk and early Ottoman periods in Bilād aš-Šām. Vols. 11-12 deal with Antioch, Edessa, the Arabian Peninsula, also with the Mandaeans, which provide the special topic for vols. 16 and 22, presented here below. The history and archaeology of Beirut, as well as water problems in the pre-modern Near East, are the subject of vols. 13-14, while Palestinian Christianity since 500 A.D. is dealt with in vols. 15, 18, 19, concerning also pilgrimages and shrines. Related topics on Prophet Elijah, St. George, etc., are treated in vol. 20. Surprisingly, at first sight, alcohol is the topic of vol. 17. Instead, important contributions to modern Syriac literature are presented in vol. 21, issued in 2009.

Vol. 16, dealing with the Mandaeans and the Manichaeans, contains the proceedings of conferences held in 2002 at Oxford University, while vol. 22 on the Mandaeans includes the papers of the Sydney conference in 2007 and of the Oxford conference in 2009. The majority of Mandaeans immigrated to Australia live in or around the Liverpool quarter of

western Sydney and use an area at the Nepean River, west of Sydney, for their religious rites. This site at Penrith was specially allocated to them by the local council to undertake Mandaean ceremonies that incorporate their "baptism" in the river, a fundamental rite of Mandaean religious practice. These circumstances explain the organization of a scholarly conference on Mandaeism at Sydney.

The Mandaeans are a Gnostic sect of southern Iraq and south-western Iran, attested from the early first millennium A.D. on. The publication of their holy writs, the recent discovery of vernacular Mandaic still spoken by some emigrants, their present-day religious practices, and the fact that the language of their writings hardly differs from Jewish Babylonian Aramaic aroused great interest in recent linguistic, religio-historical, and ethnographic studies. Two new series of scholarly text editions and studies have been created by publishers to collect apposite works: *Mandäistische Forschungen*, edited by Rainer Voigt and published by Harrassowitz at Wiesbaden, and *Corpus Codicum Mandaeorum*, edited by Rifaat Ebied and Erica Hunter, and published by Brepols at Turnhout. Besides, ARAM Society already plans conferences on Mandaeism at Stockholm University in July 2013 and at Berlin University in July 2017.

The First paper of vol. 16 by Kurt Rudolph stresses *The Relevance of Mandaean Literature for the Study of Near Eastern Religions* (pp. 1–12), describing the particular place of the Mandaeans in the Near Eastern history of the first and second millennia A.D. until their flight from their old Iraqi and Iranian settlements in the aftermath of the Gulf Wars of the 1980's and the early 1990's. One of their holy writs, the *John-Book*, is presented by Jorunn Jacobsen Buckley, *A Re-investigation of the Book of John* (pp. 13–23), in which John the Baptist plays an important role. The Author discusses it by comparing the little-known Danish doctoral dissertation by Viggo Schou-Pedersen, *Bidrag til en analyse af de mandaeiske skrifter* (Aarhus 1940) with Edmondo Lupieri's book, *The Mandaeans: the Last Gnostics* (Grand Rapids-Cambridge 2002). The next paper by Edmondo Lupieri himself deals with *Friar Ignatius of Jesus (Carlo Leonelli) and The First "Scholarly" Book on Mandaeism (1652)* (pp. 25–46). This Carmelite missionary, working at Basra, regarded the Mandaeans as "Christians of Saint John" and wrote a book dealing with their origin, rituals, and errors. Christa Müller-Kessler, well-known for having edited Syro-Palestinian texts, as well as Jewish Aramaic and Mandaic magical inscriptions, deals with *The Mandaeans and the Question of Their Origin* (pp. 47–60), arguing that Mandaean creed and practices originated among the Aramaic population of Babylonia. Roberta Borghero then describes *Some Phonetic Features of a Mandaean Manuscript from the 17th Century* (pp. 61–83) housed in the Library of Leiden University. This is a handwritten glossary in Mandaic, Arabic, Latin, Turkish, and Persian, probably composed by an Italian Carmelite, called Matteo di San Giuseppe, who was one of the first missionaries in the Mandaean community of Basra. The paper of Bogdan Burtea, *Šarḥ ḏ-Paruanaiia. A Mandaean Ritual Commentary* (pp. 85–93), presents a Mandaean ritual text belonging to the Drower Collection (DC 24) in the Bodleian Library. It was the subject of his Ph.D. dissertation and was published by him in 2005: *Das mandäische Fest der Schalttage* (Wiesbaden 2005). His transcription system is unfortunately problematic, especially in

the case of pharyngeals, and it makes it difficult for the reader to trace the original spelling back.

The next article by Desmond Durkin-Meisterernst deals with *The Parthian* mwqr'nyg b'š'ḫ (pp. 95–107), a Turfan fragment (M4a I V 3-16) containing a Manichaean hymn in Parthian and believed to be based on an Aramaic original. The Author refers to a somewhat similar passage in the *Ginza*, the main Mandaean holy writ, and assumes that both depend on Aramaic texts of the 3rd or 4th century A.D. Şinasi Gündüz then points at *Mandaean Parallels in Yezidī Beliefs and Folklore* (pp. 109–126), which is not surprising if the Mandaeans were native from Adiabene, as recorded in the 8th century A.D. by Theodore bar Koni, Nestorian bishop of Kashkar, near al-Waṣit (Iraq).

The second part of vol. 16 deals with Manichaeans, whose technical terms can often be traced back to their Syriac roots. Samuel N.C. Lieu thus presents *Manichaean Terms in Syriac: Some Observations on Their Transmission and Transformation* (pp. 129–140). Desmond Durkin-Meisterernst deals then with *The Apotropaic Magical Text M389 and M8430/I in Manichaean Middle Persian* (pp. 141–160), providing readable photographs of both fragments, obverse and reverse. The topic of Jason David Bedhun's paper are *The Near Eastern Connections of Manichaean Confessionary Practice* (pp. 161–177): Akkadian, Jewish, Christian. Since Mani was raised as an Elchasaite Christian, *The* Book of Elchasai *in Its Relevance for Manichaean Institutions* is dealt with by F. Stanley Jones (pp. 179–215), who also provides a reconstruction and translation of the book, based on its quotations by Epiphanius, Origen, Hippolytus, and some other sources. John C. Reeves than raises the question of *A Manichaean "Blood-Libel"?* (pp. 217–232). Frédéric Nicolas Alpi deals with *Les Manichéens et le Manichéisme dans les* Homélies cathédrales *de Sévère d'Antioche (512–518)*: *Observations sur l'*HC *123 et sur quelques passages négligés* (pp. 233–243). Two papers consider Ephrem's relations to Manichaeism: *«Odysseus Bruises». Traces of Literary Influence between the Manichaeans and Ephrem Syrus* is the title of Tudor Andrei Sala's article (pp. 245–262), while Marcus Bierbaums examines the views of *Ephraim the Syrian on Freedom of Will in Manichaeism (PR I-XXVIII: First Discourse to Hypatios) – Reference to Manichaean Common Property?* (pp. 263–277). A short paper by François Decret presents *Le Manichéisme en Afrique du Nord et ses rapports avec la secte en Orient* (pp. 279–283). The final article of vol. 16 by Helmut Waldmann presents a rather humorous subject: *Manichaeism shapes Modern Europe. Seen from Example: our Parliamentary System* (pp. 285–293).

Vol. 22 deals only with Mandaeism, also in its present form, as practiced in Australia by expatriated Mandaeans. Beside the text editions at the end of the volume, only one article by Matthew Morgenstern considers linguistic questions: *Jewish Babylonian Aramaic and Mandaic*: *Some Points of Contact* (pp. 1–14). Phonological features dealt with are the loss of the pharyngeals and the widespread appearance of anaptyctic vowels. The second topic concerns the enclitisation of the prepositions *b-* and *l-* with the consequent assimilation of the final *waw* or *nun* of verbal forms, for instance *amarillī*, "I said to him". The third subject dealt with is the conjugation of the irregular verb *y-h-b*. Jorunn J. Buckley then presents *New Perspectives on the Sage Dinanukt in* Right Ginza *6*

(pp. 15–29), a wise scribe – half-book, half-human. In the next paper, Mark J. Lofts considers *Mandaeism – the Sole Extant Tradition of a Sethian Gnosticism* (pp. 31–59), a subject also dealt with in this volume by J.J. Buckley (pp. 495–507). Garry W. Trompf and Brikha H.S. Nasoraia are *Reflecting on the "Rivers Scroll"* (pp. 61–86), published in 1982 by Kurt Rudolph, while Iain Gardner is *Searching for Traces of the 'Utria in the Coptic Manichaica* (pp. 87–96) and argues that there are unmistakeable traces of these divine beings in Coptic Manichaean texts. The ritual of the Mandaean sacramental meal is then described by Edward F. Crangle and Brikha H.S. Nasoraia: *Soul Food: The Mandaean Laufani* (pp. 97–132). This article is illustrated by photographs taken by Crangle at the *Laufa* ceremony. Book 18 of *Right Ginza* is then examined by Dan D.Y. Shapira, *On Kings and on the Last Days in Seventh Century Iraq: A Mandaean Text and Its Parallels* (pp. 133–170). Jennifer Hart deals further with the parallelism between John the Baptist in Mandaean writings and Mohammed: *Yahia as Mandaean Rasul? Some Thoughts on Islam's Influence on the Development of Mandaean Literature* (pp. 171–181). Further studies on Mandaean-Islamic relations are provided below by A.Sh. Gasimova, I.I. Nadirov, J. Hart, and E. Cottrell.

Mandaean manuscripts contain drawings of specific trees or plants; one of them is examined with illustrations by Sandi Van Rompaey, *The Tree Šatrin and Its Place in Mandaean Art* (pp. 183–207). Possible means to preserve Mandaean cultural heritage are then presented by Charles G. Häberl, *The Cultural Survival of the Mandaeans* (pp. 209–226). The Mandaean *Book of the Zodiac* is compared by Daphna Arbel with Babylonian divinatory traditions and with the Hebrew III Enoch*: "Acquainted with the Mystery of Heavens and Earth":* Sfar Malwašia, *Mesopotamian Divinatory Traditions, and 3 Enoch* (pp. 227–242). One turns back to the relations between Mandaeism and early Islam with the paper of Aida Shahlar Gasimova, dealing with Sabians in three Qur'ānic passages and in the very confusing, mediaeval Arabic sources: *The Sabi'ans as One of the Religious Groups in Pre-Islamic Arabia and Their Definition through the Qur'an and Medieval Arabic Sources* (pp. 243–261). A second article of Sandi Van Rompaey deals with *The Symbolism of the* Drabša *in the Mandaean Illustrated Manuscripts: The* Drabša *of Radiance* (pp. 263–310). The *drabša*, "banner" or the like, was taken by 17th-century missionaries for a cross. Covered with a white sheet, as shown by the illustrations of pp. 299–310, it symbolizes radiating light. References to Mohammed in Mandaean holy writs are identified by Ilnur I. Nadirov, who regards *Bišlom*, *Bizbaṭ*, and *Nirig* as Mohammed's cryptonyms: *Encoded Names of Muhammad in Mandaean Religious Books* (pp. 311–319). One does not understand why *byšlwm* in the *John-Book* 45,2 should be translated "without peace", with a Persian prefix *bē-*, "outside", instead of meaning "in peace": "Lucky is the person who in the imperfect age lives in peace".

Although the Cologne Mani Codex identifies the "baptists" of Mani's youth with Elchasaites, Iain Gardner looks for a Mandaean perspective in *Mani's* Book of Mysteries. *Prolegomena to a New Look at Mani, the "Baptists" and the Mandaeans* (pp. 321–334). John Flannery then presents *The Augustinians and the Mandaeans in the 17th C. Mesopotamia* (pp. 335–348), while Brikha H.S. Nasoraia and Edward F. Crangle describe

the Mandaean contemplative and healing practices: *The* Asuta *Wish:* Adam Kasia *and the Dynamics of Healing in Mandaean Contemplative Practices* (pp. 349–390), with illustrations. *Mandean Macrohistory* is dealt with by Brikha H.S. Nasoraia and Garry W. Trompf (pp. 391–425) on a large background of biblical and Iranian conceptions, mixing myth and history. The impact of Islam on Mandaeism is examined further by Jennifer Hart, *Making a Case for a Connection between Islam and Mandaean Literature* (pp. 427–440), while David Hamidović looks for possible links with the Dead Sea scrolls: *About the Links between the Dead Sea Scrolls and Mandaean Liturgy* (pp. 441–451). The Author contends that his study confirms the Jewish background of Mandaeism, although Mandaean liturgy as such cannot be attributed to the Essenes. Such considerations stop half-way up to the conclusion that Jewish Babylonian practices of the Parthian and Sassanid periods have influenced Mandaean rites and customs to a certain degree. A re-edition of DC 20 with its variant DC 43 E is then proposed by Christa Müller-Kessler, *A Mandaic Incantation against an Anonymous Dew Causing Fright (Drower Collection 20 and Its Variant 43 E)* (pp. 453–476). The whole text is provided in transliteration with an English translation and philological notes. Despite its spelling, the first word *š'pt'* of the title is interpreted as Akkadian *šiptu*. This is obviously *šaptu*, "lips, organ of speech", used in the sense of "speech act", like Hebrew *śāpāh* and Sabaic s^2ft, which can mean "order, injunction". The title *š'pt' ḏ-d'ḥwlwly'* can thus be translated "Injunction for Frights". Transliteration and translation can be compared with the first edition of DC 20 by B. Burtea in *AOAT* 317 (Münster 2005, pp. 71–96). This contribution is followed by Christa Müller-Kessler's edition of a Mandaic lead roll: *A Mandaic Lead Roll in the Collections of the Kesley Museum, Michigan: Fighting Evil Entities of Death* (pp. 477–493). The transliteration and translation of two incantations are followed by philological comments. A third incantation on a lead roll in the Vorderasiatische Museum of Berlin is added as appendix. The printed photographs of the Kesley Museum lead roll, obverse and reverse, are unfortunately unreadable and no facsimile is provided, only a table of characters.

Mandaean-Sethian Connections are examined by Jorunn J. Buckley (pp. 495–507). A partly related subject is dealt with by Emily Cottrell, *Adam and Seth in Arabic Medieval Literature: The Mandaean Connections in al-Mubashsher ibn Fātik's* Choicest Maxims *(11th C.) and Shams al-Dīn al-Shahrazūrī al-Ishrāqī's* History of the Philosophers *(13th C.)* (pp. 509–547). A Neo-Mandaic folktale, collected in Iraq by Lady Drower before World War II, is then published for the first time and commented by Charles G. Häberl, *Flights of Fancy: A Mandaean Folktale of Escape from Persecution* (pp. 549–572). Transcription and translation are followed by philological comments. Next comes an iconographic study by Jay Johnston, *Prolegomena to Considering Drawings of Spirit-Beings in Mandaean, Gnostic and Ancient Magical Texts* (pp. 573–582). The Mandaean story of Miriai is then discussed by James F. Mc Grath, *Reading the Story of Miriai on Two Levels: Evidence from Mandaean Anti-Jewish Polemic about the Origins and Setting of Early Mandaeism* (pp. 583–592).

The volume closes with ARAM news announcing forthcoming conferences and publications. Its content is undoubtedly very rich. It mainly concerns religious history,

although valuable philological studies are presented as well. The reviewer followed the order of the articles, as published in vol. 22, but he wonders whether a grouping of contributions by main themes or study fields would not be advisable in the future, for instance by presenting all the articles dealing with Mandaean-Islamic relations in one section, text editions and linguistic studies in another one, etc. This is just a suggestion to the chief-editor of ARAM, dr. Shafiq Abouzayd, who should be congratulated for the whole work he is accomplishing.

Edward Lipiński

Yosef Garfinkel, Saar Ganor and Michael Hasel, *Footsteps of King David in the Valley of Elah. Sensational Discoveries in Biblical Archaeology* (in Hebrew), Yedioth Ahronoth, Tel Aviv 2012, 229 pp. with 48 drawings and 65 colour plates.

After the scholarly report of the excavations conducted by Y. Garfinkel and S. Ganor in 2007 and 2008 at Khirbet Qeiyafa (cf. "Rocznik Orientalistyczny" 64/2 [2011], pp. 131–133), the Israeli archaeologists of the Hebrew University published a work aiming at a larger audience and taking the results of the excavations in 2009–2011 into account. The Hebrew inscription on an ostracon, dating from the early 10th century B.C., was the most important discovery of the earlier seasons and its presentation by H. Misgav and A. Yardeni is summarized in the present volume with photographs, a copy, and a synoptic table of characters (pp. 123–132, pls. 51–52). Instead, no reference is made to decipherments and comments by other scholars, especially by É. Puech, largely followed by the reviewer (references in "Rocznik Orientalistyczny" 64/2 [2011], pp. 131–132). Among the discoveries of the last seasons one should point in particular at the miniature sanctuaries in stone (*ca*. 10 x 12 cm.; 12 x 20 cm.; 20 x 35 cm.), discovered in houses (pp. 133–163, pls. 58–65). They most likely contained a figurine. The head of a figurine has in fact been found, and the Authors wonder whether this was a "Voodoo" or a household god (pp. 163–164). In a biblical context, one should rather refer to the *teraphim*, which are termed *'ĕlohīm*, "gods", in the Books Genesis 31:30,32 and Judges 18:24, and may designate ancestor figurines. The discovered miniature sanctuaries and the figurine head would then constitute an outstanding archaeological documentation on these *teraphim*.

The Authors connect the Iron Age findings of Khirbet Qeiyafa with the earlier period of David's reign in Jerusalem (pp. 174–193), but this opinion is based on the symbolic length of forty years attributed in the Hebrew Bible to each of the reigns of David and of Solomon. Instead, more reliable data place the reigns of both kings in Jerusalem *ca*. 960–928/7 B.C. with 928/7 being Year 1 of Rehoboam, son of Solomon (I Kings 14:25; cf. "Rocznik Orientalistyczny" 64/2 [2011], pp. 126–127). Since Rehoboam became king at the age of 16 according to the Septuagint (III Kings 12:24a) and was most likely

the eldest Solomon's son, born two or three years after the latter's accession to the throne at the age of twelve, as stated in III Kings 2:12 and in the *Seder Olam Rabba* 14, one may date the birth of Solomon *ca*. 959/8 B.C., about two years after the conquest of Jerusalem by David, if we rely on the historical background hidden behind the account of II Samuel 11:2-12:23 (cf. E. Lipiński, *Itineraria Phoenicia*, Leuven 2004, pp. 499–500). David's reign in Jerusalem started then *ca*. 961/0 B.C. after a longue career of arms in the service of King Saul and of the Philistines, and a shorter reign at Hebron. The unique Iron Age stratum at Khirbet Qeiyafa is certainly somewhat older and must go back to the time of King Saul, as indicated also by the inscription on ostracon, at least if we follow the decipherment and the quite convincing interpretation of É. Puech.

The material culture of Khirbet Qeiyafa should then be regarded as belonging to the North-Israelite tribe of Benjamin, a member of which was precisely King Saul. His power centre was Gibea of Benjamin, usually identified with Tell al-Fūl, some 30 km. north-east of Khirbet Qeiyafa. Since the first king of Israel was a Benjaminite, the tribe of Benjamin must have been an important one at that time, with a larger territory than the one attributed to the Benjaminites in later written sources. Moreover, the association of Khirbet Qeiyafa with an intermediate Iron I-II North-Israelite territorial formation is acceptable also from an archaeological view point, as shown by a recent study of I. Finkelstein and A. Fantalkin, *Khirbet Qeiyafa: An Unsensational Archaeological and Historical Interpretation*, "Tel Aviv" 39 (2012), pp. 38–63, in particular pp. 52–55.

Leaving this important historical and archaeological question aside, one should stress the high quality of the presentation of the site of Khirbet Qeiyafa and of the material discovered there in the volume under review. The lavish illustrations provided by the 65 splendid colour plates and the maps, plans, drawings of objects, synoptic tables of data constitute an important source of information also for scholars not used to read books in *'ivrīt*.

Edward Lipiński

Eulàlia Vernet i Pons, *Origen etimològic dels verbs làmed-he de l'hebreu masorètic. Un estudi sobre la formació de les arrels verbals en semític* (Publicacions de la Societat Catalana d'Estudis Hebraics 2), Barcelona 2011, 404 pp.

The book of Mrs. Vernet i Pons is based on her doctoral dissertation directed by Prof. Gregorio del Olmo Lete and presented at Barcelona University. It is an etymological study of the verbs having *h* as third radical in Masoretic Hebrew. As well known, the third consonant of this group of verbs can etymologically correspond to *w* or to *y*, and several verbs in question are semantically related to verbs *secundae geminatae*, i.e. with the second radical consonant duplicated. The largest and most important chapter

of the book (chapt. 6) examines the verbs in question one by one, in alphabetical order (pp. 131–298). The genuine *tertiae hē* verbs, like *gbh*, "to be high", and *tmh*, "to be amazed", are not examined in this chapter, but they are presented in the next one, on pp. 299–300. The English version of Gesenius' dictionary and the third edition of Köhler's and Baumgartner's lexicon served as basis for this accurate analysis, which is conducted on the synchronic level of the Masoretic text, thus not in a diachronic perspective.

The two dictionaries used by the Author are based indiscriminately on texts dating from a very long period of almost one thousand years. These texts were written originally in at least three different dialects: the Judaean or Jerusalemite, the Israelite, and the Transjordanian dialect or language of the Book of Job. Besides, Aramaic influenced the Hebrew language at least from the mid-first millennium B.C. on. All this has a bearing on research. For instance, the verb *mḥh* in Numb. 34, 11 means "to strike" (p. 219) and offers a variant spelling of *mḥ*', borrowed from Aramaic. In its turn, Aramaic *mḥ*' is a phonetic variant of *mḫṣ́* (Hebrew *mḥṣ*), resulting from the change /*ṣ́*/ > /*ġ*/ (*mḥq*) of the velarized emphatic consonant and from the subsequent dissimilation of the fricative pharyngeal *ḥ* and velar *ġ*. The dictionaries based on Masoretic Hebrew do not reflect the whole development and variety of the dialects involved. Their first aim is to present the language of the Hebrew Bible as read and understood *ca*. 1000 A.D. in the Karaite school of Ben-Asher at Tiberias.

Mrs. Vernet i Pons is aware of the apparently similar work published in 1970 by Meir Fraenkel, *Zur Theorie der Lamed-He Stämme. Gleichzeitich ein Beitrag zur semitischen-indogermanischen Sprachwissenschaft* (Jerusalem 1970). She considers it to be unacceptable from the scientific point of view and states at the outset that she will not discuss Fraenkel's etymological reconstructions (p. 21). Rejecting his quasi-Nostratic method, she first presents the Afro-Asiatic or Hamito-Semitic language family, following Igor Diakonoff's synthesis, as published in 1988 in *Afrasian Languages* (pp. 23–33). The hypothesis of the original homeland of the Semitic language family in North Africa is indeed the most rational one, but it cannot be clearly proposed without explaining the emigration of entire populations. Now, the Sahara was becoming increasingly dry in the Late Neolithic period, *ca*. 3,800–3,000 B.C., and this must have been the reason why Semites migrated then to other areas. Additional data are provided by the extension of the cattle breading, which started *ca*. 8,000 B.C. in the Western Desert of Egypt, spread in the following centuries, and reached Ethiopia *ca*. 3,000-2,500. These facts should have been briefly mentioned on pp. 24–25 to explain the North-African hypothesis of the Semitic origins.

Another question concerns the emphatic consonants, regarded by the Author as originally glottalized. (pp. 27–28). The alleged Proto-Semitic glottalization of the emphatic consonants seems to be based on the present-day situation in the spoken languages. Pharyngealization and velarization are indeed rare, but this results from the cross-linguistical tendency to ease articulation. In this case, we have a concrete example in the pronunciation of glottalized *k*' in Bilin, a Cushitic language spoken in Eritrea, around Keren. This *k*' seems to be a comparatively recent realization of older

uvular *q*, attested in the earliest recorded Bilin material from the 18th century and still occurring in present-day neighbouring Awngi. The correspondence between an Egyptian emphatic and Semitic *'ayin* indicates that glottalization is a secondary phenomenon. In fact, Egyptian *nḏm*, "pleasant", *pśḏ*, "nine", śḏm, "to listen", are rightly identified by O. Rössler with Semitic *na'im* "pleasant", *tš'* "nine", and *šm'* with metathesis, "to listen". In fact, *ḏ* corresponds also to a Semitic emphatic consonant, i.e. a velarized one, not yet glottalized. The /'/ of *n'm*, *tš'*, and *šm'* signifies that the Proto-Semitic velarization of the fricative consonant has supplanted the basic character of the original phoneme. Glottalization parallels the absence of fricative pharyngeals in a large part of the Ethiopian languages, but J. Crass assumes at present that this is an areal feature and that fricative pharyngeals can be reconstructed for both Ethio-Semitic and Cushitic (*Proceedings of the XIVth International Congress of Ethiopian Studies*, Addis Ababa 2002, Vol. III, pp. 1679–1691).

The second chapter deals with the structure of the Semitic root, bi-consonantal or three-consonantal, with a particular attention to its vocalic component (pp. 35–47). This is undoubtedly an important element, because no living language uses roots without vowels. The traditional approach to Hebrew and to other Semitic languages unfortunately projects the consonantal script into the linguistic realm. The third chapter discusses the question of the incompatibility of certain phonemes in constituting a viable root (pp. 49–60). A historical and morphological description of verbal and nominal roots is the topic of the next chapter (pp. 61–90), which prepares the central theme of the work. Verbal apophony is discussed in a separate chapter (pp. 91–130), where Mrs. Vernet i Pons presents and discusses the various possibilities regarding qualitative change and length. An aspect of these questions, usually neglected in Semitic studies, is the stress accent, which is phonemic in Hebrew and in other Semitic languages. This problem is not examined.

The discussion of the role of vowels in the Ugaritic verbal system (pp. 108–113) assumes with most Ugaritologists that there was only one prefix conjugation in the indicative of each stem. Instead, the verbal roots with initial *'aleph* show that there were two forms, like in Akkadian: a perfective or preterite **yíqtul* and an imperfective or present **yiqáttal*, as considered already in 1932 by Hans Bauer and convincingly argued in 1938 by Albrecht Goetze (JAOS 58 [1938], pp. 266–309), who postulated the existence of two prefixed verbal forms: *yíqtul* (perfective) and *yiqáttal* (imperfective). Their existence can be recognized only in verbs with the first radical consonant *'aleph*, because *i̓* is used also when there is no following vowel, like in *yíqtul* forms, while *a̓* indicates a *yiqáttal*. We thus find *šı̓rh ltı̓kl 'ṣrm*, "the birds have not eaten its flesh" (KTU 1.6, II, 35-36), but *yaǻkal kṯr wḫss*, "Kushar-wa-Hasis will eat" (KTU 1.4, V, 41, a phrase announcing the next episode). In the first case, we have the feminine plural **ta'kulā* of the perfective and in the second case, the singular **ya'akkal* of the imperfective (> [*yakkal*]). Examples with the verb *'ḫd* are given in the reviewer's *Semitic Languages* §38.6 and in "Studia Judaica" 11 (2008), p. 303. The imperfective form is attested also in syllabic cuneiform script as *i-le-qa-aš-šu-nu-ti* (PRU III, p. 5, RS 15.14, lines 16 and 25), "he will take them". The normal Middle Babylonian form would have been

ilaqqē-šunūti, while this spelling reflects Ugaritic **yileqqaḥ* with a vowel change before the geminated emphatic *q*. One could also refer to fairly contemporaneous imperfectives from Emar which are influenced by the local idiom, e.g. *e-e-zi-ib-ka* /*'e'ezzibka*/, "I shall dismiss you" (*Emar* VI, 262, 21), instead of usual Middle Babylonian *ezzibka*. However, we cannot be sure that the lengthening pattern was in Ugaritic /C:/, thus *yiqáttal*. One could surmise that it was /:C/ like in Modern South Arabian, thus *yiqā́tal*, but the vowel *e* of *i-le-qa-aš-šu-nu-ti* does not favour this hypothesis. The Ugaritic prefix conjugation thus seems to parallel the Akkadian *iprus* and *iparras* forms. In the reviewer's opinion, the whole discussion of the subject in Ugaritic should thus be based on contemporary Akkadian and distinguish three verbal classes with a radical vowel *a*, *i* or *u*, like in Akkadian and in Classical Arabic.

Chapter 7 (pp. 299–336) offers an evaluation of the results of the etymological study of the verbs *tertiae infirmae* in chapter 6. Mrs. Vernet i Pons distinguishes verbs with a Proto-Semitic or with an Afro-Asiatic pedigree. This distinction, based on the analyses of chapt. 6, is made for the verbal roots as well as for the denominative verbs. The reviewer would be hesitant in several cases of verbs with a supposed Afro-Asiatic background, often assumed on the basis of Chr. Ehret's publications or of Orel's and Stolbova's *Hamito-Semitic Etymological Dictionary* (Leiden 1995). It is a risky procedure, as seen in the case of *nhh*, "to lament" (pp. 226–227). First, "to rest" and "to confess" are completely different notions. Then, if the radical consonants are *nhw*, the final *w* must result from a spirantized *b*. This is shown by Akkadian *nubbû*, "to lament, to mourn", and by Libyco-Berber *nby*, "to lament", attested in several inscriptions from the Roman period or earlier (*Mémorial Werner Vycichl. Articles de linguistique berbère*, Paris 2002, pp. 294–295). Both *nubbû* and *nby* lack the *h*, that appears in Egyptian *nhp*(*ỉ*), "to lament", also in Coptic, but with an unvoiced *p* instead of *b*. The entire root seems to be *nhb*/*py* and requires a further explanation. Considering the phonotactic principle /:C/ = /C:/ and the geminated *b* of *nubbû*, the *h* can result from a long *ā* like in Abrām > Abraham. The original root would then be *na:by* or *nab:y*. The different labials *b*/*p* create no problem, since the distinction of voiced and unvoiced consonants was apparently non-phonemic in Proto-Afro-Asiatic.

The conclusion summarizing the results of the research (pp. 337–351) is followed by a table with transliterations of the Afro-Asiatic, Semitic, and Hebrew consonants, presented both in the usual transcription of the Semitists and in the phonetic alphabet, with some explanations (pp. 353–354). A large bibliography is collected on pp. 355–400. The bibliographical information is sometimes incomplete, lacking e.g. the title of the series. The usual abbreviation of the title of some journals is explained incorrectly, for instance *Orientalische Literaturzeitung* instead of *Orientalistische Literaturzeitung*. An unusual practice consists sometimes in indicating in the bibliography only the pages related to the Author's subject instead of giving the full reference.

In the reviewer's opinion, the Author should be praised for her understanding and presenting of Semitic grammatical questions. A number of scholars interested in the subject would have probably preferred to read this book in a congress language, best in

English. However, the presentation is very clear, all the forms discussed are given either in good transcription or in Hebrew characters, and the work can thus be very useful also for readers not acquainted with Catalan.

Edward Lipiński

Takamitsu Muraoka, *A Grammar of Qumran Aramaic* (Ancient Near Eastern Studies. Supplement 38), Peeters, Leuven-Paris-Walpole MA, 2011, XLV+285 pp.

The grammar under review, written by Takamitsu Muraoka, emeritus professor of Leiden University, appeared almost twenty years after the publication of *Studies in Qumran Aramaic* in the same series of Melbourne University (Abr-Nahrain. Supplement 3, Leuven 1992). The present work is conceived as a reference grammar, divided in four parts: phonology, morphology, morphosyntax, and syntax. The detailed table of contents (pp. VII–XI), the preface and the introduction (pp. XXIII–XXIX) are followed by a list of abbreviations and a bibliography (pp. XXXI–XLV).

Part I deals then with phonology (pp. 3–34), Part II with morphology of pronouns (pp. 37–51), nouns and adjectives (pp. 51–81), prepositions (pp. 81–84), numerals (pp. 84–90), adverbs (pp. 91–93), conjunctions and other particles (pp. 93–96), verbs (pp. 97–144). Part III considers morphosyntax examining the use of pronouns (pp. 147–155), of nouns and adjectives (pp. 156–163), and of verbs (pp. 164–181). Part IV deals with the syntax of expanded nominal phrases (pp. 185–206), expanded verbal phrases (pp. 207–227), and other syntactic issues (pp. 228–263). There is a list of technical terms (pp. 267–269), an index of passages quoted (pp. 271–275), of modern authors (pp. 277–280), of subjects (pp. 281–282), and of words discussed (pp. 283–285). All the quotations are printed in Hebrew characters, with masoretic vocalization when biblical texts are referred to. Eventually, a transcription of other texts is added with vocalization to indicate the form and the pronunciation in a concrete way.

The main problem raised by this grammar is the mixing of various forms of speech and the apparent unawareness of a situation comparable to the Arabic diglossia. Although Qumran Aramaic is no particular Middle Aramaic idiom, Muraoka's grammar applies this appellation to the Aramaic language used in manuscripts found in the Desert of Judah, viz. in the caves around Khirbet Qumran, in Wadi Murabba'āt, in Naḥal Ḥever, allegedly in Wadi Seiyal, at Ketef Jericho and Masada. Only the Aramaic papyri from Wadi Daliyeh, dating from the 4th century B.C., and the Nabataean documents from Naḥal Ḥever are not included. Instead some vocalizations proposed by the Author correspond to Late Aramaic pronunciation.

One of the dialects concerned is Jewish Palestinian Aramaic, spoken at the time of the written documents and characterized, among other things, by the object marker *yt*,

which is later ubiquitous in the Palestinian Targum fragments of the Pentateuch from the Cairo Genizah. It occurs very often in the documents from Naḥal Ḥever, but is extremely rare in literary texts, despite their exposure to the vernacular language of scribes and copyists. It is found only twice in the Targum to Job (11Q10), col. 35:9 and 38:9, once in Dan. 3:12, in Proto-Esther (4Q550, 5+5a:7), in Tobit (4Q196, 2:13), and sporadically in a few other texts, but never in Genesis Apocryphon or the Visions of Amram. In literary works, the direct object is generally not preceded by a syntactic indicator, but *l-* is occasionally employed before nouns. This syntagm is exceptional with pronominal suffixes (11Q10, col. 4:5). In fact, pronominal suffixes are regularly attached to the verb in the Targum to Job, in the Tobit fragments, in Genesis Apocryphon. This construction is found also in the stereotyped formula *ktbh* or *ktbyh*, "he wrote it", in the legal documents from Wadi Murabba'āt and Naḥal Ḥever (Mur 42:8,9; 46:11; 48:7; P. Yadin 10:73; etc.), occurring next to the name of a witness. However, it clearly belongs there to the formulaic language of legal acts and does not reveal anything about the daily speech of the writer. It is obvious that we do not deal with a single corpus of Qumran Aramaic, but with texts in Standard Literary Aramaic on the one hand, and with Jewish Palestinian Aramaic, on the other. The latter has influenced the language of legal documents. The scribes of the Nabataean deeds from Naḥal Ḥever, dating from the late 1st and early 2nd centuries A.D. better resisted the impact of spoken Aramaic and they never use the object marker *yt*. Instead, the legal formulations of the Nabataean tomb inscriptions at Mada'in Salih, which are somewhat older, contain several examples of *yt*, showing that its use was not limited to Jewish Palestinian Aramaic, to Palmyrene, and to Syro-Palestinian. It was Western Middle Aramaic. The Nabataean use of *yt* shows in any case that the parallel and nearly contemporaneous appearance of *yt* in letters and deeds from Naḥal Ḥever should not be explained by a constant exposure to Hebrew, but by the Aramaic dialect spoken in Palestine and different to some extent from the Standard Literary Aramaic used for literary purposes. A linguistic study of the Aramaic manuscripts found in the Desert of Judah should thus deal separately with texts redacted in a literary language, occasionally influenced by the vernacular idiom of scribes and copyists, and with letters and documents written Western Middle Aramaic, among which legal documents may preserve features of Official or Imperial Aramaic.

The disjunctive possessive pronoun *dyl-*, used in Aramaic deeds of the Persian period (*zyl-*), in the Samaria papyri as well, occurs also in several legal documents of the Judaean Desert, but it is attested only three times in Qumran literary texts: twice in Genesis Apocryphon (1Q20, col. 20:10 and 21:6), dating from the 1st or 2nd century B.C., and once in Enoch's Epistle (4Q542, 1 i 8). This *zyl-/dyl-* is a feature characterizing various types of conveyance: gifts, sales, transfers. Instead, it is not typically West-Aramaic. Mixing Jewish Palestinian Aramaic with some legal phraseology and Standard Literary Aramaic is an unfortunate procedure.

Still another example is provided by the pronouns. The deeds of the Judaean Desert regularly use the demonstrative pronoun *dnh/dn'*, which is the standard form *znh/zn'* in documents from the Persian period, also in the Samaria papyri. The influence of

spoken Jewish Palestinian Aramaic is shown nevertheless by the seven examples of the demonstrative *dnn* in deeds from Naḥal Ḥever and Wadi Seiyal. Their meaning and function are the same as those of *dnh*/*dn'*. This new demonstrative *dnn* never appears in literary texts from Qumran, an evident prove that we deal with two different dialects: Official Aramaic, coloured by the spoken Jewish Palestinian Aramaic of the scribes, and the Standard Literary Aramaic of the 3rd–1st centuries B.C. Later, as in Targum Onqelos, the impact of the vernacular *dnn* appears also in literary texts, for instance in Gen. 25:32; 32:5; Numb. 11:20. The determinative used as a rule in Standard Literary Aramaic texts from the Qumran caves is *dn*, often *dyn* later, in the Targums.

This being said, one must stress that the grammar of Qumran Aramaic, written by T. Muraoka, contains a wealth of material and provides an impressive amount of linguistic research. The structure of the grammar and the analyses are exemplary. It is undoubtedly a major research tool. Its user will nevertheless have the double task of reinterpreting Author's comments on differences perceived in the texts and of distinguishing the Standard Literary Aramaic, a written language, from Western Middle Aramaic, based on an actually spoken language. This distinction should apply also to spelling and phonology, to morphosyntax and syntax. It can generally rely on the provenance of the texts. Letters and deeds from Wadi Murabba'āt, Naḥal Ḥever, and Wadi Seiyal are usually written in Jewish Palestinian Aramaic or are strongly influenced by it, while preserving some older legal terminology. Seventeen texts erroneously classified as 4Q342-4Q348, 4Q351-4Q354, and 4Q356-4Q361 belong to this group, but none is listed in the index of passages quoted in the grammar. Most fragments and scrolls from Qumran caves proper and the Aramaic Levi Document from the Cairo Genizah are instead redacted in Standard Literary Aramaic.

Beside the dialectal differences, there is the important distinction of spoken and written language, as well as the wide chronological gap between the texts in question. Most letters and deeds date from the first part of the 2nd century A.D., while the literary compositions from the Qumran caves go back to the 3rd–1st centuries B.C. There is a gap of at least 150–200 years between the two groups. Some Qumran manuscripts date from the first part of the 1st century A.D., but the works written in Standard Literary Aramaic are undoubtedly older. This explains the differences one can observe between the Standard Literary Aramaic of the Qumran texts and the Targums Onqelos and Jonathan, first written down *ca*. 100 A.D. For instance, the preposition *l-* appears only occasionally as object marker in the Standard Literary Aramaic of the Qumran texts, but its insertion is a general rule in the Targums, first committed to writing about two hundred years after the literary compositions attested at Qumran. A diachronic approach is always needed, but somewhat lacking in the grammar.

In phonology, one should also take Greek and Latin transcriptions into account, what is not done in the grammar under review. For instance, forms like μαρανα(ς) have a bearing on the interpretation of the internal *aleph* of *mr'n'* in P. Yadin 8,9, and Σαμβαθαιος with variants and many similar cases echoes a real degemination, even if it is not registered in Aramaic texts. The basic distinction of static and kinetic consonants is missing in the grammar. Now, the latter group, incorporating the plosives,

cannot be held continuously without changing quality and this explains the dissimilations and degeminations like Σαμβαθαιος etc. Besides, U. Schattner-Rieser (*L'araméen des manuscrits de la Mer Morte* I. *Grammaire*, Prahins 2004, pp. 48–49) has collected eleven Greek transcriptions showing that pretonic short vowels were still maintained in the 1st–2nd centuries A.D. The objection of T. Muraoka, contending that Greek phonotactics does not allow a word-initial ζβ and similar clusters (p. 31 and n. 213, p. 69, n. 290), is specious, for a prosthetic vowel could appear in such cases or an etymologically voiced consonant could change into a voiceless one, giving a form similar to σβέννῡμι, "to put out, to extinguish". Since this never happens, while transcriptions like Βριϰ- or Βριχ- for /*Bărīk-*/ never appear, Schattner-Rieser's argument is perfectly valid. In any case, it is obvious that the vocalization of Biblical Aramaic reflects a later stage of Aramaic phonology. Some vocalizations proposed by the Author should therefore be corrected in order to bring them in agreement with the Greek transcriptions.

Very interesting for phonology are the spellings *hwrrṭ* for Urartu (1Q20, col. 10:12; 12:8; 17:9; cf. 1QIs[a] 37:38) and *ḥdql'* (1Q20, col. 17:8; *pace* Muraoka) for Idiglat (Tigris) in Genesis Apocryphon, for they were apparently aimed at indicating an actual pronunciation of the toponyms. Such facts are not examined in the grammar, although they show that *aleph, hē,* and *ḥeth* were not carrying the same phonetic value when the text was written.

A reference grammar of Standard Literary Aramaic, dealing with texts from the Hellenistic and early Roman periods, is a desideratum, but studies referring to particular sources, like those by S.E. Fassberg, R. Kuty, and A. Tal, or dealing with special questions are so far a prerequisite. The same can be said about Jewish Palestinian Aramaic of the Roman and Byzantine periods. The grammar under review can provisionally fill in these scholarly blanks and will certainly be used with great profit by specialists.

Edward Lipiński

Renaud J. Kuty, *Studies in the Syntax of Targum Jonathan to Samuel* (Ancient Near Eastern Studies. Supplement 30), Peeters, Leuven-Paris-Walpole MA, 2010. XIV + 285 pp.

The book under review is a slightly revised version of Renaud J. Kuty's doctoral dissertation defended in January 2008 at Leiden University. To understand its purpose and its importance one should first situate it in the general frame of targumic studies and show the place of Targum Jonathan to the Prophets in the quite large field of targumic literature in the first millennium A.D[1].

[1] A large bibliography can be found in C. Tassin, *Targum,* in *Dictionnaire de la Bible. Supplément* XIII, Paris 2005, pp. 1*–343*.

Aramaic was the language of the majority of Jews before the end of the Persian period (539–333 B.C.) and the need of translating the Hebrew Bible into Aramaic was increasing steadily as the time was going by. First oral explanation was given for some parts of the Bible, following rules written partially down in the Mishnah, *Megillah* IV, 4-10, but going back at least to the end of the first century A.D., since Eliezer ben Hyrcanus is mentioned in this context. Beside the public oral explanation in the synagogue, still practiced by Yemenite Jews in the 20th century, translations were made and committed to writing for private reading and study, the oldest example of which is Targum Job from Qumran[2], the original of which may go back to the 3rd century B.C.

The synagogue played a role here, at least from the first century B.C. on, as shown by the Greek inscription found in 1913 by Raymond Weill in the excavation of the Ophel[3]. The inscription records the building of a synagogal compound in the first century, certainly before A.D. 70:

"Theodotos, son of Vettenos, priest and *archisynagôgos*, son of *archisynagôgos*, and grandson of *archisynagôgos*, built this synagogue for reading the Law and teaching the commandments, also the hospice, chambers and water installations for the service of visiting guests from abroad. This synagogue was founded by his ancestors and the elders and Simonides".

The "teaching of the commandments" following the "reading of the Torah" seems to imply a liturgical practice of commented translations of the Bible into Greek or Aramaic. In fact, the Targums disclose a wish to understand the Bible rather than the bare need of a translation. No further trace is left of Theodotos' synagogue, but one should also mention the synagogue of Gamla[4], erected between 23 B.C. and 41 A.D., and the provisional synagogues at Herodium and at Masada, employed as such during the First Revolt.

The Aramaic translation of the Pentateuch and of the Prophets was in all likelihood committed to writing as early as the first century or the early second century A.D. It is known as Targum Onqelos to the Pentateuch and Targum Jonathan to the Prophets. These translations soon reached Babylonia, probably in the aftermath of the Second Revolt (132–135 A.D.). Babylonian Jews were speaking a different, East-Aramaic dialect, and these early Aramaic translations of the Bible became there the official Targum of the Babylonian schools. This saved them from destruction, but local copyists sometimes

---

[2] 11Q10 ; 4Q99-101 and 157 ; 2Q15.

[3] For these excavations, see R. Weill, *La Cité de David. Compte rendu des fouilles exécutées à Jérusalem sur le site de la ville primitive. Campagne de 1913–1914*, Paris 1920, in particular p. 186 and pl. XXV. Cf. also L.-H. Vincent, *Découverte de la "Synagogue des affranchis" à Jérusalem*, "Revue Biblique" 30 (1921), pp. 247–277; idem, *La Cité de David d'après les fouilles de 1913–1914*, "Revue Biblique" 30 (1921), pp. 410–433, 541–569; F. Hüttenmeister and G. Reeg, *Die antiken Synagogen in Israel* (BTAVO B 12/1-2), Wiesbaden 1977, pp. 192–195; J. Naveh, *'Al pᵉsêpās wᵉ'eben*, Tel Aviv 1978, pp. 1–2.

[4] D. Syon and Z. Yavor, *Gamla' – Yāšān wᵉ-ḥādāš*, "Qadmoniot" 34 (2001), pp. 2–33, with former literature.

adapted their language to the East-Aramaic dialect of Babylonia, "to make it conform with the vernacular of the Babylonian Jews"[5], and later provided the text with supralinear Babylonian vocalization. About the 4th–5th centuries A.D., other Aramaic versions of the Pentateuch were committed to writing in Palestine, resulting in a Samaritan Targum and in a Jewish Palestinian Targum, represented by the so-called Pseudo-Jonathan Targum or Targum Yerushalmi I, the Fragmentary Targum or Targum Yerushalmi II with several variants, and the Targum *Neofiti 1*, which preserves a complete version of the Palestinian Targum. Targums to the Writings or Hagiographa, including the Books of Chronicles, were written down somewhat later. In contrast to the Pentateuch, represented in Aramaic by several Palestinian Targum traditions, no complete Palestinian Targum to the Prophets has survived. Variant traditions and the marginal glosses of *Codex Reuchlinianus 3* in the Badische Landesbibliothek (Karlsruhe), written in 1105/6, may refer to partial translations or to heterogeneous corrections and additions to Targum Jonathan.

The date and origin of Targum Onqelos and of Targum Jonathan were somewhat uncertain for a long period, because of their Babylonian vocalization and of their mixture of Eastern and Western Aramaic linguistic traits. The first requirement was a reliable text, not corrupted by later copyists. This was provided in the years 1959–1962 by the edition of Ms. Or. 2363 for Targum Onqelos, of Ms. Or. 2210 for the Former Prophets, and of Ms. Or. 2211 for the Latter Prophets, all from the British Library (formerly in the British Museum). The editor, Alexander Sperber (1897–1970), added a double critical apparatus, quoting vocalic and consonantal variants[6]. His edition is based on Yemenite manuscripts with supralinear post-Babylonian vocalization, a scribal tradition fostered in the Yemen[7]. A. Sperber chose manuscripts representative of the transition from the genuine Babylonian to the Yemenite vocalization, which is its younger offspring, or at least texts representative of the Yemenite vocalization in its older form (for the Prophets). In fact, Targum texts with genuine Babylonian vocalization are mainly preserved in fragmentary form and come mostly from the Cairo Genizah. In Sperber's opinion, they could not provide a basis for a critical edition of the entire Targum Onqelos and the entire Targum Jonathan to the Prophets. Criticisms have been made of Sperber's edition because of this neglect of genuinely Babylonian manuscripts, of the small number of Tiberian textual witnesses used, and of typographic errors.

However, although the Yemenite manuscripts should be distinguished from the Babylonian ones because of their system of vocalization, these manuscripts show a virtually identical consonantal text. Besides, even if the Babylonian punctuation is the earlier one, it does not belong to the original text of the Targum that did not have vowel

---

[5] W. Bacher, *Targum,* in *The Jewish Encyclopedia* XII, New York–London 1906, p. 61.

[6] A. Sperber, *The Bible in Aramaic* I-III, Leiden 1959–1962.

[7] For the Yemenite tradition of Babylonian Aramaic, cf. S. Morag, *Notes on the Vowel System of Babylonian Aramaic as Preserved in the Yemenite Tradition*, in: "Phonetica" 7 (1962), pp. 217–239; idem, *Babylonian Aramaic in the Yemenite Tradition: the Hollow Verb*, in: *Sefer Hanok Yalon*, Jerusalem 1963, pp. 182–220 (in Hebrew); idem, *Oral Tradition and Dialects*, in: *Proceedings of the International Conference on Semitic Studies*, Jerusalem 1969, pp. 180–189.

signs initially. As for the manuscripts with Tiberian vocalization, it is widely known that they contain many additions not shared by the Babylonian-Yemenite texts and rightly regarded as later expansions of the original translation. Moreover, their punctuation varies considerably and is not very reliable. Now, most typographic errors in Sperber's edition appear in the vocalization and in the Apparatus, while the occasional consonantal errors are easily recognizable[8]. Therefore, Sperber's "Bible in Aramaic" is rightly regarded as "the standard text edition", although another one is available nowadays thanks to E. Martínez Borobio's publication of genuine Babylonian texts of the Former Prophets[9] and to Joseph Ribera Florit's edition of the Latter Prophets[10]. One should notice however that the lack of Babylonian texts obliged Martínez Borobio to reproduce the available fragments side by side and to use other manuscripts to fill the gaps (Eb 66, Eb 76, Ms. Or. 1471).

A. Sperber started collecting material for this work in his native town of Chernovtsy (Ukraine) as early as 1923. He begun preparing the publication in 1925 at the request of the *Akademie für die Wissenschaft des Judentums* in Berlin, and in 1926–1927 he published some preliminary results of his examination of Targum Jonathan to the Former Prophets[11], followed in 1934–1935 by an introductory chapter dealing with the variant readings of Targum Onqelos[12]. The final results of his research appeared in 1959–1973[13].

The language of the Targum of the Former Prophets was submitted to a detailed analysis by Abraham Tal[14], who based his research on A. Sperber's edition. His grammatical treatment is focussed on phonological, orthographical, morphological, and lexical matters. The latter investigation area provides important data for the dating of the Targum, which contains a number of Mishnaic Hebrew loanwords belonging to the common daily vocabulary. This shows that it was written at the time when Mishnaic

---

[8] R.P. Gordon, *Sperber's Edition of the Targum to the Prophets: A Critique*, "The Jewish Quarterly Review" 64 (1973–74), pp. 314–321. See also idem, *Foreword* to the reprinted edition of A. Sperber, *The Bible in Aramaic* I, Leiden 1992.

[9] E. Martínez Borobio, *Targum Jonatán de los Profetas primeros en tradición babilónica* I. *Josué-Jueces*; II. *I-II Samuel*; III. *I-II Reyes* (Textos y Estudios "Cardenal Cisneros"), Madrid 1987–1998.

[10] J. Ribera Florit, *Biblia babilónica, Profetas posteriores (Targum),* Salamanca 1977; idem, *El targum de Isaías: la versión aramea del profeta Isaías. Versión critica*, Valencia 1988; idem, *Targum Jonatán de los Profetas posteriores en tradición babilónica* I. *Isaías*; II. *Jeremías*; III. *Ezequiel* (Textos y Estudios "Cardenal Cisneros"), Madrid 1988–1997; a fourth volume, anticipated by several articles, will contain the Twelve Minor Prophets; idem, *El targum de Jeremías: la versión aramea del profeta Jeremías. Versión critica, introducción y notas*, Valencia 1992; idem, *El targum de Ezequiel,* Estella 2004.

[11] A. Sperber, *Zur Textgestalt des Prophetentargums*, "Zeitschrift für die alttestamentliche Wissenschaft" 44 (1926), pp. 175–176; idem, *Zur Sprache des Prophetentargums*, "Zeitschrift für die alttestamentliche Wissenschaft" 45 (1927), pp. 267–288.

[12] A. Sperber, *The Targum Onkelos in Its Relation to the Masoretic Hebrew Text*, "Proceedings of the American Academy for Jewish Research" 6 (1934-35), pp. 309–351.

[13] A. Sperber, *The Bible in Aramaic* I-IVB, Leiden 1959–1973.

[14] A. Tal, *Lᵉšōn ha-Targūm li-Nᵉḇi'îm ri'šōnîm ū-ma'madah bi-ḵᵉlal nîḇê ha-'arāmît / The Language of the Targum of the Former Prophets and Its Position within the Aramaic Dialects*, Tel Aviv 1975.

Hebrew was still a living language[15], thus before the Second Jewish Revolt (132–135 A.D.). This is confirmed by the rarity of Greek and Latin loanwords (45 in total), only nine of whom do not occur in Mishnaic Hebrew[16]. Their appearance reflects an early phase of Hellenistic influence in Palestine.

Abraham Tal did not examine the syntax of the Targum, although this is a quite stable linguistic area which is not influenced by the particular vocabulary and phraseology of a writer or a scribal school. The reason was probably the idea that the syntax follows the one of the Hebrew *Vorlage*. This might be correct to a certain degree, but a detailed analysis of syntactic aspects would undoubtedly reveal significant differences. These aspects are investigated at present by R.J. Kuty in I Samuel and II Samuel with special attention to five key topics of the syntax: the use of the states of the noun, i.e. formal determination or its lack, the morphosyntax of the numerals, the distribution of the various genitive constructions, the verbal system, and the word order. Kuty's study includes a comparative discussion of these syntactic features in the dialect of the Targum Jonathan and in other Aramaic writings, and attempts to show how the syntax of this Targum can shed light on the classification of its language in the large Aramaic language family, thus contributing to our knowledge of its origin and early history.

In this excellent piece of work Renaud J. Kuty thus made an important contribution to the "vexing question" of the origin of the Targum to the Prophets. As expected, the research is based essentially on the consonantal text. The Author begins by reviewing the present state of research in the introduction to his syntactical studies (p. 1–18). Without further comments, he uses Sperber's edition of the Targum to the Former Prophets, based on the Yemenite Ms.Or. 2210 of the British Library, dated 1469 A.D. Comparisons are made with the *Vorlage* of the Hebrew Masoretic text.

The use of the determination or *status emphaticus* is the topic of the first chapter (pp. 19–54). R.J. Kuty notes that the classical distinction of the absolute and emphatic state is observed in the plural (pp. 25–27). In the singular, formally feminine nouns display a clear preference for the *status emphaticus* ending in *-ā* (pp. 29–30), while formally masculine nouns are often used in the emphatic state despite their indetermination because of certain morphological, morphosyntactic or lexical factors that neutralize the classical distinction between the absolute and emphatic state (pp. 30–50). Globally one notices therefore a combination of East and West Aramaic features.

The second chapter deals with numerals (pp. 55–69), which do not present characteristics leading to a classification in a particular group of Aramaic dialects. The next chapter examines the genitival constructions (pp. 71–124). The proleptic *d*-relation makes up only 1.5% of all genitival phrases encountered in Targum Jonathan to Samuel (pp. 73, 100–101, 104), while the frequent use of the construct state and of the bare *d*-relation does not leave a direct clue for linguistic classification. However, the working

---

[15] A. Tal, *Lᵉšōn ha-Targūm li-Nᵉbi'îm*, pp. 174–175.

[16] Ibid., p. 180.

of the two constructions in Targum Jonathan to Samuel and in Genesis Apocryphon from Qumran is strikingly similar (pp. 121–123).

This research is very detailed and accurate. The Author notices, for instance, that the construct state is hardly used with some nouns favouring the *d*-relation (p. 87), thus *m'ln*, "entrance" (e.g. *m'ln' d-gzr*, "the entrance of Gezer"), *msqn*, "ascent", *mlk*, "king", and *nḥl*, "wadi". He lists all the occurrences of the construction in question. The examples with *mlk* are quite numerous with the single exception of *mlk m'kh* in II Sam. 10:6 (p. 87, n. 47), but this is precisely a particular case, since Maacah can be a personal name that could be used in apposition (cf. the Septuagint). The Targumist apparently leaves the question open, since he writes neither *mlk' m'kh* nor *mlk' dm'kh*. One should notice that the following words *'lp gbr* rise a similar problem, since one would expect *'lp gbr'* in line with the general Targumist's usage in matter of determination (cf. p. 63, n. 31). Some thirty years ago, the reviewer had suggested to read *'allūf*, "leader of men", but this passage of II Sam. 10:6 has a slightly different wording in the Qumran version of the Book of Samuel[17] and Targum Jonathan seems to have been adapted to the Masoretic text without following the initial Targumist's usages. Similar cases might occur in I Sam. 14:26 and II Sam. 25:35, where Targum Jonathan respectively reads *bryz dbš* and *qšt nḥš'* instead of the expected *bryz ddbš* and *qšt dnḥš'* (p. 96, n. 74). Now, the Septuagint seems to translate another *Vorlage* in I Sam. 14:26 and the Greek translation of Hebrew *nḥwšh* in II Sam. 25:35 is missing in the Lagardian edition of the Septuagint, what is not surprising since this word overloads the verse. A further research of this kind could be helpful for the study of Targum Jonathan and for the textual criticism of the Hebrew Bible.

Chapter IV deals with conjugations (pp. 125–194) and stresses the increasing importance of the participle *qātel*, used with or without *hwh*. The conjugation of Targum Jonathan to Samuel is heavily influenced by its Hebrew *Vorlage*, but its use of *q^{e}tal* expressing anteriority, *yiqtol* referring to the future or indicating modality, and *qātel* signifying simultaneity comes close to the situation observed in Qumran Aramaic[18]. The word order in the verbal clause constitutes the topic of Chapter V (pp. 195–241). The regular sequence in Targum Jonathan to Samuel turns out to be verb-subject-object, but this pattern is of limited value for a linguistic classification of its Aramaic, since the Targum follows the word order of the Hebrew *Vorlage* in a great many cases. However, this order is prevalent also in Qumran Aramaic and in Nabataean, while at least the sequence verb-subject is the most frequent order in Palmyrene.

The discussion of the conjugations is based mainly on the graphic appearance of the forms without considering the semantic role of the stress-accent, which can be induced

---

[17] É. Puech, *4QSamuel^{a} (4Q51): Notes épigraphiques et nouvelles identifications*, in: H. Ausloos, B. Lemmelijn, and M. Vervenne (eds.), *Florilegium Lovaniense. Studies in Septuagint and Textual Criticism in Honour of Florentino García Martínez* (BETL 224), Leuven 2008, pp. 373–386 (see p. 381). One can propose a slightly different restoration of the fragment, closer to the Masoretic text.

[18] The appellation "Qumran Aramaic" qualifies texts found at Qumran and dating therefore from the Second Temple period. It does not imply that they were composed at Qumran.

sometimes from later vocalized traditions, like *wayyiqtol* < *wa-yíqtol* (accomplished), distinct from (*w*^{e})*yiqtol* < (*wa-*)*yiqtól* (unaccomplished). The "accomplished" *yíqtol* occurs in early Hebrew poetry also without *wa*, like in Ugaritian poems, and it is present in II Sam. 22, what R.J. Kuty regards as "peculiar" (p. 144, n. 72). The Targumist understood these forms correctly and translated them with *q*^{e}*tal*.

The general conclusions of R.J. Kuty's work (pp. 243–251) locate the Aramaic of Targum Jonathan to Samuel among basically Middle Aramaic dialects with one distinctly Eastern feature of Late Aramaic, namely a subsystem of determination. This can be explained by the final redaction of the Targum in Babylonia, around the 4th century A.D., while the basic linguistic features point towards the Middle Aramaic period, more specifically the Qumran Aramaic. The sole notable difference is the disappearance of a formal distinction between jussive and imperfect (with a final *n*), like in Palmyrene and in Nabataean. This may suggest a slightly later date for the basic Aramaic of Targum Jonathan, possibly the period between the First (A.D. 66–73) and the Second Jewish Revolt (A.D. 132–135). The Yabnean period and context would appear as the most suitable setting in life for the redaction of Targum Jonathan, as well as of Targum Onqelos. The reviewer believes that the initial written form of Targum Jonathan was anterior to the fixing of a standardized and authoritative Hebrew text of the Prophets.

According to R.J. Kuty, the language of both Targums cannot be an Aramaic κοινή or Standard speech, contrary to the opinion of A. Tal and J.C. Greenfield[19]: it is a literary West-Aramaic dialect, continuing the literary tradition of the earlier period, but influenced in all likelihood by a Judaean vernacular. Both Targums were subsequently transferred to Babylonia, probably in the aftermath of Bar Kokhba's revolt, and were revised there around the 4th century A.D. They enjoyed such a prestige in Babylonian schools that their language, slightly adapted to local dialects and vocalized accordingly, even inspired the inscriptions of magic bowls, datable to the 5th–7th centuries A.D.[20]

Targum Jonathan is quoted quite frequently by Rav Joseph bar Ḥiyya (270–333 A.D.), head of the Pumbedita Academy[21]. Thus, as early as the beginning of the 4th century A.D., Targum Jonathan was recognized in Babylonia as being of ancient authority. Hai ben Sherira (939–1038), gaon of Pumbedita, seems to have regarded Rav Joseph as its author, since he cites passages from the Targum in his commentary to *Tohorot*, adding: "Rav Joseph has translated"[22]. This opinion may simply result from Joseph's frequent quotations

---

[19] J.C. Greenfield, *Standard Literary Aramaic*, in: A. Caquot and D. Cohen (eds.), *Actes du Premier Congrès International de Linguistique Sémitique et Chamito-Sémitique*, The Hague 1974, pp. 280–289.

[20] S.A. Kaufman, *A Unique Magic Bowl from Nippur*, "Journal of Near Eastern Studies" 32 (1973), pp. 170–174, with two lines of Targum Jonathan to Jer. 2:2 and 2:1 or Ez. 21:23; Chr. Müller-Kessler, *The Earliest Evidence for Targum Onqelos from Babylonia and the Question of Its Dialect and Origin*, "Journal for the Aramaic Bible" 3 (2001), pp. 181–198, with the Aramaic version of Ex. 15 in Targum Onqelos.

[21] Babylonian Talmud, *Moed Katan* 28b; *Sanhedrin* 94b; *Megillah* 3a.

[22] Quoted in Alexander Kohut (ed.), *Arukh ha-shalem*, re-edited by Amram Kohut, Wien 1926, vol. II, p. 293a.

of the Targum, but A. Geiger already assumed that Rav Joseph bar Ḥiyya gave its final form to Targum Jonathan[23].

R.J. Kuty's book makes a significant contribution to the question of the origin and transmission of the Targum to the Prophets. Further studies of the kind[24], especially dedicated to the Latter Prophets, would certainly be welcome, although the numerous additions and paraphrases, written in a mixed dialect, make the research more difficult. Those interested in Aramaic linguistics, but also in the Biblical exegesis of the first and second centuries A.D., will find Kuty's study of particular value. It is provided with an ample bibliography (pp. 255–275) and a carefully prepared index of passages in Targum Jonathan to Samuel (pp. 277–285). The Author provided us with a work which is in all respects an outstanding contribution to the study of the Targums and to Aramaic linguistics.

Edward Lipiński

[23] A. Geiger, *Urschrift und Übersetzungen der Bibel*, Breslau 1857, pp. 163–164.

[24] Targum Jonathan to Judges has already been analyzed in great detail by Willem F. Smelik, *The Targum of Judges* (Oudtestamentische Studië 36), Leiden 1995. On may still record the old editions of Franz Praetorius, *Targum zu Josua in jemenischer Überlieferung*, Berlin 1899, and *Targum zum Buch der Richter in jemenischer Überlieferung*, Berlin 1900.

Lista Autorów

Marcin Grodzki Ph.D., Department of Arabic and Islamic Studies, University of Warsaw, Poland

Prof. Jaakko Hämeen-Anttila Ph.D., Department of World Cultures, University of Helsinki, Finland

Michael Knüppel Ph.D., Department of Turcology and Central Asian Studies, Georg-August--University, Göttingen, Germany

Prof. Edward Lipiński Ph.D., Katholieke Universiteit Leuven, Belgium

Prof. Barbara Michalak-Pikulska Ph.D., Department of Arabic Studies, Jegiellonian University, Kraków, Poland

Dr. habil. Gábor Takács, Department of Egyptology, Eötvös Loránd University; research fellow of the Institute for Linguistics, Hungarian Academy of Sciences, Budapest, Hungary

Bogusław R. Zagórski M.A., Ibn Khaldoun Institute, Warsaw, Poland

Prof. Ewa Zajdler Ph.D., Chinese Studies Department, University of Warsaw, Poland

Instrukcja dla Autorów „Rocznika Orientalistycznego”

– Każdy nadesłany materiał zostanie poddany recenzji, kwalifikującej tekst do publikacji. Zarówno nazwiska recenzentów, jak i rezultaty ich pracy są danymi poufnymi Redakcji.

– „RO” prosi o nadesłanie wraz z publikacją wszystkich niestandardowych czcionek w niej użytych oraz, pliku w formacie *.rtf lub *.doc, a w uzasadnionych przypadkach także jako *.pdf.

– Przyjmujemy teksty w językach angielskim, niemieckim, francuskim i rosyjskim.

– Całość tekstu powinna składać się z nagłówka tytułowego, tekstu głównego, słów kluczowych (co najmniej 4–5.) i abstraktu w j. angielskim (od 150 do 200 słów).

– Autor zapewnia, że posiada stosowne zezwolenia na reprodukowanie w swoim artykule cudzych materiałów. Autor oświadcza, że nadesłany tekst nie był wcześniej w żadnej formie opublikowany. Redakcja jednocześnie ostrzega, że zarówno „*ghostwriting*”, jak i „*guest authorship*” są przejawem nierzetelności naukowej, a wszelkie wykryte przypadki będą demaskowane, włącznie z powiadomieniem odpowiednich podmiotów.

– Zgłaszając artykuł do „Rocznika Orientalistycznego” Autor jednoznacznie wyraża zgodę na udzielenie autorskiej licencji eksploatacyjnej do nadesłanego tekstu (dot. postaci drukowanej i/lub elektronicznej), co obejmuje prawo Redakcji do: kopiowania, publikacji, reprodukcji, cytowania, umieszczenia w formie elektronicznej w bazach danych, itp. Czas trwania udzielonej licencji jest zgodny z dyrektywą UE. Licencja zostaje udzielona „RO” nieodpłatnie.

– Autor otrzymuje 2 egz. numeru „RO” w przypadku artykułu i 1 egz. w przypadku recenzji.

– Redakcja zastrzega sobie prawo do skracania i redagowania złożonych tekstów.

– Po przyjęciu tekstu do druku i zredagowaniu Autor otrzyma drogą elektroniczną tekst do korekty, którą jest zobowiązany uczynić i odesłać do Redakcji w możliwie najszybszym terminie.

Instructions for Authors of "Rocznik Orientalistyczny"

- Submitted papers will be subject to peer review by appropriate referees. The names of the reviewers and the results of their work are confidential data.
- The Publisher accepts complete scripts of the Work in *.rtf, *.doc or (in justified cases) in *.pdf format. All the special fonts used by the Author should be sent as an attachment to the text.
- We accept articles written in English, German, French and Russian.
- Every text should consist of a title, main body text, keywords (4–5 at least), and a synopsis in English (150 to 200 words).
- By submitting the text, the Author warrants to the Publisher:
  1. That the Author is the sole author of the Work (both *ghostwriting* and *guest authorship*) are manifestations of scientific misconduct. All detected cases will be exposed and appropriate authorities will be informed;
  2. That the Author holds the full power and authority to grant these rights;
  3. That the Work has not been published in any form with any company or person that may still own proprietary rights to the Work.
- By submitting the text, the Author grants, assigns, and transfers to the Publisher, during the full term of copyright and all renewals thereof, the sole and exclusive right to print, publish, distribute, market and sell the Work in any and all editions and formats throughout the World. The assignment is granted free of charge to "RO" and shall be effective as long as it complies with the EU directives.
- The Author shall receive two free copies of the "RO" issue in which the Work appears (the Author of a review shall receive one free copy).
- The *Editor* reserves the right to copy, edit and proof texts accepted for the publication.
- After copy editing and final proofing, the text, in an electronic format, shall be sent to the Author for his approval. After revisions and clarifications (if necessary) the text must be submitted to the Editor as soon as possible.